

Birla Central Library

PILANI (Jaipur State)

Class No :- 910.2676

Book No :- W15H

Accession No :- 11554

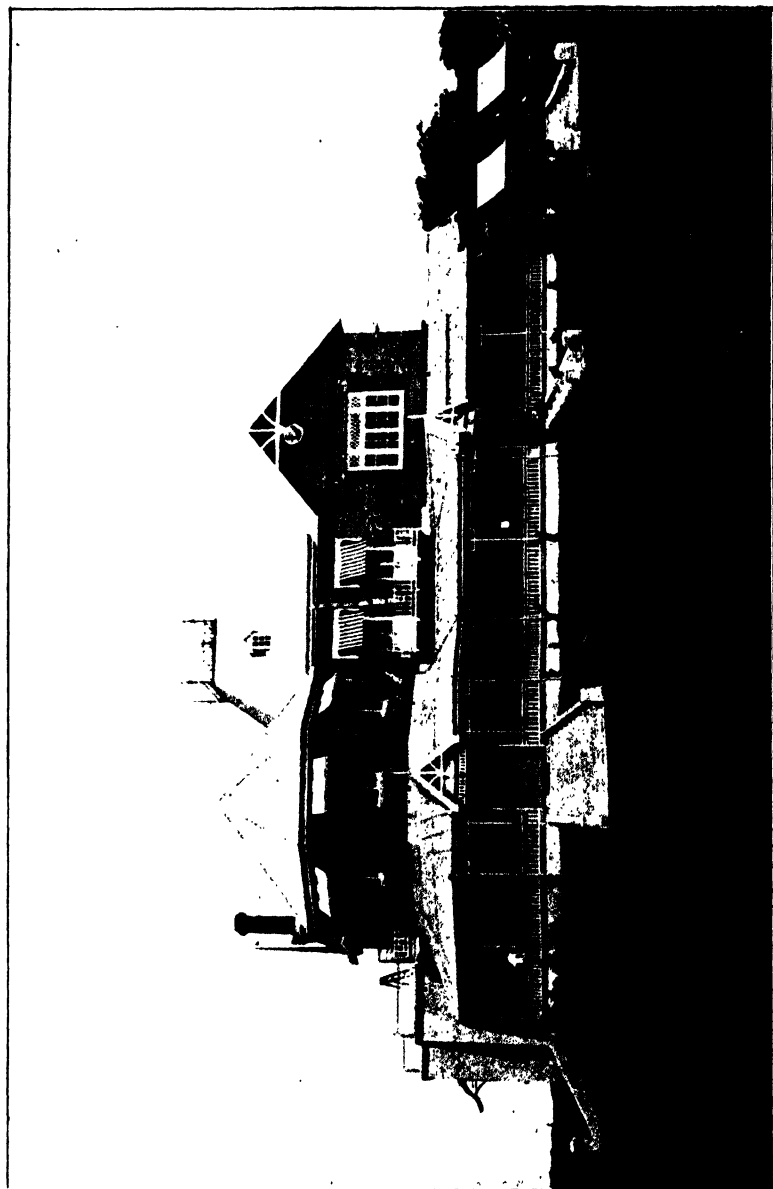


Photo by Lobo, Entebbe.

THE
HANDBOOK OF UGANDA.

SECOND EDITION.

BY
H. R. WALLIS, C.M.G., C.B.E.,
LATE CHIEF SECRETARY TO THE GOVERNMENT.

PUBLISHED FOR THE GOVERNMENT OF THE UGANDA PROTECTORATE BY
THE CROWN AGENTS FOR THE COLONIES,
4, MILLBANK, LONDON, S.W. 1,
1920.

PRICE 7/6.

CONTENTS.

CHAP.		PAGE
I.	History of the Protectorate	I
II.	General Description	24
III.	The Buganda Province	27
IV.	The Eastern Province	46
V.	The Western Province	71
VI.	The Northern Province	96
VII.	The Rudolf Province	119
VIII.	Anthropology	125
IX.	Zoology	156
X.	Entomology	163
XI.	Medical	170
XII.	Agriculture	179
XIII.	Live Stock	203
XIV.	Woods and Forests	207
XV.	Botany	222
XVI.	Land and Mining	226
XVII.	Trade	228
XVIII.	Revenue and Expenditure	236
XIX.	Legal	244
XX.	The Great War in Uganda	250
XXI.	Missions	263
XXII.	Volunteer Reserve	272
XXIII.	Communications	274
XXIV.	Meteorology	281
XXV.	Geology	294

APPENDICES.

A.	Census	302
B.	Bibliography	304
C.	Game Ordinance	305

MAP OF PROTECTORATE.

PREFACE.

SECOND EDITION.

This edition has been revised and brought up-to-date ; much of it has been re-written.

The chapter on Anthropology has been re-cast and extended to include notes on the northern races of the Protectorate by Mr. J. H. Driberg, Assistant District Commissioner, who has made a close study of this subject. Reference has also been made to Sir A. Kagwa's *Baschabaka Be Buganda*, the Rev. J. Roscoe's *The Baganda*, and to Sir H. Johnston's *The Uganda Protectorate* for certain material.

New chapters on Botany, Geology, the Great War in Uganda and Missions have been added, also a Bibliography, whilst the detailed Postal and Customs Regulations, which appeared in the first edition, have been omitted, as these can be found in the publications of the departments concerned.

EDINBURGH, FEBRUARY, 1920.

NOTE ON THE VALUE OF PREFIXES IN THE LUGANDA LANGUAGE.

In Bantu languages the class prefixes usually denote the *nature* or *kind* of thing referred to, and each one, or its agreement, is used before the substantive, adjective and verb to which it belongs, throughout the sentence. The commoner ones, used more especially for names, are as follows :—

Bu- (Swahili *U-*) indicates a Country, County or an abstract quality : *e.g.*, Buganda, the Ganda country. (Officially, Buganda now denotes the *Kingdom* of Buganda only, while Uganda is used for the name of the Protectorate as a whole).

Bulabirizi is the whole Diocese : *i.e.*, the country under one Bishop or "Overseer," formed from the root *-laba*, to see.

Bwakabaka is the kingdom : *i.e.* *Bu-*, the Country, *a-*, of, *Kabaka*, a King.

Bulungi, goodness : from *Bu-*, abstract quality, *-lungi*, adjectival root for good.

Mu-, with plural *Ba-* (Swahili *M-* and *Wa-*), signifies a person : *e.g.*, Muganda, one from Buganda, a Ganda person ; Baganda, the people of Buganda ; Batoro, the people of Toro, etc., etc.

Ki-, with plural *Bi-*, is a very common prefix for things in general. Kintu, a thing ; Kiti, a stick ; Kigambo, a word (root *-gamba*, to say).

Ka-, with plural *Bu-*, usually denotes something small : *e.g.*, Kantu, a little thing ; Kati, a little stick ; Kagambo, a small word or matter.

It is also an honorific title : *e.g.*, Kabaka, the great receiver, from root *-baka*, to catch in the hand ; Katikiro, the Prime Minister, also called formerly " Kamala byona," the decider of all things, from root *-mala*, to finish. (In "Speke's Journal" he is mistakenly called, " Kamraviona.")

Lu-, with plural *N-*, has usually the idea of length, and also denotes the language (from Lulimi, the tongue). Thus, Luganda, means the Ganda language ; Lutoro, the language of Toro, etc., etc.

This prefix is also used to denote greatness : *e.g.*, Luwangula, the great conqueror, from root *-wangula*, to conquer ; Luwanga, the Mighty One (Lunyoro " Ruhanga," used for God) ; Lubale, a powerful spirit ; Lumbe, Death.

N-, with same plural, is the prefix for a very large class, especially of animals, birds, etc. Foreign words, as imported into Luganda, are also placed mainly in this class.

Wa-. This prefix is one of place, but is regularly used

also before names of animals or birds to personify them, as in fables : *e.g.*, Wanjovu, Mr. Elephant ; Wakaima, Mr. Hare (Brer Rabbit).

Na- seems to have a specially feminine force for persons, names of hills, rivers, etc. : *e.g.*, Namasole, the Queen Mother ; Namirembe, the hill of peace ; Nam-birirwe, a river near Entebbe ; Namayiba, the hill of doves ; Nalongo, the mother of twins, etc., etc.

The following examples may be of assistance : Muganda, a person of Buganda ; Baganda, the people of Buganda ; Buganda, the country ; Luganda, the language of Buganda ; Kiganda, a thing of Buganda ; Munyoro, a person of Bunyoro ; Banyoro, the people of Bunyoro, etc., etc.

It should be clearly understood that the above notes are merely typical and by no means comprehensive. But they may suffice to make books on the country more interesting and more intelligible to their readers.

NATIVE TITLES.

KABAKA	..	..	..	King of Buganda.
MUKAMA	..	..	..	King of Bunyoro.
MUKAMA	..	..	..	King of Toro.
MUGABE	..	..	..	King of Ankole.
KATIKIRO	..	..	..	Prime Minister.
OMULAMUZI	..	..	..	Chief Justice.
OMUWANIKA	..	..	..	Treasurer.
LUKIKO	..	..	..	Parliament.
ABAMASAZA	..	..	..	County Chiefs. For titles, <i>see</i> under "Provinces"
SAZA	..	..	..	A County.
ABAGOMBOLOLA	..	..	..	District Chiefs.
GOMBOLOLA	..	..	..	A District.
MUMYUKA	..	..	..	Titles of chiefs in order of precedence for Gombolola appointments and sub- ordinate classes of Chieftainships.
SABADU	..	..	..
SABAGABO	..	..	..
SABAWALI	..	..	..
MUSALE	..	..	..
MUTUBA	..	..	..

ADMINISTRATORS SINCE 1899.

- 1899-1901. Sir H. H. JOHNSTON, G.C.M.G., K.C.B.
- 1901-1905. Lt.-Col. Sir J. HAYES SADLER, K.C.M.G., C.B.
- 1905-1909. Sir H. H. BELL, K.C.M.G.
1909. Major H. E. S. CORDEAUX, C.B., C.M.G. (never assumed Office).
1909. (May-August), S. C. TOMKINS, C.M.G. (Acting Governor).
- 1909-1910. A. G. BOYLE, C.M.G. (Acting Governor).
1911. Sir F. J. JACKSON, K.C.M.G., C.B.
1912. (July-Dec.), H. R. WALLIS, C.M.G., C.B.E. (Acting Governor).
- 1912-1914. Sir F. J. JACKSON, K.C.M.G., C.B. (except during June, 1913, when Mr. Wallis acted as Governor).
1914. (May-Nov.), H. R. WALLIS, C.M.G., C.B.E. (Acting Governor).
- 1914-1917. Sir F. J. JACKSON, K.C.M.G., C.B.
- 1917-1918. (April, 1917-Feb., 1918), H. R. WALLIS, C.M.G., C.B.E. (Acting Governor).
1918. Sir R. T. CORYNDON, K.C.M.G.

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

		PAGE
1.	Government House, Entebbe	<i>Frontispiece</i>
2.	The Ruwenzori Mountains	<i>Facing</i> 26
3.	Entebbe Pier	,, 40
4.	Jinja Pier	,, 48
5.	Native Village, Teso District	,, 60
6.	Chiefs with their Bicycles, Teso District	,, 60
7.	The Ripon Falls	,, 70
8.	Margarita and Alexandra Peaks	,, 76
9.	Market at Fort Portal	,, 80
10.	The Murchison Falls	,, 100
11.	Bari Natives, Fire-making	,, 118
12.	Baganda Women	,, 128
13.	Picking Coffee, Kireka Estate	,, 179
14.	Botanic Gardens, Entebbe	,, 188
15.	Para Rubber, Kivuvu Estate	,, 192
16.	Cacao, Kivuvu Estate	,, 202
17.	An Ankole Ox	,, 206
18.	The Cotton Market, Kumi	,, 206
19.	<i>Mæsopsis berchemoides</i>	,, 207
20.	<i>Khaya senegalensis</i> , ringed for seasoning	,, 209
21.	Transporting Timber, Mabira Forest	210
22.	<i>Khaya anthotheca</i> , C.Dc.	214
23.	<i>Cynometra Alexandri</i>	215
24.	The Sekibobo and his Motor Bicycle	<i>Facing</i> 253
25.	A Cutting on the Busoga Railway	276
26.	Part of a Fluted Argillite Dome, Ankole	<i>Facing</i> 281
27.	Ancient Granite Country, Ankole	,, 294
28.	Quartzite Outcrop near Mbarara	,, 299
29.	Fracture Plane between Kabale and Kigezi	,, 301

INDEX.

	PAGE
Acholi, The	136
Administrative Divisions	23
Administration of Estates of Deceased Persons	249
Advocates of the High Court	248
Afforestation	216
African Native Medical Corps	262
Agriculture	179
Agricultural Land Leases	226
Ankole District	80
Ankole Forests	213
Anthropology	125
Arua	25
Attorney General's Department	249
Atura County	63
Baamba, The	126
Babira, The	126
Babito, The	3
Bachwezi, The	2, 112
Badama, The	146
Baganda, The	127
Baganda Clans	128
Baganda Rifles, The	258
Bagishu, The	133
Bagweri, The	135
Bahima, The	1, 153
Bahutu, The	132
Bairo, The	132
Bakedi, The	136
Bakenyi, The	153
Baker, Sir Samuel	9, 115
Bakiga, The	126
Bakonjo, The	132
Balagenyi, The	135
Bambuba, The	126
Bananas	191
Banking	235

	PAGE
Bankruptcy	249
Bantu, The	126
Banyoro, The	131
Banyuli, The	134
Bari, The	138
Basoga, The	131
Batoro, The	132
Batusi, The	155
Batwa, The	126, 147
Beeswax	192
Bell, Sir H. H.	21
Berkeley, Mr.	16, 19
Bibliography	304
Birds	159
Birds, Migration of	161
Blackwater Fever	174
Boils, Treatment of	177
Botany	222
Boundaries of the Protectorate	24
Buckwheat	192
Budamba County	51
Buddu	31
Budongo Forest	211
Bugabula County	47
Bugahya	97
Buganda Province	27
Bugangadzi County	36
Bugerere County	28
Bugishu	51
Bugoma Forest	212
Bugwe County	47
Bugweri	47, 51
Buhaguzi	97
Buhwezu	80
Building Leases	226
Bujenje County	97
Bukakata Port	34
Bukanga County	80
Bukedea	59
Bukedi District	50
Bukoli County	47
Bulamogi	47
Bulemezi	28

	PAGE
Bunya County	47
Bunyangabo County	72
Bunyaraguru „	80
Bunyoro District	97
Bunyuli County	47, 51
Burahya „	72
Buruli „	28, 97
Busiro „	40
Busoga District	47
Busongora County	72
Busuju „	28
Butambala „	40
Butiaba	111
Butumbi	88
Buvuma County	40, 43
Buyaga „	36
Buzimba „	80
Bwamba „	72
Bwekula „	36
Cacao	187
Calf Skins	205
Carrier and Transport Corps	255
Cassava	191
Castor Oil	192
Census	302, 303
Chillies	188
Chinchizi	88, 91
Chua District	102
Church Missionary Society	263
Chwa, Daudi	17, 21
Climate	170
Coffee	182
Colville, Colonel	16
Communications	274
Companies, Registration of	249
Congo Carrier Corps	257
Congo, Routes to the	277
Constipation, Treatment of	176
Cordeaux, Captain	22
Cotton	53, 61, 66, 179
Cotton Seed	180
Cotton Tax	237
Court Fees	248

	PAGE
Courts of the Abagombolola	44
Courts of the Abamasaza	44
Court of the Lukiko	44
Crops, Ankole District	82
„ Bukedi „	53
„ Busoga „	48
„ Entebbe „	40
„ Masaka „	32
„ Mengo „	29
„ Mubendi „	37
„ Lango „	66
„ Teso „	61
„ Toro „	75, 76
„ Rudolf Province	120
Crown Lands	226
Currency	235
Customs Dues	237
de Bellefonds	10
Diarrhœa, Treatment of	176
Dokolo County	63
Duhaga, Andereya	19, 116
Dysentery, Treatment of	176
Earth Movements	298
East Africa Transport Corps	257
Eastern Province	46
Elgon, Mount	26, 51
Entebbe	25, 42
Entebbe District	39
Entomology	163
Erute County	63
Ethnological Survey	155
Fibres	192
Fishing	111
Flowers	199
Forests	209
Fort Portal	25, 78
Fortifications, Old	35
Fruits	193, 200
Gabula, The	47
Gardening	193
Game	156
Game, Ankole District	84
„ Bukedi „	56

	PAGE
Game, Bunyoro District	107
„ Busoga „	49
„ Chua „	109
„ Entebbe „	42
„ Gulu „	108
„ Kigezi „	92
„ Lango „	65
„ Masaka „	33
„ Mengo „	30
„ Mubendi „	38
„ Teso „	63
„ Toro „	74, 78
„ West Nile „	109
„ Rudolf Province	123
Game Ordinance	305
Geology	294
Ghee	206
Goat Skins	205
Gomba County	28
Government, Native, Ankole District	82
„ „ Buganda Province	43, 44
„ „ Bukedi District	52
„ „ Bunyoro „	99
„ „ Busoga „	48
„ „ Chua „	106
„ „ Gulu „	106
„ „ Kigezi „	91
„ „ Lango „	64
„ „ Rudolf Province	120
„ „ Teso District	61
„ „ Toro „	76
„ „ West Nile District	107
Great War in Uganda, The	250
Ground Nuts	188
Gulu	25
Gulu District	100
Hamites, The	148
Hannington, Bishop	10, 264
Health	170
Hides	205
History, Protectorate	I
„ Ankole District	85
„ Bukedi „	57

	PAGE
History, Busoga District	49
.. Entebbe	42
.. Kigezi	93
.. Lango	66
.. Masaka	34
.. Mubendi	39
.. Nothern Province	112
.. Rudolf	124
.. Teso District	63
.. Toro	79
Hoima	111
Hospitals	173
Igaga, The	47
Igara County	80
Injuries, Treatment of	177
Insect Pests, Legislation against	164
Insects Attacking Crops	165
Intelligence Department	259
Internal Parasites, Treatment of	178
Ishingiro	80
Jackson, Sir F.	12, 16, 22
Jiggers	177
Jinja	25, 49
Johnston, Sir H.	20
Judicial Department, The	245
Kabale	25, 93
Kabakas of Buganda	7
Kabarega	9, 13, 115
Kabula County	31
Kago, The	28, 80, 97
Kagwa, Sir Apolo	13
Kaima, The	40, 72, 80
Kakunguru	58
Kalema	11
Kaliro	49
Kampala	25, 30
Kamrasi	9, 115
Kamswaga, The	31
Kamuli	49
Kangao, The	28, 80, 97
Karamojo, The	147
Karamojo District	70
Kasagama	6, 13

	PAGE
Kashari County	80
Kasuju, The	28, 72, 80
Katambala, The	40, 72, 80
Kayonsa	88
Kazara County	80
Kiagwe	28
Kiadondo County	28
Kibanda	97
Kibanga Port	30
Kibale County	72
Kibale Forest	213
Kigulu County	47
Kihukya	97
Kigezi District	86
Kiimba, The	36
Kimbugwe, The	28, 72, 80, 97
King's African Rifles	262
Kintu	3
Kioga County	63
Kitagwenda County	72
Kitagweta	72
Kitgum	25
Kitunzi, The	28, 72, 80
Kivumbo	87
Koki County	31
Koki, Story of	6
Koli County	63
Kojonjero County	51
Kumam, The	148
Kumi County	59
Kwania	63
Kweba, The	40
Kyaka County	72
Kyambalango, The	36, 80
Lake Albert	26, 276
Lake Kioga	26, 276
.. Victoria	26, 276
Lakes, Crater	74, 75
.. Great	26
Land	226
Land Division under the Agreement	20
Lango, The	138
Lango District	63

	PAGE
Law of the Protectorate	244
Lendu, The	126
Linseed	191
Lira	25
Live Stock	203
Lobor District	69
Luambabye Forest	216
Luba's	11, 18, 19, 47
Lugard, Sir F.	12
Lukiko, The	43
Lumama, The	31
Lunatic Asylums	174
Luuka County	47
Lwekula, The	36
Macdonald, Captain	15
Mabira Forest	210
Madi, The	137
Maize	191
Malaria, Treatment of	174
Masaka	25, 34
Masaka District	31
Maroto	25
Maruzi County	63
Masindi	25, 109
Masindi Port	112
Mawokota County	40
Mawogola	31
Mbai, The	146
Mbale,	25, 56
Mbarara	25, 85
Mbogo	13
Mbubi, The	40
Mechanical Transport	279
Medical	170
Mengo District	28
Menya, The	47
Meteorology	281
Mfumbiro Volcanoes	26, 90
Mill Hill Mission	271
Milletts	191
Mining	227
Mining Lease	227
Missions	31, 39, 42, 50, 59, 79, 263

	PAGE
Mitoma County	80
Mjanji Port	49
Mountains	26
Moroto County	63
Mubendi	25, 38
Mubendi District	36
Mugerere, The	28
Mukwenda, The	28, 72, 97
Mugema, The	40, 72
Murchison Falls	98
Mutesa	7, 8, 10, 31
Mwanga	10, 11, 12, 14
Mwenge County	72
Nanyumba, The	47
Native Anglican Church	266
Native Military Food Supplies	255
Native Land Leased to Non-Natives	226
Ngalama County	80
Ngobi, The	47
Nile Route, The	274
Nilotics, The	135
Northern Province	96
Nshara County	80
Nyabushoshi County	80
Nyakabimba	72
Obara, The	47
Palisa District	57
Peas and Beans	192
People, Bukedi District	57
Peters, Carl	12
Pigmy Prognathous, The	125
Plague	171
Pokino, The	31, 72, 80, 97
Poll Tax	236
Port Bell	30
Portal, Sir G.	15
Posts and Telegraphs	279
Potatoes, Sweet	191
Prickly Heat, Treatment of	177
Prospecting Licences	227
Railway, Busoga	48, 276
„ Kampala-Port Bell	22, 276
Registration of Documents	49

	PAGE
Registration of Patents	249
Revenue and Expenditure	236
Rice	190
Roads and Routes	277, 278
Roads, Ankole District	83
„ Bukedi „	54
„ Bunyoro „	99
„ Busoga „	48
„ Chua „	103
„ Entebbe „	41
„ Gulu „	102
„ Kigezi „	91
„ Lango „	65
„ Masaka „	32
„ Mengo „	20
„ Mubendi „	37
„ Rudolf Province	120
„ Teso District	62
„ Toro „	77
„ West Nile District	105
Ruampara County	80
Ruanda	89, 91
Rubber	185
Rudolf Province	119
Ruhekura, The	72
Rukiga	90, 91
Rusumburu	88, 91
Ruwenzori Mountains	26, 73, 76
Sadler, Sir J. H.	21
Samia County	47
Scabies, Treatment of	177
Sekibobo, The	28, 72, 80, 97
Semliki River	76
Separation of Toro from Bunyoro, Story of	5
Serere County	59
Sese Islands	40, 43
Sheep Skins	205
Shema County	80
Silk Moths, African	37, 192
Sim Sim	189
Singo County	28
Sleeping Sickness	21, 43, 50, 171
Snake Bite, Treatment of	178

	PAGE
Sore Throat, Treatment of	175
Soroti	25, 59, 63
Sudanese Mutiny	17, 18, 19
Sugar Cane	189
Survey	227
Sunstroke, Treatment of	175
Tabingwa, The	47
Tea	190
Telegraphs	279
Telephones	280
Temporary Occupation Licences	226
Ternan, Colonel	17
Tero Forest	152
Teso, The	152
Teso District	59
Tobacco	190
Toro District	72
Toro and Ankole Agreements	21
Trade	228
Tucker, Bishop	264
Uganda Agreement	20, 43
Uganda Boundary Adjustments	22
,, Medical Service	260
,, Police Service Battalion	259
,, Transport Corps	255
,, Volunteer Reserve	259, 272
Useful Trees	216
Usuku County	59
Vegetables	193
Victoria Nile	276
Volcanoes	26, 90
Wakoli, The	47
Wamia, The	153
Waterways	276
West Nile District	104
Western Province	71
Wheat	190
White Fathers Mission	269
Woods and Forests	207
Zebondo, The	47
Zoology	156

THE HANDBOOK OF UGANDA

CHAPTER I.

HISTORY OF THE PROTECTORATE.

THE history of the countries comprised in the Uganda Protectorate prior to the advent of the first Europeans can only be gleaned from native tradition. Before the establishment of the Government. This in the case of the more important Bantu tribes is copious, and has been made the subject of careful study by more than one European ; but little has been definitely discovered as to the traditions of the more remote tribes—Bantu, Nilotic and Hamitic—included in the Protectorate.

It will be convenient first to deal with the history of the countries of Bunyoro, Buganda, Toro, Ankole and Busoga, both because more has been learnt about their traditions, and also because it is possible to consider them to some extent as a whole from the point of view of their earlier history.

At some period in the fairly remote past these countries were invaded by a Hamitic people, known as Bahima, who came from the north-east and established a dominion over the races whom they found in possession of the soil, who were probably negroes of a type similar to those natives of Buganda and Busoga at the present day who have not been influenced by any subsequent admixture of alien blood. Who these Bahima were or whence they originally sprang it is impossible now to determine ; it has often been suggested, and would seem probable, that ancient Egypt exerted some influence on the development of the races living along the banks of the Nile, but no reliable evidence has yet been adduced to prove that the Bahima form a link in any connection between Egypt and the peoples on the shore of the Victoria Nyanza. The type is seen at its purest, so far as the Uganda Protectorate is concerned, in Ankole, where the Bahima are most numerous and where,

though there has no doubt been considerable intermixture with the aboriginal population, they seem to have kept themselves more apart than has been the case in the other parts of the Protectorate. The Bahima are essentially a pastoral people and Ankole is essentially a pastoral country, and it is likely that, owing to the conditions being more favourable to their mode of life than in Bunyoro or Buganda, the feeling of pride in superiority of caste has been more carefully preserved and has tended to keep them more aloof from the despised Bairu, or peasants, who cultivate the soil.

In attempting to give an account of the history of the countries concerned, it is obviously impossible to piece together a story of which all the details will be accurate, for not only do the traditions vary among the various tribes but even in one tribe two versions of the same tradition may be found to be contradictory, and so far as any effort towards chronological agreement is concerned the result is generally increased confusion. Still, some idea may be gained of the general course of events which have led to the formation of the various dynasties that have been established.

It is probable that the invaders of Buganda and Ankole passed through Bunyoro prior to setting up their authority in the two former countries. So far as Toro is concerned it was until comparatively recent times an integral part of the dominions of the Mukama (King) of Bunyoro, and there seems to be no reason to doubt the substantial truth of the story of the formation of the new kingdom which is referred to later. In the case of Buganda, even if it was at one time a part of the kingdom of Bunyoro, the separation took place at a very much earlier date and it is not so easy to determine how and when it happened and what is the connection between the ruling families. With Ankole it is still more difficult to ascertain anything definite, either because the tradition is more meagre in quantity or because it has not yet been made the subject of any thorough investigation.

Taking first the Bunyoro story, we hear of a dynasty established in the far distant past, called the Bachwezi (Sorcerers), who are said to have sprung from the crater lakes of Toro, and were credited with many gifts of a supernatural kind. These were almost certainly Bahima who had invaded the country from beyond the Victoria Nile or were a back-wave from a previous invasion that had passed through to the more desirable cattle country of Ankole. This dynasty is believed to have continued for several generations, and to have been succeeded by a

new line, known as the Babito, the first of whom was one Lukedi who entered Bunyoro from Bukedi, then a somewhat vague geographical term including the countries lying across the Nile to the north and north-east of Buganda and Bunyoro.

Turning now to the tradition of the Baganda the first ruler heard of was Kintu, who figures as a supernatural immortal being in many stories of the Banyoro and Baganda alike. Most of the more intelligent Baganda, on being questioned as to where Kintu came from will point vaguely to the north or will say that he came from Bunyoro, and there is one story that says he crossed the Nile and landed in Bunyoro at Foweira with a considerable following, and then slowly travelled down into Buganda. After he had been some time in the country he gave domains to three of his children, those with whom we are at present concerned being Lukedi and Wunyi. The former was given land in Bukedi and the latter in Bunyoro. If any trust can be put in these ancient stories this Lukedi may have been the founder of the Babito dynasty spoken of above, more especially when we hear that Wunyi was the king of Bunyoro who succeeded Lukedi. Now the Banyoro say that their king Wunyi partitioned the neighbouring countries among his children, a point in which the two traditions seem to come together. For the Baganda say that a son of Wunyi was given Busoga, the only difference being that it was given to him by his grandfather Kintu instead of by his father Wunyi. Again, with regard to Buganda, the Banyoro say that it was given by Wunyi to one of his sons, while the tale as told by the Baganda is as follows: When Kintu died or rather, as the story goes, disappeared, he was succeeded by his son Chwa who again had a son Kalempera. As a consequence of false information prompted by jealousy Kalempera was banished to the Court of Wunyi, king of Bunyoro, and while he was there a son was born to him by the wife of Wunyi and was named Kimera. Kalempera, frightened, fled to Buganda but died on the road. After some years Chwa disappeared as his father had done and, there being no heir, an interregnum followed. Subsequently the Chiefs heard the story of Kimera and sent to ask him to take the kingdom of Buganda. To this he consented and from that date there is said to have been an unbroken line of 32 Kabakas in Buganda, extending over perhaps 400 years. Here again tradition is somewhat unreliable as, during the same period, the Banyoro count no more than 15 kings.

The ruling family of Ankole tell of 31 kings, and it is probable that they represent an older stock, either as

having arrived in the earlier of two invasions or as having been the origin from which a tide set back into Bunyoro subsequent to the establishment of their dominion in Ankole. As usual, supernatural qualities are attached to the earliest of these kings, the name of the first being Ruhanga, which means "The Creator" and is the word that is used as the translation of "God." The fourth king was Ishimbwa who was succeeded by his son Ndahura, and it is interesting to note—though it is impossible to establish the identity—that these two names occur in the same relationship in the traditions of the Banyoro, Ndahura being the last king of the Bachwezi line, about whom the following story is told: The king Bukuku had a daughter Nyinamwiru and his witch doctors prophesied that he would suffer harm at the hands of the child of this daughter. Consequently elaborate precautions were taken to seclude Nyinamwiru, and successfully, until one day an attendant met a handsome youth hunting in the forest whose name was Ishimbwa and who would appear to have come from Ankole. She took him back with her with the result that Nyinamwiru, attracted by him, hid him in the house where he stayed for several days. In due course a child was born to Nyinamwiru and was named Ndahura. As soon as news of this reached Bukuku he gave orders that the child was to be drowned and it was accordingly taken and thrown into the river. However, unknown to those to whom the task had been entrusted, the child was caught by the branches of an overhanging tree and shortly after found by a potter who had gone to the spot to dig clay. He, guessing who the child was, went and informed the mother of what had happened, and it was arranged between them that the boy should be brought up in the potter's house. In course of time he grew up to be a strong and handsome man and spent his time tending the potter's cattle. Now it happened that on several occasions he quarrelled with the herdsmen of the king. They complained to Bukuku of the overbearing behaviour of the young man and, after rating them soundly for allowing themselves to be browbeaten by one who was little more than a child, Bukuku told them to notify him at once when next they came across the boy. This occurred very shortly afterwards and Bukuku went in person to settle the matter. Ndahura, seeing the king and a number of followers, fled; but when Bukuku, in pursuing, was isolated in advance of his men Ndahura turned and killed him, and became king in his stead. He reigned for some years until the coming of Lukedi, soon after which he left the country with the rest of the Bachwezi travelling in the direction of Lake

Albert, the waters of which, according to one version of the story, are said to have parted for them to pass through.

It would appear fairly certain that Bunyoro, Buganda, Toro and Busoga—and possibly Ankole and some districts now included in German East Africa—were ruled by one family and that the capital was frequently moved, as has always been the custom among these peoples, and was at one time in Bunyoro and at another in one of the other countries. Districts were no doubt either given to or taken by members of the Royal Family who were in some cases strong enough to assert and maintain their independence. Traditions of the time when the country formed one kingdom would be preserved among the various sub-divisions but would be altered with the passage of time and localised and perhaps coloured, more or less unconsciously, so as to lay stress on the predominant position of one tribe or another.

The independence of Buganda and Ankole was established at an early date ; Busoga has never been an independent kingdom, having always been divided up into chieftainships of varying importance, the chiefs in the southern portions being to a certain extent subject to the Kabakas of Buganda and suffering from constant raids by the Baganda, while those in the northern parts gave a sort of allegiance to the Bakama of Bunyoro.

The story of the separation of Toro from Bunyoro is as follows ; Somewhere about the beginning of the 19th century a Prince of Bunyoro, named Kaboyo, was sent by his father Kyebambe, the Mukama, to collect tribute in Toro and was so much pleased with the country that he resolved to set himself up there as an independent ruler. In the fighting that followed he was successful and he established the line of which the present Mukama, Kasagama, is the eighth representative. From time to time the Bakama of Bunyoro have attempted to reassert their supremacy with varying success, until, when Nyaika was on the throne of Toro, Kabarega, the father of the present Mukama of Bunyoro, raided and completely overran the country. Nyaika was succeeded by Mukabirere, during whose reign Toro was again raided by the Banyoro and, owing to the treachery of a chief named Lwomire, Mukabirere and several princes were captured and carried off to Bunyoro. A young prince, Mukalusa, now set himself up as Mukama of Toro and he shared the fate of Mukabirere, for Kabarega, who was determined that there should not be an independent ruler again in Toro, forthwith sent another army which captured Mukalusa and certain other of the Batoro princes. Subsequent to this another

member of the royal family named Namuyonjo attempted, with the help of Mutesa of Buganda, to seat himself on the throne of Toro, but, as soon as the Baganda army had returned home, Kabarega once more entered the country and Namuyonjo fled to the court of Mutesa where he died soon after of small-pox. At the time of the capture of Mukalusa a few loyal chiefs belonging to the clan of the Mukama had managed to escape with three young princes whom they took to Ankole, one of them being Daudi Kasagama. While in Ankole the two elder boys were murdered by the orders of the mother of the Mugabe, Ntale; Kasagama, hearing of this, fled to Buddu where he took refuge with a chief named Byakweyamba. Later he was eventually restored to the throne of Toro by Captain Lugard.

The present boundaries of these countries have been arrived at in the course of time as a result of the continuous inter-tribal raiding and fighting that has formed the main feature of their history from the earliest days. At the beginning of its independence the extent of Buganda was very much smaller than is now the case. The large and populous county of Buddu was partly independent and partly dependent on Bunyoro, while Buwekula, Bugangadzi and Buyaga and the northern parts of Singo and Bugerere were definitely included in that kingdom. Kabula formed part of the dominions of the Mugabe of Ankole. What is now the county of Koki was for some time subject to the Chief of Kiziba, in German territory, but later became an independent kingdom until its absorption in Buganda.

Buddu had always attracted raiding parties from Buganda and, from the time of Kintu onwards, expeditions were sent there. It was not, however, until the reign of Junju, somewhere in the second half of the 18th century, that Buddu was definitely annexed to Buganda. Buwekula was added by Kamanya at the beginning of the 19th century.

The story of Koki is as follows: Sansa Gabigogo, Mukama of Bunyoro, the grandson of Lukedi, had three sons and when he died was succeeded by the eldest, Luhaga, who showed a great dislike to, or perhaps fear of, his two brothers. Consequently the youngest, Bwawe, leaving Bunyoro, went and lived in Ankole. Some years later Luhaga paid a visit to the Mugabe of Ankole and, finding Bwawe there, ordered him to return with him to Bunyoro. However, Luhaga determined to raid Koki before going home, and easily overran it as the people offered no resistance to speak of. Bwawe liked the country and the people and begged his brother to leave him there

to rule it, promising at the same time that the country should pay tribute to Bunyoro. Luhaga consented and it was arranged accordingly, Bwawe succeeding in asserting his entire independence from the Chief of Kiziba. On his death he was succeeded by his son Kiteimbwa who, having fought with success against the Baganda, went to Bunyoro and reported his victory to Luhaga. Luhaga, frightened at the growing power of Koki and thinking that, Buganda having been defeated, Bunyoro would next be attacked, had Kiteimbwa put to death, the latter prophesying as he was led to execution that his brothers would throw off their allegiance to Bunyoro and transfer it to Buganda. And so it turned out for Mujuga, as soon as he had succeeded his brother Kiteimbwa, sent to Junju, Kabaka of Buganda, saying that he wished to serve him as overlord and offered to lend him his aid in driving the Banyoro chiefs from Buddu. Since his day there have been seven kings of Koki, the last being Ndaula who, in 1894, agreed that Koki should become a Saza (county) of Buganda, he himself taking the title of Owesaza (County Chief). His son is the present Owesaza.

Under a succession of vigorous and capable Kabakas, Kyabagu (1770?), Junju, Semakokiro, Kamanya, Suna, Mutesa (1860?-1884) the power of the Baganda has increased at the expense of the neighbouring tribes. Their name was known and feared all round the Victoria Nyanza and their raids are said to have reached as far as to Lake Tanganyika.

The foregoing gives some of the main features of the traditional history of those parts of the Protectorate that were foremost in civilization and power before the arrival of the European. But there remains a large extent of country bounded by the Sudan frontier on the north, the Nile on the west, the British East Africa frontier and Lake Rudolf on the east, and the frontiers of Bunyoro and Busoga on the south, to which attention must be turned. A remarkable feature of this country and one that strikes the traveller at once is the large number of tribes that inhabit it, differing from one another in the most marked way both physically and linguistically.

Having regard to this fact and to geographical considerations and also to the fact that there are known to have been tribal movements in recent years, it becomes probable that from the earliest times all this stretch of country has been overrun at intervals by invasions from different directions which have left their marks either in settlements of pure Bantu and Nilotic tribes or tribes of mixed blood in which

the Bantu and Nilotic elements have been the main factors, while a strong Hamitic strain can also be discerned.

The largest, as also probably one of the earliest of these immigrations, consisted of the ancestors of the Bagishu, a Bantu people inhabiting the foothills of Mt. Elgon. Whence they originally came it is impossible to say, but possibly it was from the northern parts of the Congo. This no doubt takes us back to a date much antecedent to the invasions of the Hamitic people referred to above, and it is probable that the inhabitants found in Bunyoro and the neighbouring countries by the Bahima had passed into those countries from beyond the Nile.

Subsequent to this Bantu invasion came the inrush of the Nilotic and Hamitic peoples, represented now by the Lango, Acholi, Teso, Miro and Kumam. This stream appears to have passed right through the country and to have penetrated as far as the Gulf of Kavirondo, where it has left its mark.

The first hint of the approach of foreign influence to the Protectorate is found in the tradition that Kyabagu was the first Kabaka of Buganda to possess cups and plates, while his son Semakokiro was the first to buy cotton cloth. The latter used to send one of his men with ivory to Karagwe, in exchange for which he obtained cloth and cowrie shells which latter were then the currency of the country. These goods were brought to Karagwe by Arab traders from Zanzibar who, during the early part of the 19th century, had advanced slowly from the coast into the interior, and had established themselves on Lake Tanganyika and in Unyamwezi at the southern end of Lake Victoria. From the latter country they had pushed round the western shores of the Lake and reached the capital of the king of Karagwe. It was probably somewhere about 1845 that the first traders entered Buganda during the reign of the Kabaka Suna, who learned from them of the existence of white men. These Arab traders returned to the coast with definite news of the great lakes, and also highly coloured reports of the civilization and power of Buganda.

In 1860 Speke, who, with Burton, had earlier discovered Tanganyika and the southern end of the Victoria Nyanza, was sent with Grant to explore the Victoria Nyanza and settle the question of the source of the Nile. They arrived at Mutesa's court in 1862 and Speke writes with admiration of the remarkable semi-civilized political and social system which he found established in the country. After a stay of some six months they travelled home through Bunyoro and the Egyptian Sudan, discovering the source of the Nile

at the Ripon Falls, and following the course of the river as closely as possible, though they did not visit Lake Albert, of which they heard reports from the natives.

It was soon after this that another European reached Bunyoro, coming from the North. This was Mr. (afterwards Sir Samuel) Baker who, with his wife, had set out to work right up the Nile to its source. Speke and Grant met them at Gondokoro and gave them news of the native reports of the Albert Lake. Baker went on and entered Bunyoro where he found Kamrasi on the throne. Speke had not been well received by him and Baker fared no better. Shortly before their arrival Kamrasi had had a good deal of trouble in establishing himself, as his claim had been disputed by a brother who was supported by a famous witch-doctor reputed to be a descendant of the Bachwezi. Kamrasi defeated his brother, but the witch-doctor continued to annoy him as he found many sympathisers among the common people who recalled an ancient prophecy, dating from the days of the departure of the Bachwezi, to the effect that the Bachwezi would return after ten kings had reigned. On the arrival of the Europeans this prophecy was of course applied to them, and such was Kamrasi's fear that they had come to take away his kingdom that, for a long time, he refused to help them and gradually stopped supplying them with food. Eventually, however, the fears of his people, whose only wish was that the strangers should leave the country before they were all bewitched, prevailed, and he provided men to escort them to Lake Albert, which they reached after considerable hardships in 1864, and to which they gave the name it bears.

Kamrasi died soon after the departure of the Bakers and was succeeded by his son Kabarega, who was for many years to prove a continual source of trouble to the British. In 1869 Sir Samuel Baker started again from Egypt, with the title of Governor-General of the Egyptian Sudan, at the head of an expedition for the suppression of the systematic slave-raiding that was being carried on along the banks of the Nile and as far as Bunyoro. He arrived in Bunyoro in 1872 and declared it a province of the Sudan. He found Kabarega's attitude very hostile, and it was not without difficulty that the party succeeded in leaving the country.

General Gordon, with Emin Pasha as Governor of the Equatorial Provinces, followed Sir Samuel Baker as Governor-General of the Sudan and, with a view to the definite annexation of both Bunyoro and Buganda, sent emissaries to those countries and established posts at Mruli and Masindi.

In 1875 Stanley, during his circumnavigation of the Victoria Nyanza, arrived in Buganda and was hospitably received by Mutesa. At about the same time there also arrived one of Gordon's emissaries, a Belgian, named de Bellefonds. Stanley, like Speke, was much struck by the intelligence of Mutesa and by the commercial possibilities of the country, and a letter written by him and entrusted to de Bellefonds—who returned by the Nile and was murdered by the Bari—eventually appeared in the *Daily Telegraph* calling for missionaries to Uganda, and was the first step towards bringing Buganda and the neighbouring countries under British protection. This letter met with an enthusiastic response, and the first party of missionaries arrived in Buganda in June, 1877, travelling by Zanzibar and the south end of the Lake, and were joined soon after by another party which had made their way up the Nile from Khartoum. They were given a favourable reception by Mutesa and before long had gained a considerable following. In 1879 there arrived a party of French Roman Catholic missionaries, who also quickly obtained a following. In the meantime the Arab traders had greatly increased in numbers and had been zealously preaching Mohammedanism.

Shortly after the events recorded above, owing to the growth of the Khalifa's power and the resultant disturbances in the Sudan, which led to the death of Gordon and the isolation of Emin, communication between Bunyoro and Egypt was cut off and, for the next twenty years the main interest in the history of the Protectorate centres in Buganda, which remained in a very disturbed state, almost without interruption, until 1899.

Mutesa died in 1884 and was succeeded by Mwanga, a weak man of vicious and debauched tastes, whose conduct was such that, in spite of the reverence which the Baganda had always had for their kings, his Christian and Mohammedan subjects alike took offence. Various events had caused Mwanga and the pagan advisers with whom he surrounded himself to fear that the white man was coming to take their country from them. They had heard of British and German annexation on the coast as well as of that carried out by Gordon in the north, for, in 1883, Joseph Thomson had approached Buganda from the east, and though he had not entered the country he had brought to life again an ancient belief that Buganda would be conquered by invaders coming from the east. And so when Bishop Hannington of the Church Missionary Society was passing through Busoga on his way to Buganda in 1885, Mwanga sent orders to the Musoga Chief Luba

that the Bishop was to be put to death, and his orders were promptly carried out. In 1886 he started a systematic persecution of the Christians, while at the same time he was also hostile to the Mohammedans. Matters reached a crisis when it was discovered that Mwanga was plotting to have the leading men of both parties taken off in canoes and left to starve on an island in the lake, and this caused Christians and Mohammedans to join hands in deposing Mwanga (1888), who fled without resistance to the south end of the lake where he took refuge with some Roman Catholic Missionaries. Kiwewa, the eldest son of Mutesa, was put in his place and a partition was made of the principal chieftainships between the leading men of both parties ; but the Mohammedans were dissatisfied with their share and attacked the Christians, killing a number of chiefs and sacking the missions. For a week the European missionaries were in imminent danger of their lives, but in the end they were conducted to the lake and placed in a boat with orders not to return. The party eventually reached the south end of the lake after suffering great hardships. The Christian chiefs fled to Ntale, king of Ankole, who received them well and they were joined there by a large following of Baganda peasants who objected to the Mohammedan rule.

The Mohammedans speedily tired of Kiwewa, who not only refused to adopt their customs but also began to plot against them, and after he had been on the throne for a few months he was attacked in his palace and fled, his younger brother Kalema being proclaimed king in his place. Kiwewa was soon after caught and put to death. Profiting by the experience of his brother, Kalema professed himself a devout Mohammedan and enforced Mohammedan rites, including that of circumcision, on the peasantry, thereby causing a considerable exodus to join the Christians in Ankole.

During their stay in Ankole there had been some difference of opinion between the leaders of the two Christian factions, but they at length agreed to invite Mwanga to return, promising to support him in regaining the throne. Owing to the friendship of the Sese islanders Mwanga was safe on the lake, and, with the help of Stokes, a trader, who provided arms and ammunition, Mwanga started to return to Mengo, while the Christians who had entered Buddu, after fighting several battles with varying success, finally inflicted a severe defeat on the Mohammedan army, and then marched rapidly to storm the capital. Mwanga joined them at Entebbe and was again proclaimed king (October,

1889). Stokes, who had been with Mwanga till this time, now left, but wrote a letter to Mr. (now Sir Frederick) Jackson, who was in Kavirondo, asking for help. Though Mwanga had been proclaimed king, there was still some severe fighting before the Mohammedans were finally driven from the capital. They fled to Bunyoro, where they were kindly received by Kabarega.

The letters addressed by Stokes to Mr. Jackson did not reach the latter till November, and it was as a result of these that the first negotiations took place between the British East Africa Company and Mwanga. At this time opposite views were held by the British and German Governments as to various places on the coast, which, though granted by the Sultan of Zanzibar to the British East African Company, were claimed by the Germans ; and also as to the respective spheres of influence in the hinterland, each country representing Uganda on its own maps as being within its own sphere of influence. The British East Africa Company sent an expedition in 1889 under Mr. Jackson to the lake, but instructed him not to enter Uganda. However, on receipt of Stokes' letter, Jackson sent to Mwanga one of the Company's flags, and wrote to say that by accepting it Mwanga would place himself under the protection of the Company who would then give him help. The conditions were accepted by Mwanga. Jackson then continued his journey north, and returned to Kavirondo three months later to find that a German, Dr. Carl Peters, had visited his camp with an armed force, and read his correspondence, from which he obtained information that decided him to enter Uganda. Immediately on his arrival he prepared a treaty which placed Uganda under German protection, and persuaded Mwanga to sign it, though the leading men of the Protestant party—or English party as it was called—would have nothing to do with it, considering that it was inconsistent with the promises made to Jackson. On receipt of this news Jackson advanced at once into Uganda with 180 guns, and arrived in April, 1890 ; Peters meanwhile had retired. Jackson made no treaty as feeling was high between the English and French factions, and soon after he returned to the coast taking representatives of both parties who were to bring back word as to what was to be the actual position of the country. Meanwhile negotiations were proceeding at home between the British and German Governments ; Peters' treaty was disavowed by the Germans, and by the Anglo-German agreement of July, 1890, Uganda was definitely included in the British sphere. Shortly after this Captain (now Sir Frederick) Lugard, who was engaged

in building a series of forts from the coast, and had reached Kikuyu, received instructions from the Company to proceed to Uganda to consolidate the Company's position there. Fearing, from the news he had received, that the Europeans in Uganda were in danger of their lives, he marched with great speed, and breaking through the custom hitherto always observed of waiting for the king's permission to enter the country, he reached the capital at Mengo on December 18th, 1890. On the next day he presented to Mwanga for signature a treaty which was at first strenuously resisted by the French, or Roman Catholic, party but was finally signed on December 26th ; though in the interval it had seemed almost certain that the excited feeling prevalent would have resulted in a collision between the two parties. The signing of the treaty did not, however, produce quiet. Nobody appeared satisfied, and Lugard was assailed with complaints and objections from every quarter, while the French party openly threatened war if their demands were not granted. In April, 1891, it was found necessary to take severe measures against the Mohammedan party, in which cause the contending factions at the capital joined hands. The king, Kalema, had died, and the Mohammedans had chosen Mbogo, a brother of Mutesa, as their king. They had become aggressive and had made continual raids into Buganda from Bunyoro. A large Baganda force under the Katikiro, Apolo (now Sir Apolo) Kagwa, marched against them, accompanied by Lugard and Captain Williams with their force. After fruitless negotiations, the Mohammedan army, which was joined by Kabarega's people, was completely defeated, and the Baganda army, refusing to advance on Kabarega's capital, returned to Mengo with Captain Williams, while Lugard went south to Buddu.

In view of the divided state of the country Lugard now determined that he must, if possible, obtain a strong force on which he could rely in all circumstances. Such a force seemed available in Toro, where there were the remnants of the force that had been with Emin Pasha at the time of his rescue by Stanley. Lugard accordingly determined to visit Toro and attempt to enlist some of these men in the Company's service.

Toro was at this time still in the hands of Kabarega who had placed Banyoro chiefs in the country to hold it in subjection. But the young prince Kasagama, who had escaped at the time of the capture of Mukalusa, was in Buddu, and, hearing of Lugard's purpose, obtained an interview with him and begged to be allowed to accompany him. To this Lugard eventually agreed and they travelled

together to Toro through Ankole. Kasagama was warmly welcomed by his people and with Lugard's help was installed as Mukama, the Banyoro chiefs being driven out of the country. Lugard then went on and succeeded in persuading the Sudanese under Selim Bey to accompany him to Buganda and enlist in the Company's service. On the return journey a number of forts were built and garrisoned on the Toro and Bunyoro boundary to protect Toro from the aggressions of Kabarega, and the remaining troops numbering some 300 went with Lugard to the capital.

During his absence the jealousies between the French and English factions, temporarily composed by fear of their common enemy, had again become pronounced, and Williams had with great difficulty prevented a resort to arms. The tension became more and more strained owing to perpetual petty acts of violence and robbing on the one side which were met with reprisals from the other. On Lugard's protesting to Mwanga—who had declared himself on the French side—against a particularly glaring case in which a member of the French party had killed a Protestant, his protest was treated with contempt, and soon after the French prepared to attack Kampala, on which was Lugard's fort (January, 1892). The attack was repulsed with heavy loss, and the defeated army was pursued to Munyonyo where they embarked in canoes and took refuge on the Island of Bulungu. From this they were soon driven by a force under Captain Williams, and Mwanga made his escape by water. At this time there started a concentration of all the Catholics towards Buddu, especially from the County of Kiagwe which had been a stronghold of the Catholics. The Protestants also started to make their way from Buddu to Kiagwe, and the two parties, having with them crowds of women and children, passed on the way luckily without a collision. Mwanga, after being closely pursued by the canoes of the Protestant party, reached Bukoba, where he was given shelter by the Germans.

Negotiations were now opened by Lugard with a view to inducing Mwanga to return. The latter said that he wished to return but that he was kept a prisoner; however, after some weeks he managed to escape and returned to Mengo on March 30th, 1892. A new treaty was drawn up and signed, and agreements were also made with the Roman Catholic party and the Mohammedans, the former being given the county of Buddu to live in and some of the important chieftainships, while the latter obtained three small counties. The Mohammedans also gave up their king Mbogo who remained at Kampala.

During the course of these events the Directors of the British East Africa Company began to find that the cost of maintaining their hold on Uganda was excessive, and Lugard had received letters in December, 1891, ordering the immediate evacuation of the country. This order was, however, cancelled, and it was decided to continue the hold upon the country till December 1892. In June, 1892, Lugard handed over the charge of affairs to Williams and proceeded to England to lay before the Directors the exact state of affairs in Uganda; for he and Williams both felt that, if the conditions were properly understood, it would be seen to be impossible to leave the country to certain anarchy and civil war after the promises that had been made.

On his arrival he found that the British Government had decided not to help the Company to retain their hold on Uganda. The publication of this decision raised a strong protest in many quarters, and public opinion, largely stimulated by the influence of the Church Missionary Society, proved so strong that the Government eventually determined to send Sir Gerald Portal on a special mission to report on the country and the advisability of establishing a British Protectorate over it. In the interval Captain Macdonald, of the Uganda Railway Survey, was instructed to proceed to Uganda and enquire into the recent disturbances there; for the French Government had taken up the cause of the French missionaries, and advanced claims for compensation.

Portal arrived in Uganda in March, 1893. On March 31st the Company's flag was hauled down; on the following day the British flag was hoisted and a provisional treaty made with Mwanga, pointing to the speedy establishment of a Protectorate. Meanwhile Owen, of the Commissioner's staff, and Captain Raymond Portal, the Commissioner's brother, were despatched to enlist Soudanese troops from the South Bunyoro forts. Raymond Portal was brought back to Kampala seriously ill, and subsequently died. The death of his brother, added to the strain of more or less fruitless efforts to compose the differences of the rival factions in Uganda, and frequent attacks of fever combined to break down the health of Sir Gerald Portal, who returned to Europe after a stay of only two-and-a-half months in the country. He left Macdonald as Acting Commissioner.

Before Portal's departure there had been signs of renewed discontent among the Mohammedan Bagaza, who clamoured for additional provinces, and at the final Baraza, held on the day before he left, they openly threatened rebellion if their claims were not granted. The situation

After the
establishment
of the
Government.

was rendered more serious by the fact that Selim Bey, who had latterly adopted a discontented attitude towards the British, supported their claims.

As soon as Portal had got well on his way towards the coast the situation became critical as the Mohammedans refused to obey the king's orders and began to concentrate their forces, while Selim prepared to help them by sending a detachment from Port Alice. Macdonald promptly disarmed all the Soudanese in the fort at Kampala, and the Christian Baganda went and defeated the Mohammedans. Macdonald then advanced to Port Alice where the Soudanese laid down their arms without resistance. Selim was arrested and deported to the coast, as was also Mbogo, who, however, had taken no part in these latter disturbances. The trouble, however, was not yet over, for Owen was in great danger in South Bunyoro, where the Soudanese garrisons had deteriorated into a lawless body of depredators who were living by laying waste the country, and were also being incited to mutiny both by the news of the disturbance in Uganda and by letters from successful mutineers in the Congo. A plot was made to murder Owen, but he circumvented it and, being joined by the Baganda Christian army which was marching north in pursuit of the Mohammedans, he severely defeated the latter. The Soudanese garrisons were then withdrawn from Bunyoro, and located at various stations in Buganda, where they would be more under the immediate control of the Government.

In November, 1893, Colonel Colville arrived to take charge as Commissioner, and immediately commenced hostilities already planned by Macdonald to break the power of Kabarega, who had lost no opportunity throughout his reign of causing trouble. By the middle of 1894 Kabarega's forces had been thoroughly defeated in a number of engagements and the king himself had fled after very closely escaping capture.

In August, 1894, Uganda was formally declared a British Protectorate. Colville was invalidated at the end of the year, and Mr. Jackson became Acting Commissioner pending the arrival of Mr. Berkeley, who had been appointed Commissioner, and who arrived in June, 1895.

There now ensued a period of peace, which lasted for two years, during which the material progress of the country was very marked. The Baganda showed themselves ready and quick to learn all that could be taught them, and found teachers in the various missions whose work extended rapidly. The railway from the coast to the lake had been spoken of for some years, and the pre-

liminary survey had been completed in 1892 ; work was begun 1896, a vote of £3,000,000 having been granted by Parliament to cover the cost. The lake was reached by Christmas, 1901, the cost proving to have been nearly twice the amount originally voted.

In 1896 the limits of the Protectorate were extended to include Bunyoro and Busoga.

In the middle of 1897, when Mr. Berkeley was at home on leave and Colonel Ternan was Acting Commissioner, signs of renewed trouble appeared. Mr. G. Wilson, who was in charge of the Province of Buganda, became aware of a plot that was being hatched against the British administration. The king, Mwanga, had been sulkily acquiescent in the new state of affairs in his country, but had secretly resented the checks upon his former absolute power, and was privy to this plot. Wilson promptly arrested some of the leading chiefs implicated, whereupon Mwanga fled to Buddu and raised the standard of rebellion, being joined by a large following.

The Acting Commissioner, Colonel Ternan, was absent on the east of the lake conducting an expedition against the Nandi. On hearing the news of Mwanga's rebellion he hastened back with his Soudanese troops, and, joined by a large army of Baganda, defeated the rebels in two actions in Buddu. He left Mr. W. Grant to complete the defeat of the enemy and returned to Kampala. Grant drove the rebels out of Buddu and Mwanga fled to German territory where he was made a prisoner. His infant son Daudi Chwa was proclaimed king at Kampala, the native government of the country being put into the hands of a regency of three leading chiefs.

Shortly before this Macdonald had returned to East Africa on survey work and Ternan had received instructions to provide him with a force of 300 Soudanese. Unaware of any discontent among his troops Ternan undertook to supply the men, and selected them from among those who had been almost continuously fighting in Bunyoro, Nandi and Buddu. The men started and joined Macdonald in East Africa, where they immediately stated their grievances. They complained that their pay was much in arrear, that they had not been supplied with the clothing due to them, that other troops of the Uganda Rifles enlisted in East Africa were receiving higher pay than they were, and that they had been kept on almost continual service for a long period during which they had been marched backwards and forwards from one end of the Protectorate to the other, being all the time kept apart from their wives who were not allowed to accompany them.

Their arrears were paid to them by Mr. Jackson—who was with Macdonald on his way to take charge of affairs in Uganda during Ternan's absence on leave—but the men were told that they must accompany Macdonald and that their grievances would be attended to on their return. On hearing this they broke into open revolt, and refusing to ground their arms when ordered, turned and marched back in a body towards Uganda, being followed by Macdonald and Jackson with the Zanzibari troops that they had with them. The object of the mutineers was to reach the Soudanese garrison at Luba's in Busoga. Major Thruston hurried on to Luba's to try and persuade the men to return to their allegiance, relying on his great personal influence with them. He was made prisoner by the garrison, as were also Mr. Norman Wilson who was in charge at Luba's, and Mr. Scott, the engineer in charge of the Government steam-launch. On October 19th, 1897, the mutineers attacked Colonel Macdonald's force but were defeated. The same night the leaders, who were afraid that their men might submit, murdered the three Europeans, and immediately after sent messengers to incite their comrades throughout Uganda to revolt, at the same time attempting to secure the adhesion of the Mohammedan Baganda by offering the throne to Mbogo who had returned to Buganda. At Kampala Wilson had promptly disarmed the Soudanese garrison as soon as he heard the first news of the mutiny, and Mbogo showed him the letter offering him the kingdom, to which he had replied that he would remain loyal to the British and not give the mutineers any assistance at all. This action, no doubt, deterred the greater part of the Mohammedan population from joining the mutineers, which they would almost certainly have done, had their late king given them a lead. Still there was a considerable number of Baganda who threw in their lot with the mutineers.

A large Baganda army now left the capital and went to the assistance of Macdonald. Until January 9th, 1898, the siege at the fort at Luba's proceeded with continual fighting, during which time small reinforcements arrived from East Africa under Captain Harrison and Captain Austin. In the course of this fighting Mr. Pilkington, of the Church Missionary Society, and Lieut. Macdonald, who had brought up a few Indian troops a short time before, lost their lives. The situation was complicated by the fact that Mwanga and Kabarega saw in the mutiny a chance of accomplishing their cherished desire of driving the British from their countries. The former escaped from the Germans early in 1898 and, declaring himself a Mohammedan, entered

Buddu where he was joined by a considerable following. Fearing that the Soudanese garrisons in Buddu might be persuaded to mutiny, Macdonald hurried south with Swahili and Baganda troops and, after severely defeating Mwanga's forces, he disarmed the Soudanese, whom he sent under escort to Kampala.

The mutineers at Luba's escaped by water in January, 1898, and began to march up the east bank of the Nile towards Bunyoro. It was feared that, if they reached Bunyoro, they would be joined by the Soudanese garrisons there which had hitherto remained loyal. Macdonald accordingly marched with all speed to intercept them, at the same time sending Lieut. Scott to disarm the Bunyoro garrison, a difficult task which was successfully accomplished. Macdonald, after getting into touch with the mutineers near Lake Kioga, and defeating them in several skirmishes, returned to Kampala, leaving Captain Harrison in command. The latter succeeded in crossing a difficult swamp and attacked the rebels in a strongly fortified position, which he captured at the point of the bayonet. This action scattered the mutineers and really brought the crisis to an end, for a strong body of Indian troops reached Uganda in April, and though the mutineers continued to give trouble, the troops available were sufficient to deal with them. The remnant marched to North Bunyoro, where they were joined by a large force of Kabarega's people, and also by Mwanga, who had eluded the force that had been keeping him in check during the previous operations. They were driven from Bunyoro into Bukedi; but in October they recrossed the river and surprised and captured a party under Lieut. Hannington in thick bush. Energetic measures were immediately taken against them, and they in turn were surprised and routed and driven back to Bukedi. In the middle of 1899 Mwanga and Kabarega were captured by a force under Col. Evatt, and deported first to the coast and subsequently to the Seychelles, where Mwanga died in 1903.

Kabarega was succeeded by Kitaimbwa, who was later deposed by the British Government for incompetence. He again was succeeded by Andereya Duhaga, the present Mukama, who is working loyally with the British Administration and showing considerable interest in the progress and development of his country.

The capture and deportation of these two troublesome princes brought the troubles of the country to an end, and since 1899 it has enjoyed an almost unbroken peace. Mr. Berkeley, who had returned from leave in April, 1898, left the country towards the end of 1898, and soon after-

wards Sir H. H. Johnston was sent out as Special Commissioner to investigate the resources of the country and report on the possibility of meeting the cost of the Administration by local revenue ; and at the same time to place the Administration of the country on a more settled and permanent basis.

Johnston arrived in December, 1899, and, after studying the conditions for a few months, drew up the Uganda Agreement of 1900. By this Agreement Buganda—the area of which was extended by the inclusion of certain districts previously considered to be part of Bunyoro—was divided into 20 counties, each county being administered by a Native Chief. The central native government was to consist of the Kabaka—represented during his minority by the three regents—and the Lukiko, or native parliament, the members of which were the 20 county chiefs, or, in their absence from the capital, their representatives, and 66 other members nominated by the Kabaka. The powers given to the Lukiko were both Legislative and Judicial, and in each case their decisions were final ; in the former after ratification by His Majesty's representative, and, in the latter, subject to a right of appeal in certain cases to the Principal Court of Justice.

An annual hut tax of Rupees 3, and a gun tax of Rupees 3, were arranged for in the Agreement ; and also the payment from the revenues of the country of fixed annual sums to the Kabaka, Regents, County Chiefs, and certain members of the Kabaka's family.

The land question was also dealt with in the agreement. The area of the Kingdom of Buganda was estimated at 19,600 square miles ; of this total 8,958 square miles were divided up to be the private property of the Kabaka, Princes, Princesses, leading chiefs and native land owners ; the various missionary bodies were allotted land totalling 92 square miles ; the remaining 10,550 square miles—described as forests, waste and uncultivated land and land taken up by Government for Government stations—became the property of the British Government.

This Agreement has remained the basis of native administration in the Kingdom of Buganda. It has been amplified and modified by the Uganda Agreement (Poll Tax) 1904, the Uganda Agreement (Judicial) 1905, the Uganda Memorandum of Agreement (Forest) 1907, the Uganda (Payment to Chiefs) Agreement 1908, the Uganda Agreement (Poll Tax) 1909, and the Buganda Agreement (Allotment and Survey) 1913.

By the Poll Tax Agreement the Kingdom of Buganda was brought, subject to certain conditions, under the Poll

Tax Ordinance of 1909, which provides that every adult male native, over the age of 18 years, shall pay an annual Poll Tax of Rupees 5.

On August 8th, 1914, the Kabaka, Daudi Chwa, came of age and, on the termination of the Regency, took over the active discharge of his duties as defined in the Agreement.

An agreement on similar lines was made with the Mukama of Toro in 1900, and with the Mugabe of Ankole in 1901; these countries and other countries now included in the area of the Protectorate having been added by Sir H. H. Johnston in 1900-1902.

For purposes of British Administration the whole Protectorate was divided into six Provinces, the eastern boundary of the Protectorate being at that time a line drawn from Lake Rudolf along the edge of the Laikipia and Kikuyu escarpments to the frontier of German East Africa.

In 1902 Johnston was succeeded by Colonel Sir James Hayes Sadler, who was Commissioner until his transfer to British East Africa in 1905. In the early part of the latter year, owing to the murder of Mr. Galt, Acting Sub-Commissioner in the Western Province, it was found advisable to suspend the Ankole Agreement of 1901, because, in the terms of the proclamation, "the circumstances connected therewith have made it appear that the Kabaka and the Chiefs of the districts of Ankole have failed in their duty to the Government of His Majesty the King under the Agreement of October 25th, 1901." This was, however, restored in 1912.

Sir Henry Hesketh Bell succeeded Sir James Hayes Sadler as Commissioner in 1905, and in 1907 he was made the first Governor of the Protectorate. During his administration energetic measures were taken to combat the ravages of sleeping sickness, which had worked its way from the Congo and been diagnosed in 1901 by Dr. A. R. Cook, of the Church Missionary Society. Since that date an enormous part of the population of Buganda and Busoga had been carried off by the disease, especially on the islands and along the lake shores. As a result of careful investigations by Dr. Castellani and Colonel Sir D. Bruce, and other members of Special Commissions organised by the Royal Society in conjunction with His Majesty's Government, the cause and the carrier of the disease were discovered. It having been determined that the disease was carried by a species of tsetse fly, measures were taken to remove the entire population from neighbourhoods in which the fly was found, which involved the total depopulation of the islands and lake shores. This difficult measure

was successfully carried out, and has been fully justified by the result.

Meanwhile the area of effectual British Administration was gradually being extended by peaceful means, it being found necessary on only a few occasions to use force to assert the authority of the Government. An account of this extension will be found in the chapters which deal with the various Provinces in detail.

In the more settled districts the prolonged peace under a settled Administration caused a rapid advance in the prosperity of the country. The cultivation of various agricultural produce grew so fast that the question of transport became a problem requiring immediate action. Metalled roads were made connecting the important centres with the outlying districts, and a motor transport service instituted. In 1910 Sir Henry Bell was succeeded as Governor by Captain Cordeaux, who was, however, prevented by ill-health from residing in the country. In that year a railway was commenced connecting Jinja with Lake Kioga, forming part of a scheme for through communication from Lake Victoria to Lake Albert and the Belgian Congo, and tapping a very large and fertile district. This railway was opened for traffic by Sir F. Jackson, who had returned to Uganda as Governor, in 1911. In 1915, a further short line was opened between Kampala and Port Bell.

In 1903 the Eastern Province and part of the Central were transferred to the East Africa Protectorate, the new eastern boundary being the western shore of Lake Rudolf, the river Turkwel, the eastern flanks of Mount Elgon and the Sio river.

During 1910 the frontier line between British, Belgian and German territory in the extreme south-west of the Protectorate, which had been in dispute owing to the fact that the 30th meridian had been placed 25 miles west of its true position in the maps used when the frontier was agreed upon, was finally fixed at a meeting of British, Belgian and German delegates in Brussels.

In 1914 almost the whole of the districts of Nimule and Gondokoro and part of the district of Chua passed under the administration of the government of the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, while at the same time the administration of a large stretch of country lying to the west of the Nile and north of Lake Albert was taken over by the Uganda Government.

The development of the native races is advancing apace. Education is at present entirely in the hands of the three missionary bodies, and the Baganda especially are profiting by it in a marked degree. They are taking

their places in Government offices and in the employ of private firms as clerks and interpreters, and they are also proving themselves capable carpenters, masons and mechanics. Many of the chiefs, too, have started to develop their estates on intelligent lines.

With increased knowledge of the possibilities of the country an ever-increasing number of Europeans has been attracted, and on all sides now may be seen coffee, rubber and cocoa plantations being energetically worked, some of which have already reached the stage of paying returns on the money invested. So great has the volume of produce become that existing means of transport, both internal and external, from Uganda to the coast, are already taxed to their utmost extent.

NOTE.—“Uganda,” as referred to in this chapter, applies more particularly to the Kingdom of Buganda, now the Buganda Province.

CHAPTER II.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

Boundaries.

The territory comprised in the Uganda Protectorate is about 360 miles in length from north to south, and 290 miles in width from east to west, lying approximately between latitude 1° S. and 4° N., and longitude E. 30° and 35° , and has an area of approximately 110,300 square miles, including 16,169 square miles of water. As the crow flies the nearest point to the sea is about 490 miles. Elevations above sea-level vary from 16,794 feet, the highest point of Ruwenzori, to about 1,560 feet, the lowest point, on Lake Rudolf. The Uganda Protectorate is bounded :—

On the East—By the East Africa Protectorate from Lake Rudolf to 1° S. latitude.

On the South—By the country hitherto known as German East Africa, approximately along 1° S. latitude.

On the West—By the Belgian Congo.

On the North—By the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, approximately along 4° N. latitude from the Belgian Congo to Sanderson Gulf in Lake Rudolf.

The limits of the Protectorate are laid down in the Uganda Order in Council, 1902, Article 1. These limits have been modified by Orders of the Secretary of State, dated 15th July, 1904, 18th April, 1913, and 21st April, 1914.

The respective spheres of influence with adjoining territories have been varied and defined in the Anglo-German Agreement of 14th May, 1910, and the Anglo-Congolese Agreement of 14th May, 1910, as modified by the Anglo-German Protocol of the 30th October, 1911, and the Anglo-Congolese Boundary Protocol of the 4th May, 1911.

For administrative purposes the Protectorate is divided **Divisions.** into five provinces, sub-divided into districts, as follows :—

Province.		Area.			Headquarters.
		Land.	Water.	Total.	
Buganda	.. ..	16,828	5,542	22,370	Kampala.
Eastern	.. ..	28,526	7,766	36,292	Jinja.
Western	.. ..	13,311	455	13,766	Fort Portal.
Northern	.. ..	22,480	1,254	23,734	Masindi.
Rudolf	.. ..	12,986	1,152	14,138	(Unadministrd. Police Hdqrs., Moroto.
		94,131	16,169	110,300	Square miles.
Province	District				
Buganda	Mengo ..	5,386	465	5,851	Kampala.
	Entebbe	2,181	4,113	6,294	Entebbe.
	Masaka	3,870	732	4,602	Masaka.
	Mubendi	5,391	232	5,623	Mubendi.
		16,828	5,542	22,370	Square miles.
Eastern	Busoga	3,919	6,526	10,445	Jinja.
	Bukedi	2,976	112	3,088	Mbale.
	Teso ..	4,287	451	4,738	Soroti.
	Lango ..	4,444	655	5,099	Lira.
	Lobor ..	5,788	22	5,810	Unadministered
	Karamoja	7,112	—	7,112	Do.
		28,526	7,766	36,292	Square miles.
Western	Toro ..	5,346	233	5,579	Fort Portal.
	Ankole ..	5,982	149	6,131	Mbarara.
	Kigezi ..	1,983	73	2,056	Kabale.
		13,311	455	13,766	Square miles.
Northern	Bunyoro.	4,648	971	5,619	Masindi.
	Gulu ..	6,803	192	6,995	Gulu.
	Chua ..	7,007	—	7,007	Kitgum.
	West Nile	4,022	91	4,113	Arua.
		22,480	1,254	23,734	Square miles
Rudolf.	Turkwel	1,428	—	1,428	(Unadministrd.
	Dabossa	5,158	—	5,158	Police Hdqrs.,
	Turkana.	6,400	1,152	7,552	Moroto.
		12,986	1,152	14,138	Square miles.

					Height above- M.S.L. Ft.
Mountains.	Ruwenzori (Margharita Peak)				16,794
	" (Alexandra Peak)				16,726
	Elgon				14,140
	*Mfumbiro Volcanoes—				
	Muhavura				13,547
	Mgahinga				11,400
	Sabinio				11,960
	Visoke				12,175
	Karisimbi				14,780
	Mikenno				14,540
	Cha Nina Gongo				11,386
	Namlagira				10,046

					Area. Height above, sq. miles. M.S.L. Ft.
Lakes.	†Lake Victoria		26,828		3,726
	†Lake Albert		2,064		2,028
	†Lake Edward		830		3,000
	†Lake Rudolf		3,962		1,560
	Lake George		114		3,015

} Approximate.

* The first three only are in British Territory.

† These are only partly within the Protectorate.



Photo by Miss Chevallier.

THE RUWENZORI MOUNTAINS.

CHAPTER III.

BUGANDA PROVINCE.

The Buganda Province, otherwise known as the Kingdom of Buganda, extends from Lake Victoria on the east to the south-eastern shore of Lake Albert on the west, and comprises an area of 22,370 square miles, of which 5,542 square miles is water, principally Lake Victoria, the territorial area of water being 5,002 square miles; territorial water in Lake Albert 175 square miles; the River Nile and that portion of Lake Kioga in Buganda, 230 square miles; Lake Wamala, 95 square miles; Lakes Kijanebalola, Kachira and Nabugabo, 40 square miles. The principal navigable waterways are the Lakes Victoria, Albert and Kioga, and the River Nile. Most of the rivers in Buganda are covered with papyrus and are unnavigable.

The average height of Buganda is about 4,000 feet above sea level, with a sudden fall at the Lake Albert escarpment of about 1,200 feet to Lake Albert, the height of which is 2,028 feet above sea level.

The boundaries of the Province are as follows :—

Commencing from the Ripon Falls the boundary follows the River Nile through Lake Kioga to the mouth of the River Kafu; thence along the Rivers Kafu and Nkussi to Lake Albert; thence it follows the eastern shore of Lake Albert to the mouth of the Muzizi River; thence along this river almost to its source; thence by a series of small streams to the River Katonga.

From this point it is bounded by the Ankole boundary along the Kagaga, Kalinega and other rivers to 1° S. latitude, whence it follows the boundary between Uganda and the late German East Africa to Lake Victoria; thence a line running N.E. across Lake Victoria to the equator; thence a line to the eastern side of Buvuma, through Napoleon Gulf to the Ripon Falls.

For administrative purposes the Province is divided into the following districts, viz., (1) Mengo, (2) Masaka, (3) Mubendi and (4) Entebbe.

(1) MENO DISTRICT.

This district, comprising an area of 5,851 square miles, of which 465 square miles is water, is divided into the following five counties, or Sazas :—

	Title of Chief.		
1. Kiadondo	Kago.
2. Kiagwe	Sekibobo.
3. Bulemezi	Kangao.
4. Buruli	Kimbugwe.
5. Bugerere	Mugerere.

The boundaries are as follows :—

Commencing at the Ripon Falls the boundary follows the boundary of the Eastern Province along the River Nile and through Lake Kioga to where it meets the Northern Province boundary at the mouth of the River Kafu ; it then follows the Northern Province boundary along the River Kafu to the confluence with the Mayanja River, where it meets the boundary of the Mubendi district ; thence following the Mayanja River in a southerly direction to its confluence with the River Danze ; thence following the River Danze to its confluence with the River Kazingo ; thence along the Rivers Kazingo, Walukoko, Mayanja-Wasna, Katonga, Tuyanyi, Nasabyeda, Rubigi, Mayanja-Kato and Kajansi to Lake Victoria ; thence through Lake Victoria to the point of commencement.

Topography. The most important rivers are the Nile, rising in Victoria Nyanza ; the Kafu, rising in Bunyoro and flowing into the Nile ; the Sezibwa, rising in Kiagwe and flowing into Lake Kioga ; the Mayanja, rising in Kaidondo and flowing into the Kafu River.

In the north, north east and south west, the country is comparatively open with short grass and scattered bush. It is sparsely populated. In the east the country may be said to consist of hills and swamps with belts of forest. The principal forest is the Mabira. It is thickly populated, especially the counties of Kiadondo, Bulemezi and Kiagwe.

The soil in the greater part is very productive and yields crops of bananas, ground nuts and sweet potatoes, with very little trouble to the cultivator.

Thunderstorms are frequent, occasionally accompanied by hail. The country suffers from drought in certain parts of the Province, especially in the county of Buruli.

The staple food of the Baganda is the banana, which grows in great profusion and of which there are several varieties. Sweet potatoes, maize, beans, ground nuts and millet are also native foods which are grown abundantly. Approximately 595,000 acres are under native cultivation.

**Crops and
Food Supplies.**

Cotton was first seriously cultivated in 1908, though various experiments had been made previously. In 1908 the exports did not exceed 500 tons, the greater portion of which was produced in Bulemezi. The total acreage under cultivation in 1918 in the Province is 36,695 acres.

There is a Government Plantation in Kampala in which every kind of produce, especially coffee, tea, cocoa and rubber, of practical economic value is planted for experimental purposes and as an object lesson for the natives. Suitable trees and shrubs are also grown there for the township avenues and roads.

European planters first came into the country in appreciable numbers in 1910. Estates were principally taken up in the counties of Kiagwe, Singo, Bulemezi, Mawokota and Busuju. There are now (1918) 130 estates in the Province, the principal products of which are coffee, cocoa and rubber. The chiefs also cultivate coffee and rubber extensively.

Fish abound in the rivers and lakes but, owing to sleeping sickness, except in certain areas, fishing is prohibited in Lake Victoria and the River Nile.

The natives possess large herds of the African fat-tailed sheep, also of goats with which the local markets are supplied. Most of the chiefs and the more wealthy peasants also keep herds of cattle.

			Mileage.	Condition.	
KAMPALA TO :—					
Entebbe Pier	..	..	25	Motor-car and Cart Traffic.	Roads.
Port Bell	..	..	7	"	"
Jinja	..	..	54	"	"
Nabukazi (Mubendi Road)	.		75	"	"
Bombo	..	..	22	"	"
Gayaza	..	..	12	"	"
Mbale (Masaka Road)	..		18	"	"
Kitosi via Mbale	..	..	50	"	"
Budo	..	..	8½	"	"
Kisozi (Gomba)	..	..	75	Motor-cycle and Cart Traffic.	
Kafu River (Hoima Road)	.		110	"	"
Kafu River via Mitiana	..		118	"	"
BOMBO TO :—					
Boa	..	..	9	Motor-car and Cart Traffic.	
Nakasongola (Buruli)	..		51	"	"

	Mileage.	Condition.
MILE 4, KAMPALA—PORT BELL ROAD TO :—		
Mukono	12	Motor-car and Cart Traffic.
MUKONO TO :—		
Mubango, Kiwala, Nagalama	46	Motor-car and Cart Traffic.
Kyetume, Mpumu, Kibanga		
Port	17	Motor-cycle and Cart Traffic.
Ngogwe (Kiagwe)	18	" "
Nagalama (Kiagwe)	22	" "
Bukoba (Kiagwe)	30	" "
Kalule (Bulemezi)	33	" "
Bugonja Ferry (Bugerere) ..	42	" "
MUBANGO TO :—		
Jinja	14	Motor-car and Cart Traffic.
NAKASONGOLA (BURULI) TO :—		
Kafu River	34	Motor-cycle and Cart Traffic.
MPUMU (KIAGWE) TO :—		
Bwavu on Jinja Road, via		
Bukassa Ziba	24	" "
LUWERO (BULEMEZI) TO :—		
Boa via Kikamulo, Lukyamu,		
Lukumbi, Busowa, Bala-		
tila, Bukatira and Kalasa	66	" "
Junda (Buruli)	53	" "
KALAGALA WABUZANA TO :—		
Junda	15	" "

Game.

Elephant and buffalo are numerous in different parts of the district, and various kinds of antelope and gazelle, also lion and hyena. Leopard and jackal are widely distributed. Hippopotami and crocodile abound in the lakes and large rivers.

Townships.

There are three townships in this district, Kampala, Port Bell and Kibanga Port. The two latter are very small at present. Port Bell is the port for Kampala. Kibanga has been opened as a port to assist planters in Kiagwe.

KAMPALA is the oldest station in the Protectorate and was established in 1890, when the Hill was ceded to Capt. (now Sir) F. J. D. Lugard, as the representative of the British East Africa Company. It was subsequently taken over by the Government in 1893.

The name Kampala is derived from the Luganda word Mpala, as the hill was formerly used by the Kabakas of Buganda to keep the antelope the natives call by that name. A fort was built on this hill by Capt. Lugard, which has now been abandoned, but which at that time was found necessary for defence during the numerous wars, and, subsequently, during the Soudanese mutiny. On the 14th July, 1905, the Government station was moved to the present

site on Nakasero Hill, as there was no room for expansion on the hill where the old fort was first built.

Kampala is the headquarters of the Church Missionary Society and the Mill Hill Missions. The White Fathers, though they have their headquarters in the Masaka district, also have a large station at Kampala. The Church Missionary Society has a large and remarkably well-equipped hospital.

Kampala is the largest town in the Protectorate and the commercial capital of Buganda. It is situated 24 miles from Entebbe, the Government headquarters, with which it is connected by a motor service. Port Bell, the port for Kampala, is seven miles distant, and is connected by rail.

It is also the capital of the Province where the Lukiko, or native parliament, sits and the Kabaka (King) of Buganda resides. There is a numerous native population, also a large Asiatic bazaar, and the principal trading firms have their headquarters there.

The National Bank of India and the Standard Bank of South Africa are established in the town. There is also a club and a good golf course.

MASAKA DISTRICT.

This district comprises an area of 4,602 square miles of which 732 square miles are water contained in Lake Victoria and Lakes Nabugabo, Kijanebalola and Kachera.

It is divided into the following counties or Sazas :—

					Title of Chief.
(1)	Buddu	..	..	..	Pokino.
(2)	Koki	..	..	..	Kamswaga.
(3)	Kabula	..	..	..	Lumama.
(4)	Mawogola	..	..	..	Mutesa.

The boundaries are as follows :—

On the north, the Entebbe and Mubendi district boundaries along the River Katonga to its junction with the Kachinga.

On the west, the Buganda-Ankole district boundary along the Rivers Kachinga, Kagaga, Kalinega, Lakes Kachera and Kalunga and the River Chijonjo to its junction with the old Anglo-German boundary on the western slope of Yenjere Hill.

On the south, the old Anglo-German boundary from Yenjere Hill following the line 1° to Lake Victoria.

On the east, Lake Victoria.

The country is divided into two distinct zones by an **Topography.** approximate line formed by the River Kioga and the Nabunga range of hills on the Buddu-Koki boundary.

The area to the east of this line has an adequate rainfall, is well watered, wooded, and the soil throughout generally fertile and may be described as a planting country with typical Buganda scenery, excepting that elephant grass is found in occasional patches only. To the west of River Kioga in eastern Buddu and Mawogola the country consists of open undulating short grass grazing country with an inadequate rainfall, average altitude approximately 4,000 feet. In the dry weather both food and water become extremely scarce, the few pools left being often undrinkable owing to being fouled by elephants, game, and the large herds of Bahima cattle. The rainfall in this part was undoubtedly much greater thirty years or so ago, and traces of extensive native cultivations can be seen at many places where now a few old inhabitants live who are too old to emigrate. Game is plentiful throughout this area.

The south portion of the dry zone includes the hilly districts of Kabula and Koki both of which show the same general characteristics of open short grass country inadequately watered and subject to frequent droughts. The Koki hills rise to an average altitude of 4,700 feet.

The south-east portion of Buddu district consists of low-lying forest land very little above Lake level with a heavy rainfall.

**Crops and
Food Supplies.**

The principal crops grown in order of importance are bananas, sweet potatoes, beans, peas, Indian corn, ground nuts, sim-sim. Millet is also grown for making native beer, but is eaten only in times of drought. Cotton, of which approximately 5,695 acres is cultivated, does very well in parts of the district.

			Mileage.	Condition.
Roads.	Masaka—Kampala (23 miles Masaka district)	83	Light motor-cars, motor-cycles and carts.	
	Masaka—Bukakata	24	Motor-cars, carts and bicycles.	
	Masaka—Mbarara (46 miles in Masaka district)	89	Suitable for light motor-cars, motor-bicycles and light carts except after heavy rain.	
	Masaka—Kiasimbi (Anglo-German boundary) ..	52	ditto.	
	Masaka—Rakai—Koki ..	36	Ditto as far as Kyotera; beyond for cycles and light carts only.	
	MASAKA—BUKAKATA ROAD ..	24	For light traffic only.	
	Masaka—Sunga (Rest Camp) .	11½	ditto.	
	Sunga—Bukakata	12½	Ditto. Food scarce.	
	MASAKA—MBARARA ROAD ..	90	For light traffic only.	
	Masaka to Kaboyo (Rest Camp)	14	—	

	Mileage.	Conditions.
Kaboyo to Kjazanga (Rest Camp)	16½	Food scarce, also water in dry season.
Kjazanga to Lyantonde (Rest Camp)	18	Food scarce.
Lyantonde to Kianja	14½	Ankole district. Food scarce.
Kianja to Kanalyeru	12	ditto.
Kanalyeru to Mbarara	15	—
MASAKA—KAMPALA ROAD	83	For light traffic only.
Masaka to Mukoko (Rest Camp)	15	—
Mukoko to Buganga	13	Entebbe district.
MASAKA—KIASIMBI ROAD	55	For light traffic only.
Masaka to Kabwoko (Rest Camp)	12	—
Kabwoko to Kyotera	15	—
Kyotera to Sanji	13	—
Sanji to Kiasimbi	15	Anglo-German boundary.
MASAKA TO RAKAI ROAD (via Kyotera)	39	For light traffic only.
Kyotera to Rakai	12	—
MASAKA TO SANGO BAY (via Sanji)	66	For light traffic only.
Sanji to Nazareth	19	—
Nazareth to Sango Bay	7	—
1. Elephants	Numerous in Western Buddu, Koki, Kabula and Mawogola. Game. Owing to the open nature of the country they frequent, all the old bulls with good tusks have been killed off. Considerable difficulty would be experienced in obtaining an animal with over 50 lb. tusks. The herds appear to be largely on the increase, the number of young being remarkable.	
2. Buffalo	Numerous throughout the district.	
3. Lion	Western Buddu and Mawogola.	
4. Eland	Fair number in Western Buddu, South Koki and Mawogola.	
5. Waterbuck	Very numerous throughout the district.	
6. Topi	Very numerous except in Koki and Eastern Buddu.	
7. Impala	Numerous in North Western Buddu.	
8. Uganda Cob	Very few in the district.	
9. Zebra	Plentiful in Western Buddu, Kabula and Mawogola.	
10. Bushbuck	Plentiful in Eastern Buddu and Mawogola.	
11. Reedbuck	Plentiful in Western Buddu, parts of Mawogola.	
12. Duiker		
13. Oribi		
14. Dik Dik		
15. Situtunga	Numerous in swamps, Buddu.	
16. Warthog	Western Buddu, Kabula, Mawogola.	
17. Pig	Everywhere.	
18. Hunting Dog	Few in Kabula and Mawogola.	
19. Leopards	Very numerous in Koki and throughout district.	

There are hippopotami in Lakes Nabugabo, Kachera and Kijanebalola, but no crocodiles.

Township.

Masaka was established in 1897 and declared a township in 1906. It is 83 miles from Kampala.

A District Commissioner, Assistant District Commissioner and Medical Officer are stationed there. There is a fair-sized bazaar of some 100 Indians and Goanese, three firms being represented by Europeans. Indian shops are to be found scattered over the district.

Bukakata Port, connected by a motor road with Masaka, 24 miles distant, is the port for the district. The railway steamers call there regularly.

Local History.

Prior to the Baganda occupation of Buddu, in approximately 1720-40, Buddu proper was divided up amongst a number of separate chiefs, some of Banyoro, others of local origin, under the suzerainty of the Kings of Bunyoro. The present Bwera district of Western Buddu was acknowledged as a separate kingdom, its best-known king having been one Muntu, whose name is perpetuated in the title of the Gombolola, chief of that district. Mawogola and Koki formed separate kingdoms. Kabula, which apparently was inhabited by refugees from the surrounding countries under no particular chief, was nominally under the King of Ankole. Buddu's first definite connection with Buganda seems to have occurred in the reign of the Kabaka, Kyabagu, approximately 1750-70. A royal princess, who had incurred the jealousy of the Kabaka, having taken refuge in Buddu where she was afterwards murdered, Kyabagu's successor, the more famous Jungu, made her hitherto unrevenged murder the excuse for an invasion of Buddu. The Banabuddu were encountered at Mukoko on the present Kampala-Masaka road, under the leadership of one Lwemukoko, a celebrated fighting man of that time, and totally defeated, their country being annexed to Buganda. The first chief appointed to control the country with the title of Pokino was one Jagga, the present Pokino, Alikisi Seboa, being the 17th holder of the office. Tradition states that the country was quickly subdued and united under Baganda chiefs, and the Baganda feudal system introduced. Southern Buddu and the territory up to the River Kagera were brought directly under the control of the Pokino; whilst the country for a considerable distance beyond the Kagera river, in what is now German East Africa, paid an annual tribute to the Kabaka of Buganda through the Pokino, delay in forwarding the annual contribution furnishing the excuse for the yearly raids which enriched the Baganda with slaves and cattle. These raiding parties are

stated to have penetrated over 200 miles beyond the Kagera into the Buzinja and surrounding countries due south of Lake Victoria.

The Kabaka of Koki paid an annual tax direct to the Kabaka of Buganda.

In 1897, Buddu was the scene of the struggle between the Government and Mwanga's forces under the leadership of the Mujasi, Gabrielli, the principal fights taking place at Kabwoko on July 10th, and on the Nyendo plateau some five miles from Masaka on August 26th. At Nyendo the rebels, who numbered some 3,000-4,000 guns besides spearmen, were completely routed by Captain Hobart and Mr. W. Grant, whose forces consisted of two companies of Soudanese with 650 natives with guns and a large force of spearmen under Chief Pokino. As the result of the fight, Mwanga, who was not present, took refuge on the borders of Ankole with a small following from whence he eventually made his way up to the Lango country. Gabrielli with the main body of rebels fled to German East Africa where he now holds an important Chieftainship.

The Owesaza and certain chiefs of Koki trace their origin back to Bunyoro, the first Kabaka of Koki having been one Bwawe, the brother of Duhaga I. of Bunyoro : approximately 1710-30. The third Kabaka of Koki threw off his allegiance to the Banyoro and formed an alliance with the Baganda in consequence of the murder of his predecessor Kitainbwa when on a visit to the Kabaka of Bunyoro. The present Saza Chief, George Kamswaga, is stated to be the 10th Chief of Koki.

Remains of an interesting nature are to be found in Buddu at Biggo, on the River Katonga at its junction with the River Kachinga, in the shape of a large fortified encampment. Tradition attributes its construction to one Mugenyi (the stranger) a big chief who, according to Baganda tradition, passed through Uganda centuries ago with a large following going south.

The fortifications consist of an outer rampart and ditch approximately $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles in length, the flanks resting on the Rivers Katonga and Kachinga. The interior works, which are built on the summit of a low hill in the centre of the position, consist of a central work, rampart and ditch, with two adjoining works on the eastern face. The rear face is protected by the Katonga, which at this point is some 1,000 yards broad and unfordable. The outer ditch is still some 4 and 5 feet deep and the line of ramparts can be clearly traced. The ditch surrounding the inner fortifications is in places 10 or 12 feet deep. The various entrances are clearly marked. Thousands of men must

have been employed on the works. There are also two small outlying forts lying some six and four miles west and east of Biggo.

A line of earth mounds running in a straight line due south from Biggo are reported by the natives to exist in the uninhabited parts of Eastern Buddu, but no European appears to have inspected them. In Koki, near the Anglo-German boundary, a number of stone covered mounds are noticeable which are attributed by the natives to Mugenyi.

MUBENDI DISTRICT.

This district comprises an area of 5,623 square miles of which area 232 square miles is territorial water of Lakes Albert and Wamala. It is divided into the following Sazas:—

	Title of Chief.			
1. Bwekula	Lwekula.
2. Buyaga	Kyambalango.
3. Bugangadzi	Kiimba.
4. Singo	Mukwenda.

The boundaries are as follows:—

Commencing at the mouth of the River Nkussi in Lake Albert the boundary follows the river to its confluence with the River Kafu, which it follows to its confluence with the River Mayanja, this section coinciding with the provincial boundary of the Buganda and Northern Provinces; thence it follows the Mengo District boundary to the confluence of the Rivers Mayanja, Waswa and Mayanja Kato. It then follows the Rivers Mayanja Kato and Muyobozi to the Mubendi-Kampala road; thence it goes in a westerly direction to the River Sekyogere; thence along the Rivers Sekyogere, Kivogelo and Nyanzi to Lake Wamala; thence through Lake Wamala to the south-west and thence in a north-westerly direction to the River Nabakazi; thence along the Rivers Nabakazi and Katonga to the Toro-Buganda boundary; thence in a northerly direction along the Toro-Buganda boundary to the mouth of the River Muzizi. From the mouth of the Muzizi the international boundary is followed in the waters of Lake Albert until the Nkussi river is once more attained.

Topography.

Physically, the district resolves itself into three distinct zones; firstly, a section of scrub country running from the Masaka or southern border to the neighbourhood of Mubendi station; secondly, a belt of rocky but very fertile soil some 30 miles wide and due north of this place which stretches across the entire breadth of the district; and lastly, from thence to Lake Albert and the rivers Nkussi and Kafu, a series of gentle slopes clothed in luxuriant elephant grass and interspersed with patches of forest land;

the whole is styled Lugonjo. In the first zone moisture is deficient, but the two latter are fertile and well watered, the average rainfall being approximately 40 inches.

Apart from the curious rocky outcrops, which with their fantastic shapes figure so prominently in much of the country, perhaps the most distinctive feature of Mubendi may be said to be the mountain, or rather chain of hills, to which it owes its name. Cold and somewhat damp at times in climate, this range, which extends for over 9 miles at an elevation of 5,000 feet, seems likely from its central situation and comparatively bracing atmosphere to fill an important part in the future as a local health resort. A not dissimilar country is found in the eastern side of the district where the Butorogo plateau overlooks the Singo plains. It is suitable for cattle.

The rivers are all choked with luxuriant growths of papyrus. The two largest rivers, the Muzizi and Nkussi, have small stretches of open water. Canoe traffic on Lake Albert has been abolished since the advent of sleeping sickness.

The native population is occupied almost entirely in agriculture. Considerable crops of potatoes, millet, beans and bananas are raised for local consumption. There is a small trade in ghee and hides, but cotton is at present the only export of importance. A new industry which commenced in 1913 was the collection and cultivation of the nests of the African silk moths (*anaphe infracta*). Crops and
Food Supplies.

Coffee is grown by the more intelligent Chiefs, whilst at the Government plantation at Kakumiro, some 20 miles to the north of Mubendi station, the oldest specimen of Nyasaland trees in the country are still to be found in a flourishing condition, after a life of more than 10 years. This product has attracted the attention of planters of whom several are now resident in the district. Disease is not unknown but hitherto has done no great damage. Ceara rubber flourishes like a weed, but possesses little commercial value.

Cocoa does well in selected sites, but as a whole the district is too dry for it. There is a possible future for tobacco and wheat.

	Mileage.	Conditions.	
		Fit for cycles.	Roads.
MUBENDI TO HOIMA	76	—	
Mubendi to	—	—	
Kiganwa to	13	"	
Kakumiro to	9	"	
Nkondo to	10	"	
Kitaiuka to	9	"	
Nalwezo to	10	"	
Kafu River (to Hoima 18 miles)	7	"	

	Mileage.	Conditions Fit for cycles.
MUBENDI to MBARARA ..	123	—
Mubendi to	—	—
Kibalinga to	12½	„
Kabokasa to	14	„
Katonga River Boundary (to Mbarara 87 miles) ..	9½	„
MUBENDI to MASAKA (via MAKOLE)	101	„
Mubendi to	—	—
Kibalinga to	12½	„
Kabokasa to	14	„
Katonga River Boundary (to Masaka 65 miles) ..	9½	„
SINGO—KAKUMIRO—LAKE ALBERT	96	„
Singo Boundary (at Kanan- galo River) to	—	—
Bukumi to	15½	„
Kakumiro to	4½	„
Busesa to	16	„
Kibale to	8	„
Kichunda to	12	„
Kagadi (Junction Fort— Portal—Hoima Road) to ..	15	„
Tonia, Lake Albert, approxi- mate (Route now closed on account of sleeping sickness)	25	—
FORT PORTAL—HOIMA ROAD (Mubendi section) to Fort Portal	30	„
Muzizi River boundary and Ford to	—	—
Kagadi to	8	„
Mugaliki to	6½	„
Mabale to	5½	„
Nkussi River boundary and bridge	10	—
To Hoima	35	„
MUBENDI to KAMPALA ..	104	Motor-car and Cart Traffic.

Game.

The Mubendi District is mostly covered with elephant grass and small game is, therefore, scarce, excepting on the shores of Lake Albert in the sleeping sickness area, where there is an open plain where waterbuck and cobus cob are plentiful. Of the larger game, buffalo and elephant are numerous but tall grass and well nigh impenetrable forest afford them at all times an excellent protection and render their pursuit at best uncertain and hazardous. Eland and zebra are found on the Katonga River.

**Township,
etc.**

A Township has been proclaimed at Mubendi, where is situated the Government Station and Post Office. It is connected with Kampala and Fort Portal by telegraph.

The station is 104 miles from Kampala and was built in 1907 to replace Kakumiro, the former headquarters of the District, where a military post had been established. It is 5,121 feet above sea level and derives its name from the range of hills on which it is situated.

The Church Missionary Society have a post at Kikoma in Bwekula. The White Fathers have been for many years established at Bujuni in Buyaga and Bukumi in Bugangadzi.

There is a small Indian Bazaar at Mubendi.

The whole of the district was originally part of Bunyoro. **Local History.** Bwekula, however, was overrun and absorbed at a comparatively early date, probably during the reign of the Kabaka Kamanya of Buganda. Buyaga and Bugangadzi still continued to form part of the former kingdom until after the rebellion of Kabarega in 1899 when, in return for the assistance given to the British by the Baganda, these counties were transferred to them.

The whole country was the scene of much fighting during the various wars and rebellions of the early days of the occupation, Kasaka (now Bukumi) and Nziya hill being noteworthy names in this connection. The caves and rock fissures which are so frequently found in the central portion of the district (and of which there are some very fine examples near Kakumiro) were converted into effective strongholds by the Banyoro inhabitants as against the raiding Baganda. The outline of a British post (Fort Grant) is clearly to be traced to this day on the Butorogo plateau, and similar remains are likewise found at Kaweri and Kabokasa in Southern Bwekula. The three counties are now administered by Baganda chiefs, but the bulk of the peasantry remain Banyoro and to this day they show and revere the tombs of the former Bakama, or kings, of Bunyoro, by whom this part of the country had always been regarded as ancestral "butaka," or burying ground. Though of a different race the chiefs are not unsympathetic and many of them have shown considerable ability. The district in consequence has made marked progress, more especially of recent years.

ENTEBBE DISTRICT.

This district comprises an area of 6,294 square miles, of which 4,113 is the water of Lakes Victoria and Wamala, the boundary of this district including the Sese and Buvuma Islands in Lake Victoria, which groups of Islands contain respectively 264 and 122 square miles.

It is divided into seven counties or Sazas :—

					Title of Chief.
1.	Busiro	..	..	..	Mugema.
2.	Sese	..	..	..	Kweba.
3.	Buvuma	..	..	..	Mbubi.
4.	Mawokota	..	..	..	Kaima.
5.	Butambala	..	..	..	Katambala.
6.	Gomba	..	..	..	Kitunzi.
7.	Busuju	..	..	..	Kasuju.

The boundaries of Entebbe district are :—

Commencing at a point on the provincial boundary south of the Sese Islands, the boundary runs between the islands and Masaka to the mouth of the Katonga River ; thence following the Masaka boundary up the Katonga to the Mubendi district boundary ; thence in an easterly direction along the Mubendi district boundary to its junction with the Mengo district boundary ; thence along the Mengo district boundary to the provincial boundary in Napoleon Gulf north of Buvuma Island ; thence along the provincial boundary to point of commencement.

Topography.

The outstanding feature of Entebbe district is the fact that iron-stone hills rise straight from the Lake shore and that with but few exceptions all the rivers in Busiro wend their sluggish way northwards instead of southwards to the Lake, while practically all the Mawokota and Butambala rivers flow into Lake Victoria. The coastal county of Mawokota is deeply indented with broad swamps. The hills diminish in height in the north of the district at the confluence of the Rivers Mayanja Kato and Mayanja Waswa before they enter the plain of Bulemezi, and in the south of the district along the Katonga valley. Except in the north-west of Busiro and the southern halves of Mawokota and Butambala the whole district is covered with thick elephant grass interspersed with patches of cultivation and forest.

The forests are most dense along the Lake shore and round Nadangira. Five out of the 25 Government forests in Busiro lie within a radius of three miles of this place.

Crops and Food Supplies.

The area under cultivation is approximately 127,000 acres. Bananas, sweet potatoes, cassava, coffee, rubber, cotton, Indian-corn, sugar cane, sim-sim, ground nuts, beans, European vegetables and a little rice and millet are grown.

Fish swarm in the Lake but are obtainable only in Entebbe in small quantities from a little area which has been thrown open to fishing. The approach within one mile of the Lake shore is banned throughout practically

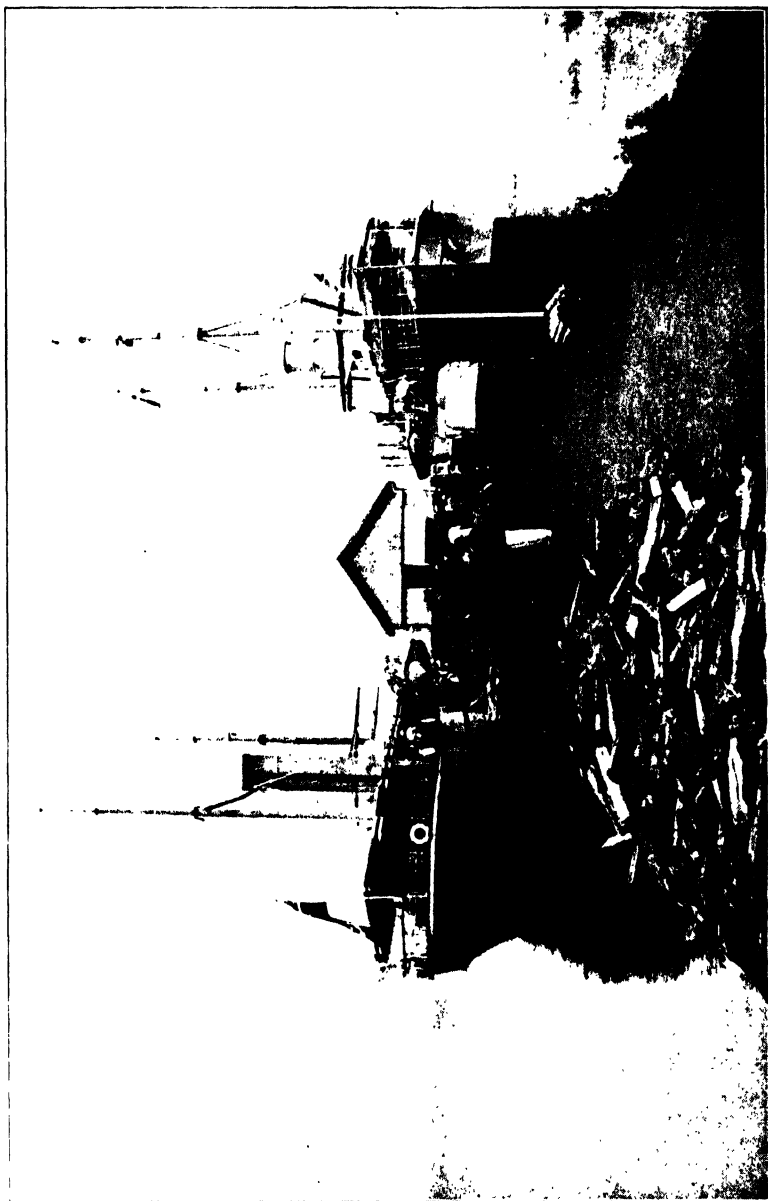


Photo by Lobo, Entebbe.

ENTEBBE PIER.

all the rest of the district because of the danger of sleeping sickness.

Cattle are not numerous. There is little good grazing to be had, except in the south of the district in the Katonga basin.

	Mileage.	Condition.
Entebbe Pier—Kampala ..	25	Metalled motor road fit for all kinds of traffic. Roads.
Kampala—Toro ..	21 (In District)	"
ENTEBBE—MASAKA ..	61½ (In District)	Practicable for carts and light motors in dry weather.
Entebbe—Mbale ..	22½	—
Mbale—Kamengo ..	10	—
Kamengo—Buama ..	10	—
Buama—Buganga ..	11	—
Buganga—Masaka boundary	5	—
KAMPALA—MASAKA (to Mbale junction).	22 (16 in Dist.)	Practicable for carts and light motors in dry weather.
Kampala—Mukono ..	11 (6 in Dist.)	—
Mukono—Mbale ..	11	—
KAMPALA—HOIMA ROAD ..	31 (In District)	Practicable for carts and light motors in dry weather.
Busiro boundary—Wakiso ..	7¼	—
Wakiso—Kakiri ..	7¼	—
Kakiri—Namayumba ..	12	—
Namayumba—boundary ..	4	—
Entebbe—Bweya—Mbale—Kabasanda—Gomba.	32	Canoe ferry at Nakiwogo. Passable for motor-cycles, cycles and rick-shaws.
Busi—Kasanja—Nsagu—Kampala—Masaka Road	21	Canoe ferry at Mabamba. Passable for motor-cycles, etc.
Entebbe—Kasuku—Mukono—Kapeka—Kiziba River—Danzc.	43	Passable for motor-cycles, etc.
Gobero (Hoima Road)—Kiziba.	5	"
Butoro—Kabasanda ..	12	"
Masaka Road—Butoto—Kyatwa.	6	"
Katende—Kiringente—Bujuko (Toro Road)	7½	"
Mpigi—Mudama ..	8	"
Mitala Maria—Butambala ..	9	"
Masaka Road—Nkosi—Kituntu—Butambala	13	"
Kabasanda—Kibibi—Gombe—Bulo—Gomba	27	"
Kibibi—Kyandaza ..	9	"
Entebbe-Mubendi Road from Nkosi along the Katonga, and various other cross-roads, for cycle and foot traffic only.		

Game.

Situtunga are to be found in almost every swamp ; leopards, jackals and wild pigs are also fairly numerous. A few cob, waterbuck, bushbuck and duiker may also be met with. Crocodile and hippopotami are numerous in the waters of the Lake and in the Katonga and Mayanja Rivers. Elephant come across the Katonga in some numbers, buffalo are found throughout the district, and especially round the Katonga mouth ; zebra, topi and mpala are found in Southern Butambala.

Township.

The only Township in the district is Entebbe. Entebbe was established in 1893 by Sir Gerald Portal as a Military post and the principal post on Lake Victoria. It was a place of considerable importance in former times as the headquarters of the war canoes of the Kabaka and the residence of Gabunga, the Admiral of the Fleet.

In time of war it was then the base of operations against the islanders and at other times the principal trading landing place for the Sese islanders. It was frequently visited by H.M. Commissioners from Kampala, when the Protectorate was first established, but did not become the headquarters of the Government until 1894. Entebbe was declared a Township in 1903. In 1907, owing to the devastation by sleeping sickness, the natives were removed from the Lake shore and the Sese and Buvuma Islands, and the importance of Entebbe as a native administrative centre diminished. It retains its importance, however, as the Administrative capital of Uganda, and the official population has largely increased with the development of the Protectorate. Entebbe possesses a good port, and there is a large hotel, a golf course and a club.

Mission Stations.

The Church Missionary Society have mission stations in charge of Europeans at Entebbe and Budo, and have established mission churches in almost every village in the county. The White Fathers have stations in charge of Europeans at Entebbe, Kisubi, Nadangira, Mitala Maria, and Katende.

Local History.

Entebbe district, lying in the heart of Buganda, has no separate history. Busiro County claims distinction as being the " Butaka " land (burying-ground) of the Kabakas of Buganda and the coronation tree is situated on Budo hill in the centre of the county. It has suffered more, perhaps, than any other county on the mainland from the ravages of sleeping sickness, which has deprived the peoples living on the shores of their previous means of livelihood and decimated the fishing population. Mawokota claims to be the very centre of the pure Muganda race which is said originally to have centred round Mbale

in this county. Butambala was allotted to the Mahomedan faction and settled by them in 1900. The Mahomedan religion predominates in the county.

In 1908 the whole of the remaining inhabitants of these islands were removed to the mainland and settled in areas where tsetse fly were unknown. Attempts have been made from time to time by a few individuals to return to their old homes, but as a rule unsuccessfully. Stern measures are taken against such intrusions. These islands are most fertile, abounding in fine timber, and when populated were most productive. The rainfall is large, and the scenery beautiful. Good building stone can be obtained there. Investigations are now being carried on in the islands by the Medical Department, regarding the habits of the tsetse fly. It is hoped that eventually people will be allowed to return to these islands. The islands are now the haunt of hippo, situtunga, crocodiles and water birds.

Buvuma and
Seso.

NATIVE GOVERNMENT.

Under the Uganda Agreement, 1900, the Kabaka (King) of *Buganda is recognized by His Majesty's Government as the native ruler of the Province of Buganda under His Majesty's protection and over-rule. The Kabaka exercises direct rule over the natives of Buganda, through the Lukiko or Native Council, subject to supervision by His Majesty's Government.

The Lukiko consists of approximately 89 members, and is composed as follows:—

<i>Ex-Officio</i> Senior Members	{	The Katikiro (Prime Minister)— President.
		The Omulamuzi (Native Chief Justice)— Vice-President.
		The Omuwanika (Treasurer of the Kabaka's and Lukiko's Revenues) or third minister who has power to preside in the absence of the above.

The chiefs of each county, 20 in all, or their representatives.

Three notables from each county and six additional men of importance in the kingdom nominated by the Kabaka.

The functions of the Lukiko are to discuss all matters concerning the native administration of Buganda and to submit to the Kabaka resolutions which may be passed by

(*Buganda is the correct name of the Province, "Uganda" being the official name for the whole Protectorate.)

a majority regarding measures it is proposed to adopt. The Governor's sanction is necessary before effect can be given to any such resolution.

The following native courts have been established for the administration of justice in all cases in which, generally speaking, both parties are natives of the Protectorate.

THE COURT OF THE LUKIKO, consisting of a committee of seven or more members of the Lukiko, presided over by the Kabaka or one of the three principal native officers of state, before mentioned, with full jurisdiction, civil and criminal, in Buganda original, appellate and revisional; subject to certain restrictions, supervision and revision, by the British Courts. To these, by a recent agreement, all cases involving death are transferred.

THE COURTS OF THE ABAMASAZA (COUNTY CHIEFS), presided over by the Saza (county) chief of each county or his deputy, sitting with any two or more of the first grade sub-chiefs or their deputies, or failing them any two or more of the elders of the Saza, with jurisdiction civil and criminal in the Saza, within certain specified limits, and power to revise the proceedings of the courts of the sub-chiefs.

THE COURTS OF THE ABAGOMBOLOLA OR SUB-CHIEFS, presided over by the first grade sub-chiefs or their deputies, sitting with any two or more of certain specified petty chiefs under them, or failing these any two or more of the elders in the district of the sub-chief, with jurisdiction, civil and criminal, each in his own administrative district, within certain specified limits.

Native Admin-
istration.

The Buganda Province is divided into 20 Sazas or counties for the purpose of native administration, each under the control of a Saza Chief who is responsible to the Lukiko.

Each county is sub-divided into districts known as Gombolola divisions, under the control of Gombolola or sub-chiefs, of whom there are approximately ten to each Saza. The Gombolola chiefs are known by various titles, as follows, in order of precedence:—The Mumyuka, Sabadu, Sabagabo, Sabawali, Musale, Mutuba I., Mutuba II., Mutuba III., and so forth.

These sub-chieftainships vary in number to the size of the Saza. Each of the Gombolola chiefs has the same titled posts under him, according to native custom, styled Abemiruka. This practically feudal system has existed in the country for generations and simplifies and assists administration in a remarkable way.

The chieftainships are not hereditary. In former days they were held at the Kabaka's pleasure and each had

estates appertaining to the title. No private estates existed as the land was considered all to belong to the Kabaka. Since the Uganda Agreement of 1900, however, which provides for the allotment of private estates by the Lukiko to the principal chiefs and landholders, besides certain official estates to the Saza chiefs and ministers, conditions have necessarily changed, and the private estates so allotted are now freehold property.

The peasants who do not possess land cultivate their plantations as tenants-at-will under the landowners whom they recognize as their chiefs to whom they owe allegiance. Their feudal duties have now been reduced to one month's annual work in lieu of rent for the chief and a similar period on the upkeep of public roads.

CHAPTER IV.

THE EASTERN PROVINCE.

This Province, the southern borders of which are on Lake Victoria, is the largest Province of the Protectorate, and comprises an area of 36,292 square miles, of which area 7,766 square miles is water, principally the territorial waters of Lake Victoria.

The average height of the Province is about 3,400 feet above sea level, rising to a maximum height of about 14,140 feet above mean sea level on the summit of Mount Elgon.

For administrative purposes the Province is divided into the following districts :--(1) Busoga, (2) Bukedi, (3) Teso, (4) Lango, (5) Lobar and (6) Karamoja.

The provincial boundaries are as follows :—

Commencing at the Ripon Falls the boundary follows the Buganda boundary along the River Nile and through Lake Kioga to the junction of the Northern Province and Buganda at the River Kafu ; thence continuing along the Northern Province boundary along the River Nile to the mouth of the River Tochi ; thence along the River Tochi to its confluence with the River Aloin ; thence a straight line to the summit of Mount Amoru ; thence a straight line to the confluence of the Rivers Udek and Assua ; thence a straight line in an easterly direction to the southern foothills of Mount Napono.

From this point the boundary continues along the southern boundary of the Northern Province to its junction with the Rudolf Province ; thence along the southern boundary of the Dabossa District of the Rudolf Province to the point of intersection of the meridian 35° E. and the parallel of latitude 3° N.

The boundary then follows the western boundary of Turkwel District of the Rudolf Province to the point on the River Suam or Turkwel, where it meets the boundary of British East Africa ; thence the thalweg of the River Turkwel or Suam to the source of the River Suam in Mount Elgon ; thence a straight line to the highest point of Mount Elgon ; thence a straight line to the source of the Malawa River (otherwise known as the Lukaka River) ; thence along the Malawa River to the point where the Mumias-Busia-Mbale road crosses it.

From this point the boundary follows the Mumias-Busia-Mbale road to the point where it crosses the Sango River ;

thence along the Sango River to its confluence with the Sio River; thence along the Sio River to its mouth in Lake Victoria.

From the mouth of the Sio River the boundary follows a straight line to the centre of the channel on the western side of Sumba Island; thence a straight line to the western point of Mageta Island; thence a straight line to the most westerly islet adjacent to Mfwanganu Island; thence a straight line to the most westerly islet of the Ugingo Islands; thence a straight line to the point where the Anglo-German boundary along the parallel of latitude 1° S. cuts the easterly shore of Lake Victoria at Mohuru Point. From this point the boundary follows the parallel of latitude 1° S. due west until it meets the Buganda boundary in Lake Victoria; thence along the Buganda boundary to the point of commencement at the Ripon Falls.

(1) BUSOGA DISTRICT.

This district comprises an area of 10,445 square miles, of which area 6,526 square miles is territorial water of Lake Victoria.

The district is divided into the eight following counties or Sazas :—

		Title of Chief.
1. Bugabula	..	Gabula.
2. Kigulu	..	Ngobi.
3. Luuka	..	Tabingwa.
4. Bulamogi	..	Zebondo.
5. Bugweri	..	Menya.
6. Bukoli	..	Wakoli.
7. Bunyuli	..	Nanyumba.
8. Bunya	..	Luba.

The boundaries are as follows :—

Commencing at the junction of the 1° south latitude and the 32° east longitude, the boundary follows the Buganda boundary in a north-easterly and northerly direction to Lake Kioga; thence it goes through the waters of Lake Kioga and Rivers Mpologoma and Malawa to the confluence of the Magera and Malawa Rivers; thence it follows the Magera River to its source in the Bulugui Hills; thence along the western slopes of the Bulugui Hills to the junction of the Mayindo and Namakindwe Rivers; thence it follows the Mayindo River to its source; thence in a straight line to the source of the River Nalioba which it follows to its mouth in Lake Victoria; thence it goes in a south-easterly direction to the Uganda-East Africa boundary which it follows in a southerly direction until it meets the old Anglo-German boundary. It then follows

the old Anglo-German boundary in a westerly direction to the point of commencement.

Native Government.

For the purposes of administration, Busoga is recognised as being divided into eight counties, following the ancient tribal conditions. The counties are ruled by Sazas, with their subordinate chiefs, with a central advisory council or Lukiko, which sits at Jinja.

Crops and Food Supplies.

The staple food of the Basoga is the green banana. Besides the banana, however, the natives also cultivate sweet potatoes and mpindi (white peas) in small quantities. Wimbi (small millet) is also cultivated to some extent throughout the district to provide stores of food in case of a shortage of bananas in times of drought, while in the northern part it is cultivated extensively.

The chief native products for the export market are cotton, chillies, ground nuts and sim-sim. The district has been one of the chief sources of the world's supply of small chillies for some years. The district is also suitable for coffee, a crop which is now being extensively taken up by European planters. There are 14 European estates under development on which 2,800 acres of coffee, 445 acres of cocoa and 420 acres of rubber are under cultivation. Intending planters however should note that local food sources are quite insufficient to meet the requirements of large gangs of labourers. They can, however, obtain a good supply within 18 months after they have commenced cultivation, if they plant bananas.

Railways.

A railway connects Jinja with the first navigable point on the Nile, Namasagali. It was commenced in 1910 and opened on January 1st, 1912. Distance from Jinja to Namasagali is 61 miles. The labourers employed on construction were entirely the natives of Busoga.

Main Roads.

There are four main roads in the district:—

(a) Jinja-Mbale Road, 94 miles. This is available for motor traffic for the first 36 miles. Thence forward it will take ox cart transport.

(b) Luzinga-Kaliro Road, 26 miles. Available for motor transport. This connects important cotton growing neighbourhoods of Naigobya and Kaliro with the Busoga Railway at mile 26.

(c) Mbulamuti-Kamuli, 8 miles, connecting Kamuli, an important trade centre of northern Busoga, with the railway at mile 42. This is available for motor transport.

(d) Mjanji Port-Malaba Bridge, 25 miles. This is the southern part of the motor road connecting Mbale, headquarters of the Bukedi District, with Lake Victoria at Mjanji on Lake Victoria.

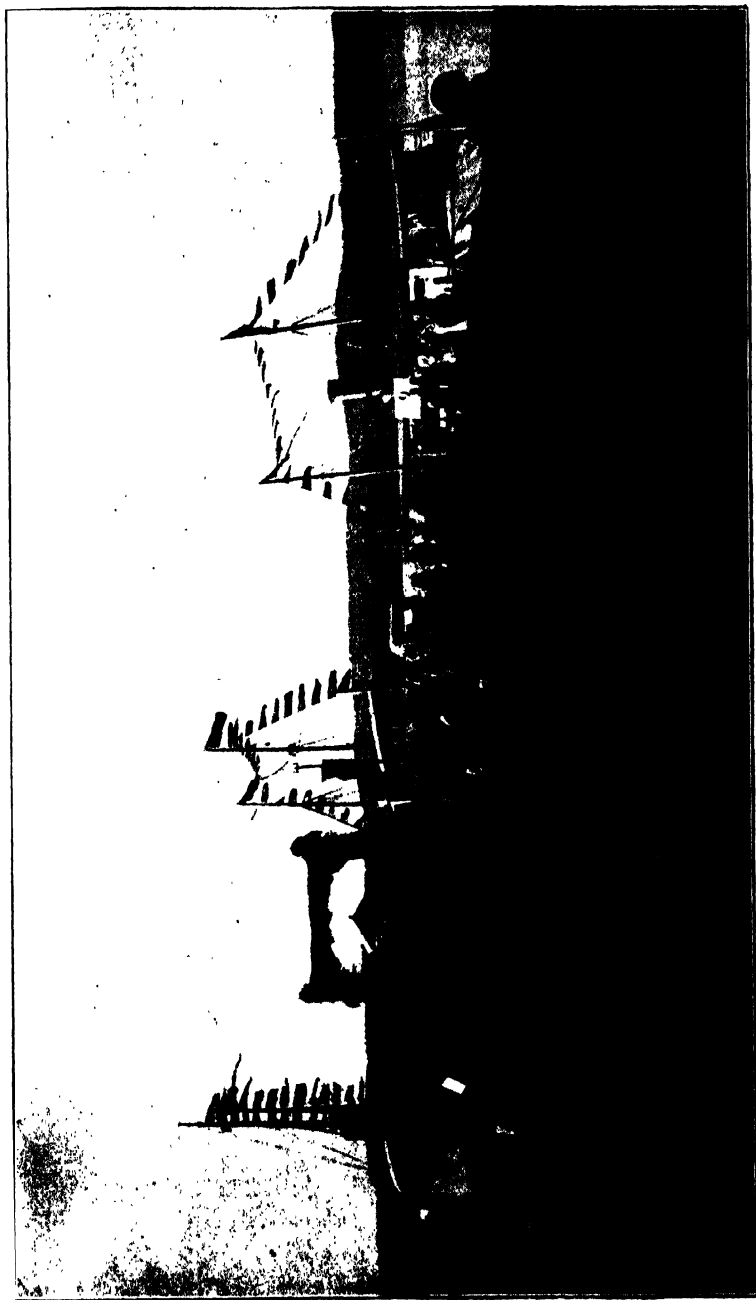


Photo by Lobo, Entebbe.

JINJA PIER.

All important points throughout the district are connected by non-metalled roads. These are suitable for cycling, except after rain, but will not carry heavy-wheeled traffic. District Roads.

The commoner species of antelope are to be found in Busoga ; leopards, hyænas and wild pigs abound. Buffaloes are plentiful in certain parts, and situtunga are occasionally to be found on the banks of the Nile. Game.

There are two herds of elephants in the district, one of 30 with headquarters near the Nile between Jinja and Bogonja, and one of 60 which lives mainly in the waste areas of Nanyumba's country.

Vegetation, however, throughout is far too dense for the district to afford much scope to the sportsman.

The seat of the Government in Busoga was first established at Luba's in 1892. After the Soudanese mutiny it was moved to Iganga, and remained there till 1900, when it was finally transferred to Jinja. Government Stations.

The district contains seven Townships. The most important of these are Jinja, the Government station. Kamuli, a rising trade centre in northern Busoga, Iganga, on the Jinja-Mbale road, and Kaliro in the north-east of the district. Townships.

A new port, Mjanji, which will soon develop into a trade centre of the first importance, has recently been opened at the mouth of the Sio River in Busoga-Kavirondo, and already serves as an outlet for much produce.

These trade centres consist of a row of mud or corrugated iron shops, the plots on which the buildings are erected being rented by the trader from the Government. The traders are a motley crowd of Indians, Arabs, Baluchis, Swahilis and Somalis, the Indians predominating.

Busoga originally consisted of a number of tribes all more or less in a state of war with one another. This lack of cohesion exposed the country to constant raids from the Baganda, who, besides being a powerful and warlike people, were always able to enlist certain of the Basoga tribes as allies in despoiling the remainder. History.

At this time Busoga was thickly populated by a people singularly rich in food and cattle, so much so that Bukoli, one of the southern counties, was regarded as the promised land by caravans from the coast.

Sleeping sickness, however, spread rapidly through the southern portion of the district, and the work thus begun

was assisted by a terrible outbreak of small-pox in 1900, and completed by the big famine of 1908. The greater part of Bukoli is now bush, inhabited only by pigs, leopards and hyænas, and in no part of the district have the people as yet recovered their former prosperity.

To convey a clearer idea of the terrible effects of the evils mentioned in the preceding paragraph, the case of Saza Chief Nanyumba may be cited. Before the advent of sleeping sickness this chief had 17,000 fighting men at his command. He has now 105 taxpayers.

The first Government station was established at Luba's in 1892, and it was here that Major Thruston and his three companions were murdered by the Soudanese troops in the mutiny in 1897. Luba's was also the scene of the murder of Bishop Hannington in 1885.

After the mutiny the station was moved to Iganga, and finally to Jinja in 1900.

Missions.

The Church Missionary Society first began work in Busoga in 1891, and established a station at Luba's in 1894. The Society has now three flourishing stations in the district, namely at Iganga, Kamuli and Kaliro.

The Mill Hill (Roman Catholic) Mission have also been active in the district, and are now also firmly established at Jinja, Iganga, Kamuli, and Kaliro.

Remarks.

Prior to 1911 there was only one plantation in Busoga in European hands (if we except the Government experimental farm at Namenage), namely, the Bukona Estate, near Iganga, which was taken up by a syndicate with a view to experimenting in coffee and rubber. There are now 15 European estates under development.

Applicants for land should not lose sight of two facts : firstly, that the local supply of labour in Busoga is strictly limited ; and, secondly, that there are no extensive local food markets. In fact, large gangs of labour cannot be fed on the country, and planters cannot hope to employ labour in Busoga with success unless they have made arrangements for a steady food supply from outside sources or grow it on their estates. The problem of water supply is in many parts of the district sufficiently acute, but the difficulty of food supply is common to all parts.

(2) BUKEDI DISTRICT.

The district comprises an area of 3,088 square miles, of which area 112 square miles is water in Mpologoma.

It is divided into the following ten counties or Sazas :—

- (1) Bugishu (Mbale).
- (2) Kokonjero Division (Central Bugishu).
- (3) N.E. Elgon and Nbai Division (Northern Bugishu).
- (4) S.E. Elgon Division (Southern Bugishu).
- (5) Bunyuli.
- (6) Bugweri.
- (7) Budama.
- (8) Palisa.
- (9) Bugwe.
- (10) Samia.

The boundaries are as follows :—

Commencing at a point on the boundary between the Uganda and East Africa Protectorates, being the centre of the crater of Mount Elgon, the boundary runs in a straight line to the source of the Kisimchanga River (also known as the Kilim or Greek River), which river it follows to its junction with the Kiboko River, which river it follows to its junction with Lake Gedge. From thence it runs in a southerly direction to the junction of the Sipi River with the Siroko River, which river it follows to the point at which it is joined by the Nalukuba River, which river it follows to its source. From thence it passes between the hills Omiton and Mpogo ; thence along a natural depression to the source of the Naminassa River, which river it follows to its junction with the Lwere Swamp, the southern shore of which it follows to the Mpologoma. It then follows the eastern boundary of the Busoga District to its junction with the Uganda-East Africa boundary, which boundary it follows in a north-easterly direction to the point of commencement.

The central feature in the topography of the Mbale or Bukedi district is the large mass of Mount Elgon. From the escarpment, which, at a more or less uniform height of 8,000 feet, extends in a semi-circle from the East African border northwards to Sebei, a series of ridges and foothills are projected outwards to a radius of some 20 miles. In the north-east Bugishu country the formation consists of a number of ridges, spreading out from the escarpment like the fingers of a hand, and ending in an abrupt drop of several hundred feet to the plains. In south-east Bugishu the country is broken up into a mass of hills, of varying height and steepness, which gradually merge into the plains of Budama. Mount Kokonjero, a precipitous mass lying immediately behind Mbale station, only two miles away, runs from north to south, and is joined to the escarpment by the Bukiga ridge. It is seven miles in length, and its highest point is some 3,500 feet above Mbale.

Topography.

There are no large rivers in the district, the four most important being the Malawa and Manafwa on the south, and the Namatala and Siroko on the north. All these rivers contain a considerable volume of water during the rains. The first two are crossed by strong iron bridges on the Mbale-Mjanji road, while there is an iron bridge over the Namatala on the Mbale-Jinja road, and a second is under construction on the Mbale-Soroti road.

The county of Budama consists of a series of long-backed ridges, running generally from east to west, with steep gradients between. The country is open with low scrub, few large trees, and much cultivation. In the south, Tororo Peak and the Sukulu Hills attain an altitude of 1,200-1,500 feet above the plain.

Bunyuli is much flatter, swampy and thickly wooded. Bugweri is mainly on a higher level than Bunyuli, rather more hilly, and is also densely wooded in parts.

Palisa is a flat country, partly open and partly wooded, bordered by swamps on three sides, and indented by belts of swamps. Small rocky hills are frequent, and the general aspect of the country is similar to that of the Teso District, to which the county is also allied ethnically.

The district is divided into eight counties as before stated.

Native Government.

There are no Saza chiefs in seven of these counties, nor does the system of chiefs correspond in any way to that obtaining in Buganda. Hereditary chiefs are few, the majority having been selected by the Government subsequent to the establishment of a station. The Bagishu, especially before our advent, recognised no chiefs, and the present chiefs of the various clans have only a very small fraction of that authority which should be theirs. There is, however, little doubt that in future, as the old patriarchal system dies out and the influence of civilization becomes greater, these chiefs or their successors will be able to come more into line with their counterparts among the other tribes.

There is one Saza chief in the Mbale County, viz., the Kakunguru, who has authority over his 20 square miles of freehold land and a certain sphere of influence beyond. The Kakunguru is a Muganda by birth, and a large number of the natives living on his land are Baganda; consequently the conditions obtaining in his sphere are foreign to the actual native conditions in the rest of the district.

A County Court has been established in each county, having jurisdiction over natives of that county, for the settlement of disputes between natives only. An appeal lies from the decision of a County Court to the District

Commissioner or Assistant District Commissioner either in Mbale or (more usually) on tour ; and the greater part of an administrative officer's time on tour is occupied in the settlement of these appeals.

From 1904 to 1913 the chiefs were assisted in their various duties by paid Government Agents, who were in most cases, but not in all, Baganda. In the early days of administration these agents were of very great assistance. It was extremely important that the power of the chiefs should be consolidated, the chiefs themselves having, at the beginning, practically no power at all, and that elementary ideas of justice, order and method should be inculcated in a people to whom such ideas were essentially foreign. In this work the agents have rendered signal service.

The chiefs are now considered sufficiently trained to be able to perform their duties without external aid, and only six agents remain of whom three are County Agents, one is an Assistant County Agent, and two are in charge of frontier posts.

In the Bagishu country the principal, but by no means the only, food supply is bananas, the shambas of which cover a great area of ground in the hills. The Bagishu also cultivate wimbi, beans, peas (three varieties), Indian corn, and a certain quantity of sweet potatoes. Crops and Food Supplies.

Sim-sim and ground nuts do not grow in the hills ; wimbi, the principal food crop next to bananas, is planted in the spring rains, beans and peas in the autumn. At 6,000 to 7,000 feet the wimbi crop is not planted till the autumn, and ripens at the beginning of the hot weather (December).

In Budama the natives are more a grain-eating than a banana-eating people. Bananas were introduced by the Baganda, but are not grown there so extensively as in the Bantu counties. Wimbi, mtama, Indian corn, chiroko, sim-sim and ground nuts are plentiful.

In Bunyuli, bananas, though extensively planted, do not do well, the soil being too sandy. Large crops of ground nuts, chiroko (mpokea, mpindi and mpande) and sim-sim are raised. These are usually planted in June or July, and ripen in September and October. Wimbi, Indian corn, and potatoes are also grown in large quantities.

Sugar cane is plentiful near Butaleja.

In Bugweri and Palisa the same crops are grown, with the addition of mtama in northern Palisa.

Cotton was first started in this district in 1904. Experiments on a large scale in the different counties were made in 1908, and in 1909 the industry first obtained a firm hold on the native cultivators. Two-and-a-half tons of seed were planted in 1910, and by 1916 the amount of seed planted Cotton.

increased to 48 tons, from which the yield was 2,638 tons of seed cotton. There is at present only one ginnery in Bukedi, but applications have been made for sites for two others. The only obstacle to the continued expansion of cotton growing in Bukedi has hitherto been the difficulty of transporting seed-cotton.

**Ground
Nuts, etc.**

Ground nuts, sim-sim and chiroko are in normal times the principal items of export from the district, and very large areas of ground used to be placed by the natives under these crops, which found a ready sale locally. During the war the market for this kind of produce has been irregular, and prices have remained low, with the result that the output has decreased, but a recovery may be expected on a return to normal conditions.

Chillies.

Chillies are grown in some quantity in the counties of Bugweri and Bunyuli.

Wheat.

Wheat was introduced in the higher altitudes of the Bagishu country in 1911, but on the whole was not a success and the experiment was abandoned. This year, however, the Agricultural Department are making a new start with a different variety.

Coffee.

Experimental plots in coffee were laid out in the Bugishu country by the District Agricultural Officer in the latter part of 1912. The majority of plots did very well, and there are now some 60 acres under coffee, from which the yield in 1916 was 36 tons. Although these plots are remote from any others, and no native coffee was grown formerly, the usual diseases (die-back, coffee leaf disease, etc.) appeared towards the end of 1915.

Rice.

Several varieties of rice are grown in the plains, and a large area is devoted to this crop particularly in Bunyuli, where the conditions are very suitable. In 1918 there were 530 acres of rice grown by natives.

Roads.

There are two main roads connecting Mbale with Jinja and with Mjanji. Of these, the former is metalled in parts but is no longer suitable for motor-traffic, and in wet weather the swamp near the Namatala river, four miles from Mbale, presents a difficult obstacle. The Jinja road is 94 miles long, and the Mpologoma river en route has to be crossed by canoe. The Mbale-Mjanji road, 62 miles, is a first-class metalled road and connects Mbale with the nearest port on Lake Victoria. There is a motor-van now running on this road, and a weekly steamer service is advertised between Mjanji and Kisumu. There is not at present any regular steamer connection between Mjanji and Jinja.

In addition there are approximately 570 miles of district roads fit for cycling or motor-cycling. Roads in the

Bagishu country, with the exception of the Mbale-Lukonge-Lwakaka road, are not fit for cycling, owing to the steep gradients. Ox-carts use some of these roads, which in dry weather would also be suitable for light motor-cars with the exception of certain sections. Owing to the swampy nature of the district the number of native-made culverts on any given stretch of these earth roads is necessarily large, and they are unequal to the strain of continual heavy traffic. On all roads there are administrative centres at convenient distances. The following are the names and distances from Mbale of the centres on the principal roads:—

I. Mbale-Palisa.

Iki Iki	12·7 miles from Mbale.
Bulangira	..	..	..	20·7 "
Puti Puti	..	..	..	26·7 "
Palisa	..	..	..	33·7 "

Palisa to Kasodo—Saka ferry—6 miles.

II. Mbale-Bunyuli.

Mazimasa	..	..	..	11·2 miles from Mbale.
Butaleja	..	..	..	19·5 "
Kainja's	..	..	..	28·2 "

Kainja's to Busoga ferry—3 miles.

III. Mbale-Lwakaka.

Lukonge	..	..	..	10 miles from Mbale.
Butiru	..	..	..	19 "
Lwakaka (E.A.P. border)	..	..	..	25½ "

IV. Mbale-Kilimi (not fit for cycling; owing to mountainous nature of country the distance is given in hours).

Siroko	..	..	..	5 hours from Mbale.
Bulegenyi	..	..	..	2½ hours from Siroko.
Sipi (Tracy Falls)	..	..	..	2½ hours from Bulegenyi.
Sebei	..	..	..	3 hours from Sipi.
Chui River	..	..	..	2½ hours from Sebei.
Kilimi	..	..	..	7 hours from Chui River.

V. Mbale-Mjanji.

Busiu	..	..	..	11 miles from Mbale.
Magode's	..	..	..	17 "
Tororo	..	..	..	29 "
Busia	..	..	..	45 "
Mjanji	..	..	..	62 "

VI. Mbale-Jinja.

Naboa	..	..	..	12½ miles from Mbale.
Budaka	..	..	..	17 "
Terinyi	..	..	..	30 "

Terinyi to Mpologoma ferry—2·7 miles.

Travellers to Soroti can proceed either via Kumi or via Ngora. By the former route the first camp—Kachumbala, 13½ miles from Mbale—is in Teso district. By the latter route the first camp—Kakoro, 12½ miles from Mbale—is in Bukedi. A metalled road is under construction between Palisa and Gogonyo—13 miles.

Gogonyo, on an arm of Lake Kioga in the extreme north-western corner of the district, is a regular port of call for the Lake Kioga steamer service, and serves as an outlet

Waterways

tor produce from Palisa County and adjacent parts of Teso district.

The principal ferries are as under :—

	Time taken in crossing.
On the Mpologoma :	
Bulolo-Kitantalo (Jinja-Mbale main road) ..	$\frac{1}{2}$ hour.
Kasodo-Saka (from Kaliro to Palisa) ..	$\frac{1}{2}$ „
Peta-Bulamogi (N.W. Palisa) ..	1 „
Kainja's (Bunyuli road) ..	$\frac{1}{2}$ „
On the Lwere :	
Agule-Ngora Port	$\frac{1}{2}$ „
On the Namatala :	
Kisoko-Kireka	1 „

Game.

Game is scarce in the greater part of the district owing to the dense population. The only part where game still exists is in the uninhabited country between the foot of the escarpment and the lower Siroko River to Lake Gedge, and between the Chui River and the Karomojo border. In this country elephant, rhino, hippo, giraffe, zebra, lion, buffalo, water-buck, hartebeest, topi, bush-buck, and Kobus thomasi cob may be found. Hippo are also fairly numerous round the Palisa coast, and Speke's tragelaphus in the Mpologoma and Namatala swamps. In the bamboo forest on Mount Elgon there are grey monkey, bush-buck, mountain buffalo and wild dog, but owing to the nature of the country these are very rarely seen. There are no herds of elephants with headquarters in this district, but small herds occasionally visit the Siroko Valley from the north of Lake Gedge.

Government Stations.

The original station in Bukedi was at Budaka, in the county of Bugweri, 17 miles nearer Jinja on the main road. This was formerly the headquarters of Kakunguru, the Muganda chief, who was the pioneer of administration in Bukedi and Teso. A District Officer was sent to Budaka in 1902, and the station was removed to its present site at Mbale by the Governor (Sir J. Hayes Sadler) in January, 1904.

Townships.

Mbale Township was surveyed in December, 1908, and permanent buildings were erected early in 1909.

The following important trade centres in the district have also been gazetted as Townships :—

In Palisa, Palisa and Gogonyo.

In Bugweri, Budaka.

In Budama, Nagongera.

Other trade centres which are prospective Townships are :—

In Bunyuli, Butaleja.

In Budama, Tororo.

There are seven different tribes in Bukedi district, the **The People.** Bagishu, Mbai, Banyuli, Bagweri, Badama, Teso, and Balegenyi. Of these the Bagishu, Banyuli, and Bagweri are Bantu races; the Badama are Nilotic; the Teso are Hamitic; the Mbai are akin to the Nandi and Suk of East Africa; and the Balegenyi are a mixed race. The great diversity of the tribes in so small an area is extremely puzzling to the traveller, more especially as the languages spoken are so dissimilar. It is curious to note that tribes which have lived in adjacent counties to each other for, at all events, three generations are still unable to understand each other's tongue. Thus the peasants in the Nilotic county of Budama are unintelligible to their neighbours in the Bantu county of Bunyuli except through the medium of a bastard Luganda. Even more strange is the fact that the Wamia and Badama (both Nilotic tribes), who are intermixed in the county of Budama, have to employ interpreters when they wish to converse.

A traveller coming from the Malawa River to Mbale (a distance of some 30 miles) passes through three distinct tribes: first, the Wamia (Teso) round Sukulu; then Badama from Tororo to Magode's; finally, for the last 14 miles, Bagishu.

In the notes on the various tribes (*vide* Chapter on **History.** "Anthropology") endeavour has been made to trace as far as possible the migrations of the races which are now established in the district. The Bagishu may fairly be regarded as the aboriginal tribe, and the rest of Bukedi would seem to have been the prey of off-shoots or remnants of different migrating armies. Needless to say it was, until recent years, the scene of countless inter-tribal wars.

The Masai (who gave the name Elgon to the mountain known by the Bagishu as Masaba) were in the habit of raiding up to the foothills, and their name is still feared by the Bagishu.

Arab and Swahili traders had found the road to Karomojo at least 30 years ago, and had established trading relations with the natives en route, especially with the Mbai. The first white men to visit the district were Colonel Macdonald and his expedition in 1897-98. They camped close to the present site of Mbale station, and their escort came into conflict with the Bankoko clan of Bagishu. Subsequently his food-depôts at Sore and Lower Boma (below Sebei) were attacked, and the expedition were compelled to make reprisals.

The Baganda first obtained a foothold in the district during the pursuit of the Soudanese mutineers, when some

Baganda freebooters established themselves at Ndinwa's in Palisa and collected tribute from the Bagweri and Teso.

In 1900 the Kakunguru, with a small army of Baganda, made his way from Bululu, through the Teso country to Bukedi, and established his first boma at Naboa in Bugweri, removing shortly afterwards to Budaka. In less than two years he had consolidated his rule throughout Bugweri, Bunyuli and Teso, and changed his headquarters to Mpumude (later the C.M.S. station of Nabumale) with a view to extending his operations among the Bagishu. This post was visited by His Majesty's Commissioner, Sir H. H. Johnston, and the Kakunguru was instructed to return to Budaka. In 1902 a Government station was opened at Budaka. In the same year Kakunguru moved to Mbale, which was selected as the permanent site for a station by Sir J. Hayes Sadler in December, 1903. Mbale station was opened the following month.

The Kakunguru paved the way for our administration of the country by overcoming the opposition of the native tribes to strangers, by making good roads throughout the country, by building bomas for his agents, many of whom were taken over as Government agents in 1904, by introducing trade, and by accustoming the natives to appeal to a central authority for the settlement of their disputes instead of deciding them by force of arms. He was rewarded by the title of "Owesaza" and by a grant of 20 square miles of land close to Mbale.

For the first two years the officers in charge of Mbale confined their attention principally to the more settled parts of the district. But in October, 1904, punitive measures had to be taken against the Bayobo and neighbouring clans of Bagishu for murders of traders in their country. In October, 1905, a company of the King's African Rifles patrolled Budama in consequence of an attack on the Baganda boma by the Badama.

It was not till 1906 that direct administration of all the Bagishu clans was taken in hand. As a result it became necessary to enforce our authority on these primitive people, to whom, in the nature of things, the only argument which appealed, in the first instance, was the argument of superior force. Hence a punitive force of the King's African Rifles was sent against the Balago, Bambo and Bapoto clans in February, 1907, and police measures were found necessary against the Batandiga and Bakigai in March, 1907; the Basano in October, 1907; the Bamafaka, Bagitimwa, and Bamasifwa in November, 1907; and the Balucheke in December, 1907. Since that year, with the exception of the Mbai in June, 1909, the Bakigai in Novem-

ber, 1909, and the Balucheke in May, 1911, the mountain tribes have given no serious trouble.

The outlying district of Karamoja, formerly included in the administrative area of Mbale district, was closed to trade in May, 1911, and is now administered from the Rudolf Province. The Teso and Miro sub-divisions of the former Bukedi district became separate districts in 1911.

The commercial prosperity of the district is now established on a sound basis. Mbale, from the trade point of view, existed for many years merely as a clearing house for ivory of Karamojan caravans. Now that this speculative trade has disappeared, cotton and other native-grown products afford to the native a ready means of obtaining money for his tax, and, to the petty trader, an opportunity for considerable profit. There are a large number of Indian, Arab, and Somali traders in the district, and the number of shops established outside Mbale is now 140, as compared with 33 in 1909. Telegraphic communication with Jinja was established at the end of 1909, with Mumias and Kisumu early in 1912, and with Bugondo (Teso) in July, 1917.

In 1902 the Church Missionary Society obtained the site of Kakunguru's old boma at Nabumale in the Bagishu country, but this station was abandoned in 1915. The Society started a Mission at Mbale itself in 1908, and in October, 1912, the first High School and Agricultural College (C.M.S.) was opened at Mivule, three miles from Mbale. Missions.

The Mill Hill Roman Catholic Mission was established at Budaka in 1901. Other stations were opened at Nyondo, under the south-east face of Kokonjero Hill, in 1903, and at Nagongera in Budama in 1913. The same Mission has also acquired a site at Palisa, where a house has been built but has not yet been occupied.

(3) TESO DISTRICT.

This district comprises an area of 4,738 square miles, of which area 451 square miles is water contained in Lakes Salisbury, Kioga and Mpologoma.

It is divided into the following five counties or Sazas :—

- (1) Kumi.
- (2) Bukedea.
- (3) Soroti.
- (4) Serere.
- (5) Usuku.

The boundaries are as follows :—

Commencing at the junction of the Kiboko River with Lake Gedge, the line proceeds in a north-easterly direction

to a point 2° N. latitude due south of the highest point on Kamalinga Mount. From thence it runs in a north-westerly direction to the western extremity of Lake Kirkpatrick, the shore of which it follows to the outlet of the Assua River, which it follows to $33^{\circ} 30'$ E. longitude. From thence it runs due south till it intersects the swamp east of Lake Kwanja ; thence through Omunyal Swamp to the north-eastern extremity of Lake Kioga, which it follows to the most easterly point of Namlimoka Island. It then follows the eastern arm of Lake Kioga to the junction of the Gogonia and Mpologoma Rivers. From thence it follows the boundary of the Bukedi District to its point of commencement west of Lake Gedge.

Topography.

Topographically the district is a succession of low ridges and swamps. The land slopes very slightly westwards in the direction of Lake Kioga, except in the north-west, where the streams flow north to the Assua. The prevailing wind is from the north-north-east.

The country is hotter than Buganda, and owing to its flatness, thunderstorms are rare. For the same reason there is much stagnant water and marsh, with the resultant swarms of mosquitoes. The rains are always extremely local, and for this reason it is the custom of natives to plant their crops here and there and not necessarily near to their own houses, in order that if one plot suffers from drought others may be more fortunate.

There is one small forest at Kagwara, but apart from this the country consists of thin bush, affording pasture for thousands of cattle. There are few large trees and no elephant grass. The district is very fertile, especially round Serere, where the black soil is very favourable for cotton growing.

The district is fortunate in having a lengthy coast line on Lake Kioga, stretching from Chulu to old Ngora Port. From this latter point a large swampy river—the Bisina—connects Lake Kioga with Lakes Salisbury and Gedge. Lake Salisbury is a long and narrow lake about 15 miles long by 3 miles broad. Lake Gedge is smaller and broader and is really a continuation of Lake Salisbury, though the passage is blocked by papyrus.

The only rivers are the Siroko on the south-east boundary, the Assua on the northern boundary, and the Bisina.

There is one mountain, Kamalinga, in the north-east of the district.

There are several granite hills, the largest being the Bugondo hills, the Ngora hills, and Kateta hill near Serere. The smaller ones are often bare rocks.



Photo by Perryman.

NATIVE VILLAGE, TESO DISTRICT.



Photo by Perryman.

CHIEFS WITH THEIR BICYCLES, TESO DISTRICT.

There are no Saza chiefs in the district. Until a few years ago the Bakedi chiefs had little or no idea of the duties of their position. The paramount chiefs had no authority over their sub-chiefs or people. This has now all been changed, thanks to the administrative measures and to the efforts of the Baganda agents under the supervision of the District Officers. A chief who, a few years ago, was a naked savage, is now seen wearing good clothes, and riding a bicycle, while teams of trained oxen plough his land. Native Government.

In each of the five counties there is the local Baraza held in the county centre once a week. This is regularly attended by the chiefs, and is presided over by one of them. This court decides cases sent up to it by the courts of the various chiefs in their own particular counties. Appeals from the findings of the County Baraza lie to the District Officers on tour. Such appeals are comparatively rare.

The Baganda Agents have now been withdrawn from all points except the county centres and certain outlying and more recently-administered parts of Soroti and Usuku counties. That these Agents have been of real help to the Government is seen in the working of those areas from which they have been withdrawn.

The future prosperity of the district is bound up in the cultivation of cotton, the soil, particularly around the shores of Lake Kioga, being especially suitable for the production. Crops and Food Supplies.

The natives have taken to this crop in a wonderful way. They are a tribe of agriculturists and the land is tilled by the men. Practically every native cultivates his quarter-acre plot of cotton, while in Kumi and Bukedea counties most men cultivate half an acre, and the chiefs throughout a considerably larger area.

The native, as a born agriculturist, has readily grasped the method of planting cotton, and can perform this work unaided. In the matter of care of the growing crop and the mode of picking it when ripe he is helped by the staff of Baganda instructors employed by the Agricultural Department.

At Kadunguru, in Serere county, is situated the Government farm under the supervision of an Officer of the Agricultural Department. Here selection work is being undertaken on a large scale, and cotton plant breeding, the end in view being the production of the longest stapled and best yielding plant for the Protectorate.

Ginneries have been erected at Ngora, Bugondo, and Soroti. With regard to food supplies the chief exportable product is ground nuts in which there is a considerable

trade. The price is usually about 30 lbs. of shelled nuts for a rupee. Sim-sim is exported in small quantities but is grown chiefly for the natives' own consumption. Large amounts of sweet potatoes, tall millet (matama), wimbi and chiroko are grown by the natives as food.

Roads.

The district is covered by a network of roads which have acquired a considerable reputation throughout the country, and are the subject of favourable comment on the part of all travellers through the district.

These roads have all been built by the local natives, and though not metalled they provide a perfect surface for cycling at all seasons of the year.

Certain of these earth roads have been metalled by the Public Works Department. Metalled roads, completed or in course of construction, include the following:—

Kumi-Ngora-Agu	..	17 miles.
Soroti-Lale	.. ..	11 „
Kumi-Lake Salisbury	8	„
Serere-Bugondo	..	14 „

In addition to the above roads the culverts on certain of the more important earth roads are being improved to enable them to take the weight of carts.

When culverts have been built and metalling over swamp-banks completed, these roads will be able to assist in the transport of cotton. Bullock transport has been employed between Mbale and Kumi by Messrs. Allidina Visram for some years.

All the older roads have been lined by the local natives with Nsambya trees. In addition to affording shade and decoration to the road-way these trees are proving of great use for building purposes as local timber of any value is otherwise unobtainable.

Waterways.

The district is fortunate in its waterways, though many of these still remain to be opened up.

An arm of Lake Kioga, called Nyogua or Naguyu, extends along the southern boundary ending in the large Lwere Swamp, which lies between Teso and Bukedi districts. Old Ngora Port was on this lake.

Ngora Port has now been moved to Agu, a point on the Bisina River at the head of the Sambwe-Agu canal. The opening up of Agu as a port for steamers is anticipated in the near future. If the canal were to be continued to Lakes Salisbury and Gedge by clearing away the sudd and papyrus, there would exist a fine waterway through the heart of the district opening up the fertile country round Lake Salisbury.

Lake Kioga extends along the whole west and south-western sides of the district and is furnished with numerous

natural or potential ports. The chief existing ports are Lale, Bugondo and Sambwe.

Owing to the density of the population there is very little game in the district.

There are unpopulated areas in the Siroko Valley and in the north-west where some game may be found.

During the rains elephants periodically come down from Karamojo and do considerable damage to the cotton and other young crops.

Hippo abound in Lake Gedge, and various kinds of antelope are occasionally seen in the northern part of the district when the grass has been burnt. There are many leopards and hyænas.

Teso district was originally administered from Mbale, an Officer making periodical tours at long intervals when time was available. In 1909 a station was opened at Kumi, 35 miles from Mbale. It was subsequently decided to remove the station to Soroti and permanent buildings were commenced there during 1913. The administration was transferred to Soroti in 1914. Government Station.

Previous to the arrival of the Muganda, Kakunguru, the whole of the district was in a state of chaos. Kakunguru, who was placed in charge of the whole country by Sir Harry Johnston in 1900, thoroughly subjugated the people. He built bomas, or small strongholds, all over the country, and placed Baganda headmen in charge of every district. When the Government assumed the active administration of the country in 1905, it was already in a fairly settled condition, and punitive measures against any of the tribes in Teso have never been necessary. Local History.

(4) LANGO DISTRICT.

This district comprises an area of 5,099 square miles, of which 655 is water, contained in Lakes Kioga, Kwania and the Nile.

It is divided into the following eight counties :—

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| (1) Kioga. | (5) Atura. |
| (2) Dokolo. | (6) Koli. |
| (3) Maruzi. | (7) Erute. |
| (4) Kwania. | (8) Moroto. |

The boundaries are as follows :—

Commencing at the intersection of the Assua River with 33° 30' E. longitude, the boundary follows the boundary of the Teso district to the most easterly point of Namlimoka Island. It then follows Lake Kioga and the Victoria Nile to the mouth of the Tochi River. It then follows the Tochi River to its junction with the Karaba River ; thence

it follows a line drawn in a north-easterly direction, touching the southern slopes of Mount Amoru to the Assua River, which river it follows to $33^{\circ} 30'$ E. longitude.

Topography.

The Lango district may be called flat. There are a number of outcrops of gneiss rocks, but only the following attain sufficient size to be called hills :—Dokolo, Kagaa, Nyara, Ngoratok, Ngetta, Alito and Adwong on the eastern side ; Okit, Chiawante and Kibuzi on the western side ; while the only groups of hills are Maruzi, at the junction of Lake Kwanja and the Nile, and Erute about fifteen miles south of the Assua or Moroto River.

The watershed stretching from Abako, through Aloj, Apala, Ogur and Alito, divides the lakes and the Moroto systems, and, topographically, the northern area is the antithesis of the rest of Lango. In place of flat savannah country, freely intersected by foetid marshes, we find deep gullies, which are nearly dry except during the rains, when they become swift and almost impassable torrents, gullies overhung with tropical forest in inviting contrast to the parched wastes of grass. The Moroto itself, a mere stream knee-deep in the dry season and only some sixty feet wide, swells in one night of rain to an impetuous flood of some two hundred feet.

With the exception of the Tochi, on the north-western boundary, and the Nget, which feeds the Aminkwaich between Dokolo and Batta, there are no running rivers on the southern side of the watershed. There are, however, a large number of swampy rivers, the most important of which are the Koli and Karoicha, respectively, entering the Nile about 25 and 35 miles north of Masindi Port ; the Omunyal, entering the east end of Lake Kioga ; the Kolwen, entering the north-east end of Lake Kwanja. There are few papyrus swamps south of the Koli.

The country is covered with spear grass averaging six feet high in the wet season. All this is burnt during the dry season, which lasts from December to March.

There are two lakes : Lake Kwanja, with an area of about 150 square miles, which is wholly within the district, and Lake Kioga, which washes the southern coast for 60 miles. The Nile flows for 70 miles along the western boundary.

Native Government.

As there was no organised system of native government among the Lango before the introduction of regular administration, one had to be constituted. While the head of each village is recognised as a responsible headman, these have been grouped under a sub-chief, and the sub-chiefs are under the control of the Rwtot or County Chief in whose county they are situated.

To assist in the instruction of these men, agents, who are men of a more advanced tribe, *i.e.*, Baganda or Banyoro, have been temporarily appointed to reside at posts throughout the district. These also assist in maintaining order, and, owing to their work, the headmen and chiefs have made very considerable progress, with the result that it has been found possible to withdraw a large number of the agents in areas which show a sufficient development to stand unassisted.

There is a network of cleared tracks throughout the district. These connect up all the more important native settlements, which are usually about 10 miles apart. Nearly all these tracks are suitable for occasional journeys for light motors and carts, and are all suitable for bicycles. The gradients are good. The total length is about 887 miles. Roads.

Metalled roads to carry heavy traffic are under construction as follows :—

Sangai to Pilitok, 15 miles.

Kelle to Kabiramaido, 8½ miles.

Kachung to Lira, 26 miles.

There are three main waterways, which are all connected :— Waterways.

Lake Kioga, which forms the southern boundary of the district for 60 miles, and is navigable for shallow draught steamers.

Lake Kwanja, which lies in the southern central part of the district, is navigable for shallow draft steamers for 40 miles, but navigation is more difficult owing to the average depth being less than that of Lake Kioga and to the existence of weeds throughout. Lying as it does near the centre of the district it is capable of affording an outlet for the produce of a very large area.

The Nile, which forms the western boundary of the district for 70 miles. For the whole of this distance it is navigable for shallow draft steamers.

Game is found in considerable quantities throughout the district. It consists chiefly of the following :— Game.

(a) Elephants, of which there are about six large herds.

(b) Giraffe, which exist in considerable numbers on Namasale Peninsula, inland along the north shore of Lake Kwanja, in the uninhabited country east of Ngai, and north-east of Batta.

(c) Rhinoceros, which inhabit the Namasale Peninsula in Kioga County, and the shores of Lake Kwanja and the Nile, but not more than 10 miles inland, and in the region of Sangai and

Bululu. Occasionally they are known to move as far north from the lake as Chegere, but it is unusual to find them there.

- (d) Buffalo, of which there are large herds near Chiawanti and Kibuzi, and a small herd near Kinomo. The cattle plague of 1883 carried off most of the buffalo in the district.
- (e) Lion, leopard, waterbuck, hartebeest, Uganda cob, bushbuck, reedbuck, situtunga, oribi and warthog are found almost everywhere, and roan, which is found near Abako, along the Moroto and on the upper waters of the Tochi.

Local Products.

Semsem and a certain amount of cotton from the Lango, and cotton and millet from the Kuman, are the chief economic crops. As a result of the development of the local cotton industry since 1912, a ginnery has been erected at Kalaki and another is in course of construction at Kabiramaido.

Government Station.

Lira, situated at the source of the Koli near Ngetta Hill, has been the Government Station since August, 1914. Previously to this, the headquarters of the district were at Nabieso, which lies on the northern shore of Lake Kwanja, and was established in July, 1911, on the amalgamation of the Bululu and Palango sub-divisions into the Lango District.

Local History.

The Lango and Kumam have come from beyond the Moroto River, moving in periodical waves, the last of which appears to have taken place about thirty years ago. Their movements were unrelated, except in so far as it was probably the same pressure of circumstances which impelled them southwards and westwards, and till they reached their present homes their relations were of the friendliest, due perhaps to the fact that though they were neighbours there was a large area of uninhabited country dividing the tribes. The conflict only arose when they both coveted the same land.

After crossing the Moroto two main routes seem to have been followed, one moving by Alito westward, and populating the areas now known as Kichema, Ngai, Kanyek and Kachaba. The southern and more popular route was by Erute Hill, from which point one line of march was by Lira westwards through Nabieso, while the other turned southwards and occupied the country as far as Kagaa. This column reached as far as Namasale, killing and driving before them the Kuman inhabitants, some of whom even crossed the Nile into Buruli. In successive waves the Lira section reached Jaber and Kibuzi, where they found

a few fragments of the Jolpaluo (Chopi) tribe, most of whom joined their friends across the Nile.

The history of the Lango before they crossed the Moroto is much shrouded in the mists of very hazy recollections and legends. That they from their very earliest times were in contact with the Acholi is undoubted; and their movements must be correlated with those of the other branches of the Nilotic family since the disruption of the originally united people. The evidence of place names is of assistance, but must be accepted with reservations. Of more value are the corroborating and independent legends of the Acholi, Joluo (Kavirondo), Jolpaluo (Chopi), Alur, Dinka, and Shilluk, and these, taken in conjunction with Hamitic traditions and migrations, result in the following fragmentary history, which is admittedly largely conjectural.

The disruption of the Nilotic group, who lived on the northern boundary of the present Latuka country, and were a large tribe probably dominated by the Shilluk section, with whom the ancient monarchy still remains, may be directly attributed to the Hamitic invasion of the early sixteenth century. The subsequent history of the northern sections of the group do not concern our tribe, but of the southern branches it would appear that the Acholi, Alira, Alur, Jolpaluo and Joluo were the first to break away shortly after the arrival of the invaders, and migrated as one tribe to the well-watered regions a little south of Nimule, leaving behind the Lango, who were for the most part on good terms with some of the Hamitic tribes, a fact which has led to considerable modifications in the language as spoken to-day. The Alur and Jolpaluo apparently pushed on ahead to approximately their present homes without delay.

Towards the latter half of the seventeenth century the Lango were driven south by increasing immigrants of the Hamitic type on the one hand, and by a great famine on the other, and it is probably this famine (noted in the legends of all these tribes) which induced the Joluo to break away from the Acholi and to move in a south-easterly direction, following the Assua and striking across by Masaba to their present home. As has been said, it was a slow migration of periodic waves, and the advanced guard got into touch with the Jolpaluo on the banks of the Nile west of the Tochi about 150 to 200 years ago, as is evidenced by the Lukedi legend and the Lango raids into Bunyoro during Ndaula's reign. But by this time something had caused the rest of the Lango tribe to swing in a more south-easterly direction, and tradition all points to

the eastward expansion of the Madi as being the cause. At first the Acholi and the Alira joined arms with the Lango against the Madi, but finding the alliance inadequate changed sides and pushed the Lango still further south-east being themselves impelled in a southerly direction by the advance of the Madi. In this way the main body of the Lango reached a spot about three days north of the Moroto and about $33^{\circ} 20'$ east latitude, and from that time they lived on terms of enmity with the Acholi.

Then followed a period of rest, while the Lango extended their relations with other tribes. By the mediation of Jopaluo hawkers they became familiar with the hoes of Bunyoro (which replaced their old wooden digging sticks) and they in their turn conveyed these hoes to the Kuman, who were then living about eighty to one hundred miles to the east-south-east, retailing three hoes for one heifer, such was their scarcity. It may then be remarked that the Kuman probably formed part of the invading Hamitic hordes, and that the wealth of the Lango is largely based on cattle obtained from the Kuman by barter or war. During this period also began Lango visits to Bunyoro of parties of warriors who lent their services to conflicting Banyoro factions.

This brings us to a period about 120 years ago, when the next southward move of the Lango began, urged as they were by two causes—constant feuds and their desire for big game—of which they had discovered in visits during successive dry seasons that there was an apparently inexhaustible supply.

At a slightly earlier period the Kuman, and their kinsmen the Teso, had started expanding south and west on parallel lines, with a two-fold result on the Lango. In the first place, this advance being somewhat earlier than the Lango advance, the eastward wing of the Lango found that a forward move on their part was blocked by the Kuman, and consequently we now find a body of Lango stretching beyond the Moroto to the north-west of the Teso. In the second place, the Kuman, who had occupied the western banks of the Munyal and the northern shore of Lake Kioga, and were spreading towards the Kabalanga, came into contact with the Lango column which had reached Kagaa. This check to their advance—for previously they had encountered no inhabitants—caused a rupture of the friendly relations which had previously existed between the Lango and the Kuman, and the latter, outnumbered and opposed by a foe whose life was dedicated to war, were routed and driven back over the Munyal, while the Lango pressing westward chased the remnants of

the Kuman along the Namasale Peninsula. It was only under the protection of Kakunguru and Kazana that large numbers of Kuman have since returned and populated the entire Kioga County, a not inconsiderable portion being left over in Teso District and comprising the people living as far east as Soroti.

The Lango inhabiting the western part of the district were on friendly terms with Kamrasi and Kabarega, the Bakama of Bunyoro, who used to provide them with hoes and other articles of native manufacture, in return for which they assisted them in the Banyoro raids on the Baganda. These produced many women and slaves to the Lango.

Kabarega, Mukama of Bunyoro, fled to Lango, accompanied by the Kabaka, Mwanga of Buganda, about 1897, and the two potentates were captured by the expedition of 1899 at Kanga in Lango.

Immediately after the above event Semei Kakunguru endeavoured to set up a native administration of his own at Bululu and on the south-east end of Lake Kwanja. After a year or so he was ordered by the Government to withdraw his men. He, however, left behind him at Bululu a Munyoro of Bugerere County, by name Musabira, who, with his people armed with a number of guns, maintained a hold on the Kuman round Bululu. When Musabira was killed by the Lango about 1903 he was succeeded by his relation Kazana, who extended his influence unassisted by Government over the whole of the Kuman section. This very considerable influence he placed unreservedly at the disposal of the Government when, in 1907, administration was commenced.

Until the year 1907 no attempt had ever been made by the Government to administer any part of the Lango District. In that year administration was commenced among the Lango on the eastern side, *i.e.*, round Dokolo and Bululu. In 1909 administration was commenced among the Lango on the western side, *i.e.*, along the Nile from Lukungu to Jaber (opposite Foweira). Administrative posts were gradually pushed forward from both sides, and the district is now fully administered.

(5) LOBOR DISTRICT.

This district comprises an area of 5,810 square miles, of which area 22 square miles is water contained in Lake Kirkpatrick.

The boundaries are as follows :—

Commencing at the point of egress of the River Assua from Lake Kirkpatrick, the boundary follows the River

Assua to its confluence with the River Udek ; thence in an easterly direction to the southern foothills of Mount Naponi ; thence along the boundary of the Northern Province until it meets the Rudolf Province ; thence in an easterly direction along the southern boundary of the Rudolf Province until it meets the boundary of the Karamoja District ; thence in a south-westerly direction to a point on 2° N. latitude due south of the highest point on Kamalinga mountain ; thence in a south-westerly direction to the junction of the Kiboko River with Lake Gedge ; thence in a north-westerly direction to the western extremity of Lake Kirkpatrick, the shore of which it follows to the point of cgress of the River Assua, the point of commencement.

It is at present unadministered.

(b) KARAMOJA DISTRICT.

This district comprises an area of 7,112 square miles.

The boundaries are as follows :—

Commencing at a point on the boundary between the Uganda and East Africa Protectorates, being the centre of the crater of Mount Elgon, the boundary runs in a straight line to the source of the River Kisimchanga (also known as the Kilim or Greek River), which river it follows to its junction with the Kiboko River, which river it follows to its junction with Lake Gedge ; thence in a north-easterly direction to a point on 2° N. latitude due south of the highest point on Kamalinga mountain. From this point it follows the eastern boundary of Lopor District until it meets the southern boundary of Rudolf Province ; thence along the southern boundary until it meets the Turkwel District boundary of Rudolf Province ; thence in a southerly direction along the Turkwel District boundary until it meets the River Turkwel or Suam ; thence along the Turkwel or Suam to the source of the Suam in Mount Elgon ; thence a straight line to the point of commencement.

It is at present unadministered.



Photo by Lobo, Entebbe.

THE RIPON FALLS.

CHAPTER V.

THE WESTERN PROVINCE.

This Province, being the south-western portion of the Protectorate, comprises an area of 13,766 square miles, of which area 455 square miles is water, and has a higher altitude generally than the rest of the Protectorate, the average height being 5,000 feet above M.S.L. Included in this district is the Ruwenzori Range, which attains a height of 16,794 feet, the highest point being Margharita Peak. The south-western boundary crosses the Mfumbiro Range from Mount Sabinio to Muhavura, the heights of which are respectively 11,960 feet and 13,547 feet. While Ruwenzori is covered with perpetual snow, Mfumbiro, which is only about 120 miles distant, is an active volcano in frequent eruption.

For administrative purposes this Province is divided into the following districts, viz. :—(1) Toro, (2) Ankole, and (3) Kigezi.

The boundaries are as follows :—

Commencing from the mouth of the River Muzizi in Lake Albert, the boundary follows the western boundary of Buganda to 1° S. The boundary then follows the Anglo-German boundary between Uganda and German East Africa along 1° S. to the River Kagera ; thence along the Rivers Kagera, Kichwamba-Kakitumba and Chizinga, following the latter to its source ; thence by a series of lines marked by boundary pillars to the summit of Mount Sabinio in the Mfumbiro Range.

From this point the boundary follows the Anglo-Belgian-Congo boundary to Lake Edward, marked by boundary pillars to the River Muniaga ; thence the thalwegs of the Rivers Muniaga and Ishasha to Lake Edward ; thence across Lake Edward to the mouth of the River Lubilia-Chako, following the thalweg of this river to its source ; thence a straight line to the highest point of the Ruwenzori Range (Margharita Peak) ; thence a straight line to the source of the River Lamia ; thence the thalweg of this river to its confluence with the River Semliki ; thence the thalweg of the River Semliki to its mouth in Lake Albert ; the boundary then follows the shore of Lake Albert to the River Muzizi, the point of commencement.

(1) TORO DISTRICT.

This district comprises an area of 5,579 square miles, of which area 233 square miles is water, contained in Lakes Edward, Albert and George.

It is divided into the following 10 counties or Sazas :—

	Title of Chief.
(1) Mwengi	Pokino.
(2) Kitagwenda	Katambala.
(3) Kitagweta	Kitunzi.
(4) Kyaka	Ruhekura.
(5) Nyakabimba	Mugema.
(6) Burahya	Kaima.
(7) Bunyangabo	Mukwenda.
(8) Busongora	Kimbugwe.
(9) Kibale	Sekibobo.
(10) Bwamba	Kasuju.

The boundaries are as follows :—

Commencing from the highest summit of the Ruwenzori Range (Margharita Peak), the boundary follows the Anglo-Congolese boundary line to the point in Lake Albert where it intersects the meridian at the mouth of the River Muzizi.

From this point the boundary follows a straight line to a point at the entrance of the Gulf between Ntoroko and Bulinda, midway between the shores ; thence a straight line to the mouth of the River Muzizi.

From this point the boundary follows the western boundary of Buganda to the confluence of the Rivers Katonga and Kakoko.

From this point the boundary follows the thalweg of the River Katonga to its source ; thence a straight line across the watershed to the source of the River Dusangwe ; thence along the thalweg of the River Dusangwe to its confluence with the River Mpanga ; thence along the thalweg of the River Mpanga to its confluence with the River Bigera ; thence along the thalweg of the River Bigera to its confluence with the River Charutanga (Dwamkigi) ; thence along the River Charutanga (Dwamkigi) to its source.

From this point the boundary follows a straight line marked by five cairns to the source of the River Katche ; thence along the thalweg of the River Katche to its confluence with the River Karombi ; thence along the thalweg of the River Karombi to its source.

From this point the boundary follows a straight line marked by three cairns to the source of a small tributary rising in the hill Lusebeya ; thence along the thalweg of this tributary to its confluence with the River Kitomia ; thence

along the thalweg of the River Kitomia to its mouth in Lake George.

From this point the boundary follows the southern shore of Lake George to the point of egress of the Kazinga Channel from Lake George ; thence along the centre of the Kazinga Channel to its mouth in Lake Edward.

From this point the boundary follows the parallel of the mouth of the Kazinga Channel due west until it meets the Anglo-Congolese boundary line across Lake Edward ; thence along the said boundary line to the point of commencement.

Toro is a land of clear rushing streams, a rolling upland Topography. plateau, studded with crater cones and cups, wide tracts of elephant grass intersected here and there by relic belts of once extensive forest. Such is its main characteristic where it skirts the north-eastern flanks of Ruwenzori, but nowhere in the Protectorate is such varied range of climate and scenery to be met with in so small a compass.

Starting from the southern shores of Lake Albert, whose clear, deep water at a level of 2,028 feet is set in sandy beaches, a steep abrupt escarpment leads from hot reed grass plains and wooded ravines on to the upland level of chill night mists and cool bracing days where Fort Portal stands at 5,200 feet, and whence westward, nine miles away, the northern ridges rise to 5,000 more in successive stages of short down grass, forest and bamboo woodland, the latter resembling pine forests, until these give place to bare, open caps of mossy heath. High up to the south is piled the mass of snow fields and glaciers (computed at an area of 30 square miles) and the twin peaks of Margarita-Alexandra which rise to 16,794 feet. Beyond the central crest of Ruwenzori and at some 3,500 far down at its western base the deep forests of Bwamba, clothing sharp-cleft ridges, descend to the wide, muddy current of Semliki ; whence, gently rising again and in countless succession of swell and fall, a sea of tree tops stretches on towards the distant Congo. North-west again, by way of Mboga and sandstone canyons of Ngiti, the lawn and peak of Bulegga rising sheer above Lake Albert catch dawn and sunset on their clean cut facets. From Fort Portal the southward road leads to where by the grassy downs of Butanuka—an off-set from Ruwenzori—elephant grass abruptly ceases, and, in expansive terraces of parkland studded by cedar-like acacia, the plateau of Toro drops down to steamy marshes and the gleaming sheet of Dweru (Lake George), into which the many snow-fed rivers discharge and whence the winding Kazinga Channel leads south and westward into Edward.

Most interesting among the features here are the Katwe, Kasenyi, Kikorongo and other crater lakelets of brackish saline water, the latter a sanctuary for hippopotamus, duck, Egyptian geese, and flamingo, and also contain a small perch-like species of fish.

In Katwe and Kasenyi the water is so impregnated with saline matter that on evaporation a salt valued at about Rs. 2 per 60 lbs. is obtained, in which a very considerable trade is done with natives from the Congo, German East Africa, Buganda and Ankole. It is highly valued by the cattle-owning natives, who come long distances to obtain it. Owing to the spread of sleeping sickness and many deaths from this disease amongst the salt workers and traders the salt traffic is gradually diminishing.

The wide, open plains of this Lake George and Lake Edward region, varied with acacia woodland and the thick reed groves of choked and flooded river courses, harbour large herds of game of many kinds, including elephant, buffalo, waterbuck, reedbuck, Thomas' cob, bushbuck and dik-dik, together with lion, hyæna and leopard. Unfortunately they harbour also the tsetse fly of sleeping sickness and most of the area is declared infected. The waterbuck here carry larger heads than elsewhere in all Africa.

Another special feature, at once of interest and decided inconvenience to the traveller, are the rivers Mubuku and Nyamgasani whose ice-cold rushing waters, passable with difficulty at ordinary times, are liable with sudden caprice to swell into raging impassable torrents. The former, too, has a capricious method of selecting and discarding the various channels of its delta across the plains. The main rivers of Toro are :—Discharging northward into Albert : firstly, the Muzizi, which drains the northern halves of Mwenge and Kitagweta, besides Northern Kyaka and Nyakabimba, with the Aswa, Kahombo and Kaija its chief affluents ; the Wasa flowing from near the source of the Mpanga and steeply down into the Semliki plains ; the Semliki with its main tributary Lami flowing through Bwamba. Discharging southward into Lake George is first of all the Mpanga, which, rising by Karangora peak in the northern spurs of Ruwenzori, fetches a wide loop behind Kabuga, receiving from north-east the Munobwa and south-east the Rusangwe and Kyarutanga, whilst the drainage of Southern Mwenge and Kitagweta flows this way. From north-east of Durama and Isunga flows the forest stream of Ru'ro and through the wilderness of Karamuli by Kybandara ; and from Ruwenzori again the Dunga, Mahoma, Igasa, Nsonge, Yeria, Ruimi, Hima, Sebwe, Nyamwamba and Muhokya. Into Edward beyond Katwe

flow the Nyamgasani and Rubiraha. In the extreme south-eastern corner by Lakes Kaiso and Kiburara rises the Katonga. Between about $30^{\circ} 15'$ and $30^{\circ} 25'$ east meridians and $0^{\circ} 25'$ to $0^{\circ} 45'$ north latitude lies an area honeycombed with crater cavities, many of them of considerable extent and filled with deep fish-tenanted water.

Eastward, some dozen miles from Fort Portal, wide, rolling plains of open pasturage emerge from the Mpanga forest belts, and the bare short grass hills in this region have a character which has been likened to that of the Scottish Cheviots. Here is good grazing ground for cattle and the clear air is dry and bracing. On again, to east and south, downs and plains merge into scrub and woodland whilst the streams lose their clear, swift course and approximate more and more to the papyrus-choked swamps of Buganda. In the far north-east throughout Nyakabimba and eastern Chaka the bold granite outcrops and bare bleached boulders of the Mubendi region commence.

The soil in Toro is very productive and capable of yielding heavy crops of banana, millet, beans, sweet potatoes, etc., which are the staple native diet. In the south and south-east, however, periods of drought are practically perennial and followed by quasi-famine conditions amongst the scattered and improvident population.

Wheat-growing, for which Toro is well situated, has begun to promise remunerative harvests and already all local demand for flour is more than supplied.

Some 12,842 acres have already been taken up by European settlers for coffee planting and various of the chiefs have small plantations. Cotton can only be grown with profit in Eastern Toro. Under present conditions, and until the native treaty areas have been definitely assigned and demarcated, land for European occupation is difficult to locate.

The average rainfall at Fort Portal for the last five years is 53.89 inches and the mean maximum and minimum temperatures respectively 79.3 and 57.5 degrees Fahrenheit. There are two distinctly marked dry and wet seasons, though the rains are often none the less disappointingly irregular. The principal wet season is from the end of August to the middle of December, and the lesser from middle March to middle June. October is the wettest month, January and July being the driest. The dry seasons throughout are remarkable for the heat haze (Lutoro, "Runombe") which in a fog-like fall of dust and smoke settles down over the landscape blotting out all distant features. Earth tremors are not of infrequent occurrence, whilst the wet seasons bring their share of hail and

thunderstorms. Hot springs (at Buranga and Dwagimba) are found on the foot hills of Ruwenzori. The water from these is said by the natives to be a specific for rheumatism and skin diseases.

Ruwenzori. The Ruwenzori Range extends from the north of Lake Edward to the south of Lake Albert. It, as already stated, attains an altitude of 16,794 feet, and in the higher region is clothed with forests of bamboo and other timber trees. Varieties of flowers and tree ferns are found up to about 7,000 feet. From 7,000 to 10,000 feet the Podocarpus tree is conspicuous. The permanent snow line is found to be at about 13,000 feet. Native huts are found up to about 7,000 feet, inhabited by a mountain tribe, the Bakonjo, who cultivate the slopes at incredibly steep gradients and who hunt the Hyrax for its meat and fur.

Semliki River. Lakes Albert and Edward are connected by the River Semliki, which flows in a north-easterly direction through dense forest to the west of the Ruwenzori Range. This river is said to be navigable for canoes for practically the whole of the way between these lakes. For part of its course it forms the boundary between the Uganda Protectorate and the Congo Free State, for the remaining part it passes through Belgian territory only.

Native Government. The Mukama (king) with the Lukiko or native council, consisting of the Saza chiefs and recognised sub-chiefs, constitute the native government. They assemble daily in the Mukama's court-house or Baraza to discuss matters pertaining to the country and to announce to the representatives from the various sub-districts alterations in laws or regulations and any instructions they may receive from Administrative Officers. They also hear and try cases and appeals from the courts of the county and sub-chiefs.

Crops and Food Supplies. The importance of different crops varies in different parts of the district, but the four staple crops for food supply are :—

- (1) Small millet. (Eleusine).
- (2) Beans.
- (3) Sweet potatoes.
- (4) Bananas.

Other crops cultivated are :—

- (5) Indian corn. (Sorghum).
- (6) Large millet (chiefly used for beer).
- (7) Peas.
- (8) Manioc. (Muhogo).
- (9) Sim-sim.
- (10) Ground nuts.

Fish abound in the rivers and lakes, but owing to the destruction of canoes on Lakes Edward and George fishing



Photo by Miss Chevallier.

MARGHARITA AND ALEXANDRA PEAKS, RUWENZORI

has been stopped, and is forbidden in these waters owing to sleeping sickness. Fish are also found in several of the crater lakes.

	Roads	Distances.	Roads.
FORT PORTAL to			
Kampala		202.33 miles	
Hoima		90*	"
Mbarara via Ibanda		105	"
Mbarara via Katunguru		131	"
Semliki River		30*	"

FORT PORTAL-KAMPALA ROAD.

Fort Portal to—		
Muhumbu to		6.6 miles.
Kahangi to		6 "
Kagorugoru to		6 "
Butiti to		7 "
Kyenjojo to		9.8 "
Matiri to		14.4 "
Ruibale to		7 "
Kakabala to		9.6 "
Kyegegwa to		10.1 "
Kibale		8.4 "

FORT PORTAL-HOIMA ROAD.

Fort Portal to—		
Muhumbu to		6.40 miles
Kyabalanga to		3 hours
Butara to		3 "
Kagoro to		2½ "
Muzizi		2 "

FORT PORTAL-MBARARA via IBANDA.

Fort Portal to—		
Isunga to		13 miles.
Kibale to		10 "
Murukunyu to		10 "
Mpanga River Camp to		12 "
Kanyambarara to		12 "
Kyaratanga		7 "

FORT PORTAL-MBARARA and KASINDE via KATUNGURU.

Fort Portal to—		
Rubona to		12 miles
Kigarama to		12 "
Hima River to		9 "
Kasese to		8 "
Muhokya to		9.5 "
Kikorongo to		6.5 "
Katunguru Ferry to		12 "
Kagando to		8 "
Bukangara to		11 "
Kasinde		12 "

FORT PORTAL-SEMLIKI RIVER ROAD.

Fort Portal to—		
Busaiga to		2 hours
Wasa to		1½ "
Itoja to		3 "
Semliki		3 "

*Approximate.

Waterways.

The only navigable waterways are the Lakes Albert, Edward and George, the Kasinga Channel and the Semliki River.

Lakes Edward and George and the Kasinga Channel are now closed to canoe traffic owing to sleeping sickness, as also the Semliki River except at the ferry on the Fort Portal-Mboga road. On the Semliki there are many native canoes, but they are used almost entirely for ferry purposes.

Lake Albert is traversed by marine steamers, but the proposed port of call for the Toro district at Tonia has not yet been utilised.

Game.

Elephant and buffalo are numerous throughout the district, the former with the exception of Nyakabimba and north-eastern Kyaka. In the more populous and high-lying parts of Western Toro, lion, leopard, bushbuck, duiker, bush-pig, giant hog (Nsenge), hyæna and jackal are widely prevalent.

Bush-pig are a great scourge to the agriculturist throughout all the district and in a lesser degree bush buck and duiker, and in parts waterbuck do considerable damage to crops. In the plains of Semliki (Lake Albert) and in George-Edward basin waterbuck, Thomas' cob and reed-buck are numerous, and in the latter region near Muhokya, dik-dik. Waterbuck are also found as far east as Kabuga Hill and Isunga and as far north as Bubona. In eastern Toro leopard and occasional lion, hyæna, jackal, bushbuck, duiker, warthog and bush-pig are present ; and in southern Kyaka and southern Kitagweta and as far as the left bank of Mpanga topi and zebra. Jackson's hartebeest and warthog are to be met with in the south-east corner of Lake Albert, and eland around the flanks of Kabuga Hill. Situtunga are found in all large papyrus swamps, and the forests abound in Colobus and other monkeys. The dwarf Congo buffalo has been reported in the Bwamba country. Lake George and the Semliki River literally teem with hippopotami, and they are also found in the smaller lakes. Crocodile are not found above the Semliki rapids near Beni and hence are found neither in Lake George nor Lake Edward nor their affluent rivers.

The Toro waterbuck are noted for their large horns. The elephants carry good ivory, but in the northern part of the district the tusks are not usually above 50 lbs. in weight. On the higher slopes of Ruwenzori leopards and conies (hyrax) are found.

Township.

The only township in the Toro district is Fort Portal, which is an area comprised within a circle having a radius of two miles, with the District Commissioner's office as centre.

Fort Portal is an important Mission Station for both Protestants and Catholics. The Church Missionary Society have a large and well-equipped hospital.

The Mukama and all the more important chiefs have residences at Fort Portal, and there is a considerable native population.

There is a small Asiatic Bazaar.

The earlier history of Toro down to the installation of the present Mukama, Kasagama, by Lugard, is dealt with in Chapter I. District History.

When Lugard returned to Buganda he left de Winton in charge with instructions to tour the country with Kasagama and enquire into and redress the grievances of the people. The Soudanese were supposed to uphold the authority of Kasagama, but, owing to lack of sufficient European officers to control them, and their inherent principles, their misdeeds in Toro are said to have been on a par with those of Kabarega and his warriors. This, however, is possibly not quite correct. A good deal of looting took place which, to some extent, was due to the difficulties experienced by them in obtaining food.

Owing to rumours of a Mohammedan rising, de Winton proceeded to Kinyamozi, Mwenge, near the Buganda boundary, where he took ill and died. About this time Kabarega made several attempts to invade Toro, and eventually succeeded in driving Kasagama and the Batoro on to the Ruwenzori range of hills, where they remained until about the time of Major Owen's arrival in Toro. Owen arranged that Kasagama should pay a yearly tax of 40 frasilas of ivory, and that he should prohibit the slave trade and importation of gunpowder.

He then returned to Uganda, and Mr. J. P. Wilson subsequently arrived to take charge. In July, 1895, he was succeeded by Captain Ashburnham, between whom and Kasagama relations became very strained, resulting on one occasion in Kasagama's arrest, and eventually in his proceeding to headquarters to lay his case before the Commissioner. In 1896 the ivory tax was reduced from 40 frasilas to 8 frasilas, and an arrangement was come to with regard to the Katwe salt deposits. Up to about 1899 occasional border raids were made by the Banyoro and Baganda in Toro, but since that date raiding on the old extensive scale ceased, and law and order were established. In June, 1900, an agreement was made between Sir Harry Johnston, the Special Commissioner on behalf of the Government, and the Mukama and chiefs of Toro, whereby the district of Toro was divided into administrative divisions, Kasagama recognised as paramount chief, and certain other

natives recognised as chiefs over the various administrative sub-divisions. The areas of land to be allotted to the natives and the Government were defined, and certain taxes were imposed. Courts of Justice were established and provision made for the remuneration of the Mukama and chiefs.

During the period from 1900 to the present day the natives, secure from their enemies under the protection of the Government, have settled down on the land to cultivate their foodstuffs, and, although they have not shown the same progressive results as some of the natives in other parts of the Protectorate, this is largely due to the position of the country, situated as it is at a great distance from the Lake ports with only very indifferent and expensive means of transport.

(2) ANKOLE DISTRICT.

The district comprises an area of 6,131 square miles, of which area 149 square miles is water contained in Lakes Edward and Kachira and the Kazinga Channel.

It is divided into the following 14 counties or Sazas :—

	Title of Chief.	
1. Mitoma	Sekibobo.	
2. Nyabushoshi	Katambala.	
3. Nshara	Kaima.	
4. Ishingiro	Mugema.	
5. Ruampara	Mukwenda.	
6. Buzimba	Kimbugwe.	
7. Ngalama	Kago.	
8. Shema	Kago.	
9. Kashari	Kago.	
10. Igara	Pokino.	
11. Buhwezu	Kangao.	
12. Bunyaraguru	Kitunzi.	
13. Bukanga	Kyambalango.	
14. Kazara	Kasuju.	

The boundaries are as follows :—

Commencing at the mouth of the Kazinga Channel in Lake Edward, the boundary follows the southern boundary of the Toro District to the confluence of the Rivers Kagaga and Katonga.

From this point the boundary follows the western boundary of Buganda till it meets the Anglo-German boundary line on the parallel 1° S. ; thence along the said boundary line to a point about three-and-a-half miles south-east of the highest point of Mount Buramma.

From this point the boundary follows a straight line to the highest point of Mount Buramma ; thence along the



Photo by Miss Chevallier.

MARKET AT FORT PORTAL.

crest of the Buramma and Lugonge Hills, and over the highest point of Mount Nirugongo to Lutobo ; thence in a north-easterly direction along the crest of the Rukiga Hills to the source of the River Nyaruambu, in the Rukiga Hills near Kyamutera Hill.

From this point the boundary follows the thalweg of the River Nyaruamba to its confluence with the River Kahenji ; thence along the thalweg of the River Kahenji to its confluence with the River Kanyarahinda ; thence along the thalweg of the River Kanyarahinda to a stone cairn at its source.

From this point the boundary follows a straight line from the said stone cairn, over the western neck of the Rusese Hill to the source of the River Nyamisi in the Rusese Hill ; thence along the thalweg of the River Nyamisi to its confluence with the River Butembi ; thence along the thalweg of the River Butembi to its confluence with the River Rusaiya ; thence along the thalweg of the River Rusaiya to the south-eastern corner of the Maramagambo Forest.

From this point the boundary follows the eastern edge of the Maramagambo Forest to a point on the north-eastern edge thereof, where the River Kaisi enters the said forest : thence along the thalweg of the River Kaisi to its mouth in Lake Edward.

From the mouth of the River Kaisi the boundary follows a straight line to the point of intersection of the parallel $0^{\circ} 20' S.$ with the Anglo-Congolese boundary line across Lake Edward ; thence along the said boundary line to the point where it intersects the parallel of the mouth of the Kazinga Channel in Lake Edward ; thence along this parallel to the point of commencement.

For the most part, and chiefly throughout the north-east and east, wide undulating plains of short-grass pasture land studded sparsely with low-growing acacia trees are mainly characteristic. Topography.

In this part the rainfall is small and there are practically no streams or swamps. In the south-east, south and south-west the plains rise up into steep grassy downs cleft here and there into deep valley troughs.

In the east the character of the country changes, and thick scrub (*acanthus*, etc.) and frequent papyrus-bordered streams are met with, whilst belts of forest occur and run down from the edge of the escarpment towards Lake Edward. Bunyaraguru and Buhwezu are high-set and mountainous. Elephant grass grows here, and these are the rainier districts.

South of the barrier of hills, which runs from Bukanga through Ngalama and Ruampara to Kazara, more or less along the line of the first parallel, wide open plains commence again. In the south-west they rise again into the high plateau of Rukiga.

The general level of Ankole is well over 4,000 feet, the hills rising in places to over 6,000 feet. A low-lying strip of plain some 12 to 15 miles broad intervenes between this and Lake Edward, which is only 3,000 feet above sea level.

Native Government.

The Mugabe (king) is assisted by a Lukiko composed of some 40 members. These are drawn proportionally from amongst the principal chiefs of each individual county by a process of nomination by the Saza chiefs of each and selection and ratification by the Mugabe, Katikiro and Saza chiefs, and subject to the approval of the Government.

The Katikiro is chief adviser to the Mugabe and is ex-officio Vice-President of the Lukiko. This latter body has the same functions, executive and legislative, as has the Lukiko of Buganda.

A quorum of seven members constitutes the supreme Native Court. Judicial functions are exercised by two lower grades of Court, *i.e.*, those of the Sazas (or chiefs of countries) and of the second class Gombolola chiefs (or chiefs of sub-divisions of countries). In either case they are assisted by a quorum of lesser chiefs.

The Saza chiefs, and in lesser degree under them the Gombolola chiefs, are responsible for the collection of taxes, the administration of justice between natives, and the maintenance of good order as well as the general scheme of development initiated by the Government.

Crops and Food Supplies.

It is probable that not more than some 100,000 acres are in continuous cultivation. The importance of various crops varies in different parts of the district, but the following list is the general order of precedence:—

1. Bulu (small millet).
2. Beans.
3. Large millet.
4. Potatoes.
5. Peas.
6. Plantains and bananas (grown chiefly for beer).
7. Ground nuts.
8. Mpindamiti (a species of pea).
9. Indian corn.
10. Sim-sim.
11. Nkuku (a species of bean).

Large tracts of the country are entirely pastoral, and the Bahima live almost wholly upon milk. A certain amount of muhogo is also grown, and the cultivation of this drought-resisting plant is being encouraged, especially in the east and north-east.

Buckwheat is being experimented with in the more arid country. Most of the chiefs have small coffee plots, which are doing well in most parts.

Fish are to be found in the lakes Kachera and Karenju, and from the former a considerable export goes to Buganda. There are also plenty of fish in the Rivers Ruizi and Kagera, and in Lake Edward.

	Approximate Mileage. In Ankole.	Roads.
1. MBARARA—MASAKA	42 miles	
Serviceable for bicycles and light carts in dry weather.		
2. MBARARA—KOKI	50 "	
Partly serviceable for bicycles in dry weather.		
3. MBARARA—MUBENDI	50 "	
Serviceable for bicycles in dry weather.		
4. MBARARA—FORT PORTAL	45 "	
Serviceable for bicycles and rickshaws in dry weather.		
5. MBARARA—KATWE	70 "	
Partly serviceable for bicycles in dry weather.		
6. MBARARA—KABALE	54 "	
Serviceable for bicycles.		
1. Kitoma-Ngalama.		District Tracks.
2. Ngalama-Isingiro.		
3. Nsungezi-Ngalama.		
4. Nsungezi-Kamuli.		
5. Nsungezi-Nyarutuntu-Ruhama-Ihunga.		
6. Mbarara-Mwizi-Nyarutuntu.		
7. Kaiyanja-Sanga-Rushenji-Mbarara.		
8. Kagamba-Kinyamagera-Ndeija-Mbarara.		
9. Kagamba-Kitagata.		
10. Kitagata-Mbarara.		
11. Kitagata-Kabwohe.		
12. Kinyamagera-Ruhama.		
13. Ruhama-Ndeija.		
14. Kitozu-Busenyi.		
15. Busenyi-Lutaranga's-Kakoko's-Kazinga.		
16. Kazinga-Kichwamba.		
17. Katungulu-Chankalanga.		
18. Kichwamba-Chankalanga-Ibanda.		
19. Ibanda-Komi.		
20. Komi-Rusoga-Kaiyanja.		

The above are cross-country tracks, providing rough cycling possibilities for the most part, but not to be classed

as cyclable generally. The more important ones are Nos. 4, 5, 6, 8, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 18 and 19.

Waterways.

The only potential waterways are Lake Edward, and the Kazinga Channel which connects it with Lake George. There is no immediate likelihood, however, of this proving of any advantage as such ; and, in any case, the present sleeping sickness preventive rules preclude its use for the present.

Game.

1. Elephant, numerous in north-west corner by Lake George, and also all along the north of Mitoma to the north-eastern course. Some elephants occasionally cross from Katwe to Kasinga, and others are said to be occasionally found in the Maramagambo (Rumaramagambo more correctly) forest, further south below the escarpment. These come presumably from west of the River Ishasha.

2. Buffalo, especially in the north-west corner, and also in the east and south-east ; also some in the south-west on the River Rufua.

3. Eland, only in the east and south-east.

4. Situtunga, in the large swamps.

5. Topi, very common except in the west and north-west.

6. Waterbuck, in the north-west below the escarpment, and also in the east and east-north-east.

7. Uganda Kob, in north-west below the escarpment only.

8. Reedbuck, common except in Ruampara, Egara, Bunyaraguru, Buzimba and Mitoma.

9. Bushbuck, very widely distributed.

10. Roan antelope, few in south of Ngarama and Ruampara.

11. Impala, plentiful south of Bukanga and Ngarama towards Kagera River.

12. Zebra, in the south-east and east-south-east.

13. Oribi, in east and east-south-east.

14. Duiker, very widely distributed.

15. Klipspringer, near and east of Mbarara.

16. Wart-hog, in east and south-east ; also near Lake Edward.

17. Bush-pig, very common except in the south-west.

18. Lion, mainly throughout.

Leopard, hippopotamus, serval cat, hyæna, hunting dog, and jackal are also numerous. There are no crocodiles in Lake Edward.

Government Station.

Captain Lugard had first intended, as early as 1890 when on his way to Toro to build a Government Station in

Ankole, but abandoned the project. He, however, made blood-brotherhood and a treaty at that time with Ntale, father of the present Mugabe.

The station of Mbarara was not actually commenced until December, 1898, when the late Mr. R. J. D. M'Allister, accompanied by the Katikiro Mbaguta, arrived there from Buganda.

At that time Kahaya's headquarters were at Rusassa, some 10 miles west of Mbarara. The original boma was built well down on the slopes of the hill group called Muti, above the stream of the River Ruizi, by the site of an old kraal of Ntale, whilst Kahaya soon after came and established himself on the opposite hill of Rulembo, at Kamukuzi.

The actual hill from which the station takes its name is on the other (right) bank of the river.

The crest of the hill has subsequently been occupied by European residential quarters, whence a fine view is obtained over the wide plain rimmed with hills, and in the wet season this extends to the summits of Ruwenzori, clearly seen towards sunset and after sunrise.

Mbarara is distant about 90 miles by road from Masaka and Mubendi respectively, and is in the middle of a wide expanse of undulating short grass pasture land.

Formerly there was practically no cultivation near at hand, and food had to be transported from the hill country some distance away. Now, however, it has a very considerable and increasing population and cultivated areas.

There is only one township in the district, *i.e.*, at Mbarara, with its boundary a circle with a radius all round of approximately one mile from the boma (the present District Commissioner's office). This was declared a township in June, 1906.

**Mbarara
Township.**

Outside and close at hand are the two mission stations of the Church Missionary Society and White Fathers with some eight Europeans, and the Mugabe and Katikiro have their headquarters here, and most of the principal chiefs town residences.

Ankole formerly included Bukanga, Ngalama, Isingiro, Ngabushozi, Nsara, the north-eastern part of Ruampara, and parts of Shema and Kasali. Later on Mitoma was added, and at one time Kitakwenda was included by conquest.

The Bakunta, the inhabitants of Bunyaraguru, relate that they are the remnant of the following of a brother of one of the Baganda kings who, on the occasion of a massacre some hundred and twenty years ago, escaped thither. They are of the grasshopper clan. By 1902 all these or their successors had accepted the complete sovereignty of Kahaya

as Mugabe, with the exception of Lugarama, who did so later. Bukanga, on account of troubles which arose in 1899, was made semi-independent under a Muganda chief, Abdul Effendi. This county also was several years ago included as a Sazaship of Ankole. The disputed position of the 30th meridian caused for a long time considerable difficulty in dealing with Western Bunyaraguru, Igara, Shema and Kazara. This has now happily been settled, and order and administration re-established. Rusumbura, however, whose chief Makobole never accepted Kahaya's sovereignty, has been included in the newly-formed administrative district of Kigezi.

The event of chief importance in the history of Ankole was the devastation wrought in 1889 by rinderpest, which swept off the bulk of the flocks and herds.

About 1896 the Banyaruanda invaded Ankole and harried right up to the north-east corner and the boundary of the present Buganda county of Mawogola.

Shortly afterwards Ntale died. After the accession of his son Kahaya, some trouble was caused by the jealousy and rivalries and anti-European sentiment of the latter's uncles, especially Kahasi and Igumira. Igumira was eventually deported in consequence.

In 1901 Sir Harry Johnston, H.M. Special Commissioner, visited the country and drew up and executed an agreement with the Mugabe and chiefs, defining their rights and their relations with the sovereign British Government. This agreement was, owing to the murder of the Acting Provincial Commissioner in 1905, temporarily suspended, but was restored in 1912.

(3) KIGEZI DISTRICT.

This district comprises an area of 2,056 square miles, of which area 73 square miles is water contained in Lakes Edward, Bunyoni and Mutanda.

The boundaries are as follows :—

Commencing from the highest point of Mount Sabinio, the boundary follows the Anglo-Congolese boundary line until it meets the parallel $0^{\circ} 20' S.$; thence along the south-western boundary of the Ankole district until it meets the Anglo-German boundary line ; thence along the Anglo-German boundary line to the point of commencement.

Topography.

Such varying types of country as are contained in the Kigezi district are seldom met with in so small an area, and in addition the district presents many features of extreme interest, foremost amongst which should be mentioned the chain of volcanic peaks in the south-west, the numerous

lakes scattered over the same locality, and the dense forest that covers a considerable portion of the mountainous country immediately to their north.

With the exception of the low-lying country bordering Lake Edward, the average altitude exceeds 5,000 feet, while much of the district lies above 6,000 feet.

A clearly-marked escarpment, starting from the vicinity of Lake George, runs in a south-westerly direction, dividing the low-lying country from the highlands; after passing the Rusaiya River it becomes less clearly marked, and to the west of the Bererara River, until Mount Nkabwa is reached, it is replaced by foothills which connect up the plains with the mountainous country to the south, though this country ultimately reaches an altitude considerably in excess of that of the escarpment proper.

From Mount Nkabwa southwards to the German border in the neighbourhood of Lake Mwuleru, there runs another line which, though it cannot properly be called an escarpment, forms the marginal range of the wild mountainous district to the east.

To the north-east this mountainous district is bounded by the Bererara River, and further south from Mount Ihunga to the German border near Mount Buramma it is clearly defined by a line of marginal hills which rise from the western side of the Rushenyi plain.

The main trend of the hills in this central mountainous part is north and south, with the majority of the rivers flowing north. The chief exception is the system comprised by Lake Bunyoni, the Ruhuhuma swamp and Lakes Murehi and Mutanda, whose waters are connected up from east to west and from the source of the Rutshuru River, since they are debarred from flowing immediately northwards by the mountain mass which stretches from a few miles north-west of Kumba to the vicinity of Mount Nkabwa.

Practically the whole drainage of the district is carried off by the three rivers which enter Lake Edward, viz. :—the Rutshuru, Ishasha and Ntungwe.

Counties have not yet been defined, but the temporary sub-divisions may be described as follows :—

KIVUMBO.—In the north-east Kivumbo, which is bounded by the Mchuera River on the north-east and the Ntungwe on the west, both swiftly-flowing streams liable to sudden flood and averaging 10 to 30 yards wide respectively in the dry season. The northern portion runs down Lake Edward, and is a low-lying rolling grass country with scattered clumps of thorn bush and dense forest belts along the rivers; the lake shore is fringed with a broad belt of marsh, and old lake levels can be clearly distinguished further

inland. The southern portion across the Rusaiya River is rather more hilly. To the north of the Mchuera and between it and the Kasis lies the small district of Kabagambi usually included in Kivumbo, which, with the exception that it is more densely wooded, is similar in all respects to the latter.

In the extreme north lies the promontory, after the rains an island, of Kikuhuri, usually called Kanyamwongo; the latter is properly the name of the site of an old village further south along the coast now abandoned, the name being transferred to the new site. This is the only port on Lake Edward possessed by the district, and it is the only point at which the lake shore is accessible.

Along the foot of the escarpment north and south of the Mchuera River lies the Maramagambo forest, covering an area of about 30 square miles.

BUTUMBI.—In the north-west Butumbi, which lies between the Ntungwe—further south known as the Bererara—and the Ishasha Rivers, the latter being a swift flowing, muddy stream about 15 yards wide, which passes through a dense forest belt and forms part of the international frontier. The central northern portion of Butumbi is occupied by an almost treeless grassy expanse which slopes gradually down to the river on either side; the south-east is more hilly and better wooded, but, with the exception of this last and extreme south of Kivumbo, both these districts are fly areas and no cattle can be kept in them.

Both the above districts are practically uninhabited, owing to the greater part having been declared a sleeping sickness area.

RUSUMBURU.—South of Kivumbo lies Rusumburu, an open rolling country of short grass, almost treeless but well watered by numerous marshy streams. The average altitude is over 5,000 feet. It is healthy and supports large herds of cattle, being similar in every respect to many parts of Ankole.

CHINCHIZI.—South of Butumbi lies Chinchizi, a small fertile country occupying the foothills that give rise to the mountainous district of Rukiga further south; it is well watered and well wooded, and, though somewhat hilly, cattle do well. It was the site of a small Belgian boma prior to its transfer to Great Britain.

KAYONSA.—To the south-west of Chinchizi the River Ishasha, a swift, rocky stream flowing through a deep valley the sides covered with dense forest, forms the boundary with Kayonsa, another small and extremely mountainous district. Much of it is densely forested, more especially in the valleys, while in other parts it is covered with long grass

or bracken, hence travelling is slow work even along the paths, and across country almost impossible. Nevertheless it is very fertile and supports in parts a certain number of cattle.

To the south and west the country rises abruptly and forms a broken mountainous mass covered with the densest forest which extends from 1° to $1^{\circ} 8' S.$ and $29^{\circ} 32'$ to $29^{\circ} 50' E.$

The average altitude is close on 7,500 feet, while many of the summits approach 8,000 feet, and one peak attains as much as 8,551 feet. The forest itself is of great interest, both on account of the extremely mountainous nature of the country over which it extends and the animal and plant life to be found therein ; for, though poor in mammals, such as are to be found are of considerable interest, and bird and insect life are plentiful, while the vegetation, assisted by an abundance of moisture and the ideal conditions presented by the many sheltered hollows between the folds of the hills, runs riot and presents an almost impenetrable front to any who would leave the single path that traverses the forest from Kayonsa to Ruanda in the south, and which as often as not itself requires a liberal use of the axe or machete before it will allow the traveller to pass. Trees of all descriptions and sizes bound together with great lianas and draped with pale green beard moss, orchids and giant tree ferns, make a tropical undergrowth of surpassing beauty, whilst through it all, wandering here and there, are clear, ice-cold mountain streams—altogether a wonderful and fascinating country.

Through the forest, but not far from its southern edge, run the boundaries of Kayonsa and Ruanda until the country of Rukiga is reached, when they diverge and the Kayonsa-Rukiga boundary turns off north-east through the forest to the Ishasha, and the Ruanda-Rukiga frontier continues to the Ruhuhuma swamp.

This forest-clad region is rich in iron ore, more especially towards its southern border, and a considerable quantity is worked by the natives, who utilise it for making spears, hoes, bracelets, etc., and for barter.

The forest itself is entirely uninhabited, though a few natives live on the lower slopes of the hills to the west just on its border.

RUANDA.—South of Kayonsa extends that portion of the former Sultanate of Ruanda which is now situated in British territory. Its western and southern limits are defined by the Anglo-Congo and Anglo-German frontiers respectively, while to the east the boundary with Rukiga continues from the north side of the Ruhuhuma swamp

down its western arm to Lake Bunyonyi, and thence down the centre of the lake and the long promontory which divides its southern end round the south-westernmost arm to the Anglo-German frontier on the Kirurumu River, the islands on the lake being divided between the two districts.

In the south-west extends the rocky lava plain of Mufumbiro, covered with grass and in parts small shrubs and brambles. There are few trees of any size, though Euphorbias are common. The soil, though of no great depth, is very fertile, and the country supports large herds of cattle. The plain is dotted with numerous volcanic cones, the majority breached on their southern sides.

In the extreme south-west commences the chain of great volcanic peaks, of which three, Mahavura, Mgahinga and Sabinio, lie partly in British territory, the first-named having an altitude of 13,547 feet. It is covered for the most part with a shrub resembling broom, and near the summit, heath, while the lower slopes of Mgahinga and Sabinio are clothed in dense forests of bamboo. West and south-west of these mountains lie the remainder of the volcanic group of which Karisimbi is the highest, with an altitude of 14,780 feet, while Namlagira is a still active volcano and was in eruption as recently as January, 1913. Round the edge of this plain extends a series of lakes of which the largest in British territory is Mutanda, situated on its northern extremity; to the north-east lies Lake Murehi, and to the south, Mugisha and Chahafi. From the eastern side of this plain rises the marginal line of hills, mentioned earlier in the chapter, the southern portion of which is covered with a dense bamboo forest. From the summit of this range a marvellous view of the volcanic peaks, lakes and lava plain is obtained. Beyond, and situated in a long but exceedingly narrow and steep-sided valley, lies Bunyonyi, the largest lake in the district, having a length somewhat in excess of 15 miles. It is dotted with innumerable islands, most of which are inhabited.

RUKIGA.—To the east of Ruanda, and bounded on the north by Kayonsa, Chinchizi and Rusumburu, on the east by Rushenyi, and on the south by German East Africa, lies Rukiga, a mountainous country intersected by numerous deep valleys filled for the most part with swamp-choked streams. The average level of this country is considerably higher than Ruanda, while the majority of the ridges are over 7,000 feet. From north to south and west to east the country slopes gradually to an altitude of about 5,000 feet, and becomes considerably less wild, thorn bush and open grass replacing the bracken and bramble with which the rest of the country is for the most part clothed.

For administrative purposes the district has been divided into four divisions, Rukiga, Ruanda, Rusumburu and Chinchizi. Native Government.

1. Rukiga was at one time conquered by Dwyabagirri, Sultan of Ruanda, though apparently never administered by him, whereon it becomes the playground of neighbouring warlike tribes, more especially the Batwa, who by their repeated raids entirely depopulated the country in parts. The remaining Bakiga banded themselves together in small clans and lived a somewhat precarious existence, concerned only with their own safety, owing allegiance to no paramount chief. This district has now made considerable progress, and is divided into five divisions of Mpalo, Bukindu, Nalusanje, Butale and Kumba, each under a Baganda chief, and an effective native administration is being gradually built up.

2. Ruanda.—An agent is posted in Ruanda, with a sub-agent at Bufundi on Lake Bunyoni, their duties being to instruct and assist the local chiefs in administrative matters. An administrative Lukiko has been established, consisting of two Batusi, two Bahutu, and one Mukiga chief, as the population of Ruanda is made up of these three tribes. There are various other sub-chiefs who exercise authority in their own villages. There are no Batwa in British territory with the exception of a few personal hunters of the principal chiefs.

3.—Rusumburu.—An agent is posted in this district to supervise and instruct the local chiefs in their duties. The Bahima are the ruling caste. Makabole, the head chief, has a certain amount of control over the people. An administrative Lukiko consisting of Makabole and five principal chiefs has been formed to deal with native affairs.

4. Chinchizi.—This district is for the most part thick forest and very hilly, and is only partly administered. An agent is posted here to instruct the chiefs in their duties.

Considering the short time that the district has been opened up, and in view of its very hilly nature, remarkably good roads have been made. Roads.

All the swamps crossed by these roads have been bridged and rest-houses erected at the principal centres.

Roads	Distances.
KABALE-MBARARA ROAD.	
Kabale to Lutobo	5 hours. Camp. One bad hill.

KABALE-RUANDA ROAD via LAKE BUNYONI.	
Kabale to Bufundi via Kagunsu	1½ hours by road, then cross by canoes. Camp.

A new road is to be made through the bamboo forest to Seseme with a half-way camp in the forest.

	Roads.				Distances.	
OLD ROAD.						
Kabale to Kumba	4 hours.	Camp.
Kumba to Ngezi	4 hours.	Camp.
Ngezi to Seseme	4½ hours.	Camp.
Very bad hills.						
KABALE to RUSUMBURU ROAD.						
Kabale to Mpalo	2½ hours.	Camp.
Mpalo to Nalusanje	5½ hours.	Camp.
Nalusanje to Makoboles	5½ hours.	Camp.
A half-way camp can be made at the Hot Springs. There is a track from Rusumburu to Chinchizi.						
NALUSANJE-KAGAMBA-MBARARA ROAD				..	5½ hours.	Camp.
Fit for motor-cycle in dry weather.						
TRACK OVER MOUNTAINS.						
Nalusanje to Kumba	4½ hours.	Camp.

Waterways.

None of the rivers in the district are navigable, the only waterways being : (a) Lake Edward, on the shore of which is situated Kanyamwongo, a fishing village of some importance, and a port of call for the coastwise salt traffic from Katwe to Kabale, a Belgian post on the southern end of the lake ; (b) Lakes Matanda and Murehi, on which there are a considerable number of canoes used as a means of communication and at times for the transport of produce ; and (c) Lake Bunyonyi, on which are some 30 similar canoes used for a like purpose and which are more especially required owing to the number of inhabited islands. From the point at which this lake is crossed when travelling from Katalegi's to Kabale the lake is not more than a thousand yards across, and canoes can be easily obtained for the transport of a safari.

Game.

With the exception of the low-lying countries of Butumbi and Kivumbo bordering the shores of Lake Edward, Kigezi cannot be considered a game district, at least so far as numbers and the facilities for making large bags are concerned, though such game as is found is of considerable interest.

In Kivumbo and Butumbi the following species are to be met with :—

Elephant, which range from the Maramagambo forest to the Chiruruma river ; buffalo, which are plentiful in all the forest belts and more especially by the Rusaiya river ; and waterbuck, topi, Uganda cob, reedbuck, bushbuck and duiker. Lion are very plentiful, especially in the vicinity of the Ishasha, but are seldom seen out in the open, as are also leopard and the usual lesser members of the cat tribe, hyænas and jackals. Hippopotami are numerous in Lake Edward, the majority of the rivers, and in great numbers in a small swampy lake called Kikeri.

Wart-hog and bush-pig, and, in the Maramagambo forest, a species of giant forest hog presumably allied to *Hylochoerus Meinertzhageni*, colobi, and various other species of monkey and baboons are plentiful.

With regard to the remainder of the district, the most interesting and at the same time the most widely distributed animal is the situtunga, which finds a home in almost every swamp. The most favourable locality in which to observe them is the vicinity of Ngezi, where, from a suitable position on the hillside overlooking the swamp, they may usually be seen out in the open feeding grounds, which form a characteristic of this swamp, at any time of the day, in large numbers.

Perhaps the commonest animal, though seldom seen, is the bushbuck, which is to be found throughout the bracken and bramble-covered portions of Ruanda and Rukiga, and in the bamboo forest south-east of Kigezi, and on the wooded lower slopes of Mgahinga and Sabinio. In the bamboo forests below these same mountains are found elephant, possessing as a rule very small tusks, and buffalo ; on the lava plain a small duiker and in the bamboo forest to the south-east a species of red duiker, at present unidentified, and what is believed to be a new variety of elephant of small size and carrying light tusks.

The dense forest south of Kayonsa is believed to contain gorilla, though it is possible that this may in reality be the new variety of chimpanzee discovered by the Duke of Mecklenburg on Mgahinga ; there is also a small antelope at present unidentified, pig, leopard, and on the edges, lion, which sometimes range as far as Ngezi and Kumba and are also found in the hilly country north-west of Nalusangi and in the vicinity of the volcanic peaks. A small herd of buffalo live in the hills to the west of Ngezi, and a few occasionally visit those on the east. Otters are plentiful in many of the swamps and lakes and are much hunted by the natives. A certain number of hippopotami are found in Lake Mutanda.

In April, 1914, it was decided to move the Government headquarters to Kabale in the centre of Rukiga, where a better site was obtained. The offices, police lines, and Government buildings are situated on Kabale Hill, while the European quarters are situated on Makanga Hill that slopes up from Kabale. Government Station.

Kabale promises to be one of the most picturesque stations in the Protectorate.

The early history of the district is the history of the Kivu Mission, which was undertaken in 1909 for the purpose of occupying territory in the direction of Lake Kivu, to Local History.

which the British Government laid claim. The outcome of this Mission was an arrangement with the Belgian authorities for the laying down of a definite Anglo-Congo frontier, which was subsequently demarcated by a joint Boundary Commission. The territory thus acquired, which had been formerly in the occupation of the Belgians, was officially handed over to Britain in May, 1911. Kumba, which had been originally occupied by the Mission as a purely military position, now became the headquarters for the administration of the newly-acquired area, under a Political Officer. In the meantime an agreement had been made with the German Government for the transfer of a considerable stretch of country lying S. of 1° S. latitude—which up to this had formed part of German East Africa—to Great Britain. The new frontier was again laid down by a joint Boundary Commission, and in January, 1912, the formal transfer of this territory was effected.

Prior to this transfer, in September, 1911, it had been necessary to take active measures against a well-known Nabingwe or witch-doctress, by name Mamusa, who had been assiduously preaching an anti-European crusade, and raiding and looting all the friendly chiefs who had refused to join her standard. The operations were successfully carried out by a company of 4th K.A.R., under the Political Officer, Captain Reid, Mamusa herself being captured and subsequently deported to Kampala.

During April, 1912, the German Government took action against Bassebia, chief of a section of Batwa resident in German territory, who had been raiding and plundering his neighbours; his capture was effected in May, and his prompt execution followed. Considerable relief was felt by the Bakiga at his death, and with establishment of a Mutusi of standing as paramount chief of the German Batwa in September, all likelihood of Batwa raids has ceased. At the end of October, 1912, the district was brought under ordinary civil administration.

Ever since July, 1912, that part of Rukiga that had been the scene of Mamusa's activities had been disturbed by the presence of Ndungutzi, who had accompanied Mamusa, but had made good his escape after the fighting, and who, according to some authorities, was the rightful heir to the throne of Ruanda, and, though the popular candidate amongst the Bahutu for this position, was dispossessed in favour of Msinga, who had the support of the Batusi and the German authorities, and who now proclaimed himself and was admitted by several minor chiefs to be Sultan of Rukiga. As a result these minor chiefs resident near

Kabale refused to carry out Government orders, and began to be actively hostile to the agents and friendly chiefs. Matters reached a climax in January, 1913, when, as a result of prompt action on the part of the District Officer, and the fortunate circumstance of Ndungutzi's apprehension at Mbarara, through which he was passing on a secret visit to Mamusa, the whole matter was brought to a satisfactory conclusion, and it is improbable that anything of the sort will occur again.

Periodical raids have since been carried out by bands of Batusi under the leadership of a witch-doctor named Ndochibiri, but a punitive expedition, consisting of Uganda and Belgian-Congo Police, succeeded in ejecting the offenders from British territory with considerable loss. Ndochibiri, however, re-appeared at the head of a strong force in June, 1919, when the retreat of his party was cut off and Ndochibiri and other leaders killed.

CHAPTER VI.

THE NORTHERN PROVINCE.

This Province, being the north-west portion of the Protectorate, is the second largest of the Provinces in the Protectorate, and comprises an area of 23,734 square miles, of which area 1,254 square miles is water, principally territorial water in Lake Albert.

The average height of the southern portion is about 3,800 feet above M.S.L., with a sudden fall of about 1,200 feet at the Lake Albert escarpment to Lake Albert and the Nile and a gradual fall in a northerly direction to about 2,000 feet above M.S.L. at Nimule.

For administrative purposes the Province is divided into the following districts :—(1) Bunyoro, (2) Gulu, (3) Chua, and (4) West Nile District.

The boundaries are as follows :—

On the west the boundary follows the Anglo-Belgian Congo boundary across Lake Albert to its intersection, half-way between the shores of the Lake, with parallel $2^{\circ} 7'$ north. From this point the boundary takes a westerly direction until it meets the Congo Nile watershed at a point 5.6 kilometres south-south-east of the summit of the hill Ham ; thence it follows the Congo Nile watershed northwards to the point where the British, Anglo-Sudan and Belgian-Congo territories meet. Thence the boundary runs in an easterly direction following the Uganda-Anglo-Sudan boundary to the southernmost point at the bottom of Jebel Harogo ; thence in a straight line in a south-easterly direction to the intersection of the meridian 34° east with parallel 4° north latitude ; thence in a southerly direction following the boundary of the Rudolf Province to its junction with the boundary of the Eastern Province. The boundary then runs westerly, following the Lobar District boundary of the Eastern Province to Mount Napono ; thence westerly to the confluence of the Rivers Udek and Assua ; thence a straight line to the summit of Mount Moru ; thence follows the thalweg of the Abega River to its confluence with the Tochi River, following the River Tochi to its confluence with the River Nile.

From this point the boundary follows the River Nile in a southerly direction to the mouth of the River Kafu ; thence following the Buganda boundary along the Rivers Kafu and Nkussi to Lake Albert.

(1) BUNYORO DISTRICT.

This district comprises an area of 5,619 square miles, of which area 971 square miles is water contained in Lake Albert and the River Nile.

It is divided into the following six counties or Sazas :—

			Title of Chief
1. Bugahya	..	..	Mukwenda.
2. Buhaguzi	..	..	Pokino.
3. Bujenje	..	..	Kago.
4. Kibanda	..	..	Kangao.
5. Kihukya	..	..	Sekibobo.
6. Buruli	..	..	Kimbugwe.

The boundaries are as follows :—

Commencing at a point on the Anglo-Congolese boundary on the parallel of $2^{\circ} 7'$ north latitude, half-way between the shores of Lake Albert, the boundary of the Bunyoro district runs in a straight line in a north-easterly direction to the point at which the Victoria Nile enters Lake Albert; thence it follows the thalweg of that river in an easterly and southerly direction to its confluence with the River Kafu; thence it follows the thalwegs of the Rivers Kafu and Nkussi to Lake Albert. From the point at which the River Nkussi enters Lake Albert it runs due north till it intersects the Anglo-Congolese boundary in Lake Albert; and then it follows that boundary to the point of commencement.

Rising from the lower plains which extend along the banks of the Nile and Kafu Rivers, the country changes its character gradually towards the east and north. From a rolling, undulating country covered with grass and thorn scrub, dotted here and there with small "kopjes," the land assumes a covering of dense vegetation and quickly becomes intersected with swamps, deep valleys and groups of high hills. Topography.

Two areas of forest occur in the Bunyoro district, the Budongo Forest, which lies between Masindi and the Albert Lake, with an approximate area of 160 square miles, and the Bugoma Forest on the further confines of the district, with a smaller area of approximately 80 square miles.

Approaching the Albert Lake, the high level of the country which has varied throughout the district from 3,200 to 3,800 feet above sea level, drops precipitously over a rock escarpment to 2,200 feet. From the foot of the escarpment the foreshore descends further until it reaches the height above sea level of the Albert Lake, 2,028 feet.

The Victoria Nile drops from a height above sea level of 3,350 feet at its confluence with the Kafu River, to 2,028 feet where it enters the Albert Lake. This drop is effected by a series of rapids, which render it unnavigable between Foweira and Fajao, and by a sudden descent of 401 feet over the Murchison Falls at Fajao itself.

There are no high mountains in the district, though minor peaks, varying from 4,000 to 4,800 feet, are found in the hillier portions of the country.

With the exception of the Nile, which skirts the eastern and parts of the northern boundaries of the district, no rivers in Bunyoro are navigable. Few, indeed, are far removed in appearance from large swamps. The Kafu, the Nkussi, and the Waki and Waiga, where they flow over the escarpment, show clear, running water for but a short distance before they approach their confluence with the Nile and the Albert Lake.

The country lying to the east, between Masindi and the Nile, and to the south and south-east, between Masindi and Kafu, is poorly watered and practically waterless in the dry season, between December and February.

**Native
Government.**

Bunyoro is divided into six counties or Sazas responsible to a Lukiko. The president of the Lukiko and nominal native ruler of the country is the Mukama, or king, whose office is hereditary.

Each Saza or county, besides its principal or Saza chief, possesses a native administrative staff of Gombolola, or second class chiefs, who may number five, or possibly eight, the number varying with the size and population of the district.

These smaller chieftainships exercise control over the lesser territorial portions of the country, and are directly responsible to the Saza chief. In their turn, the Gombolola chiefs look to a fourth and sometimes to a fifth-class grade of assistant sub-chief to help them in the performance of their duties.

A system of decentralisation of control thus exists, which, in theory, is almost perfect. In practice, however, control does not always act as satisfactorily as it might, as the lower grade chief exists and strives to obtain office for the purpose of avoiding the calls for labour, rather than saddling himself with the responsibility of finding it.

Once in every week throughout the year the native chiefs assemble in council, or Lukiko, at the two seats of the native headquarter government at Masindi and Hoima. Here affairs of the district are discussed and framed into shape sufficiently comprehensive to lay before the District Commissioners next day. The Mukama presides at the

native Lukiko at Masindi and accompanies it to the District Baraza house with any chiefs or sub-chiefs who may be present. A large number of the people attend these meetings. It is customary for the District Officer to take the opportunity afforded by them to explain new laws, to enter into the economic conditions and requirements of the district, to look into the question of local taxes, to arrange for labour and food supplies, to settle disputes, and listen to the sometimes intricate arguments of native politics.

Chiefs, who for various reasons are unable to attend the headquarter Lukiko, hold their own meetings in the different parts of the district in which they reside.

In addition to the general business of the country, the Lukikos sit during the week as native courts with very clearly defined powers, and administer elementary law to the peasantry. As courts of law they conform with such procedure, practice and rules as may from time to time be laid down by the High Court of the Protectorate; they are subject, moreover, to supervision from the Supervisory (District) Courts in the district, which have power to revise their sentences, decisions or orders. Native courts are prohibited from trying cases of crime committed within a township or cases in which Government employés, or members of alien tribes, are implicated. Nor may they try offences which are punishable by law with death or with transportation for life.

Ceremonial is gradually dying out in the country. The Mukama himself is, however, invariably attended by a large retinue of natives. The Saza chiefs are beginning to move through their districts with greater speed and less ceremony than in years gone by, and have adopted European clothes and methods of travel to assist them in getting through their duties.

	Miles.	
Masindi Port—Masindi	29	Main Roads
Masindi—Butiaba	47	District Roads.
Masindi—Hoima	34½	
Masindi—Bombo (to Kafu River, provincial boundary, via motor road to mile 2, thence 9 miles to Kafu Ferry at Kibanja)	36	
Masindi—Gulu (to Atura Ferry on Victoria Nile) .	52½	
Hoima—Fort Portal (to Nkussi Ferry, provincial boundary)	36½	
Hoima—Mubendi (to Kafu River, provincial boundary)	17½	

Motors can be used on main roads. The district roads are suitable for bullock and hand cart traffic only.

The old Kampala-Butiaba wagon road crosses the Kafu River into Bunyoro District near Butema, passes through

Hoima at $12\frac{1}{2}$ miles, thence a new line to Butiaba at $47\frac{1}{2}$ miles.

This road is falling into disuse as far as Hoima, and is not being maintained as a wagon road: mechanical transport via Jinja and Masindi has taken its place in the communications of the Protectorate.

The camps on all the main roads in Bunyoro are as follows :—

	Camps.	Mileage.	Total Mileage.
MASINDI—HOIMA ROAD—			
Bujenji..	9 $\frac{1}{2}$	
Bulindi	14 $\frac{1}{2}$	
Hoima	10 $\frac{1}{2}$	34 $\frac{1}{2}$

MASINDI—BOMBO ROAD—			
Mile 2 Masindi—Masindi Port motor road .	.. .. .	27	
Kafu River (provincial boundary) ..	.. .. .	9	36

There is one canoe at the Kafu River at Kibanja.

MASINDI—GULU ROAD—			
Pakanya ..	.. .. .	7 $\frac{1}{2}$	
Kigumba ..	.. .. .	15	
Bwevali ..	.. .. .	13 $\frac{1}{2}$	
Atura Ferry (provincial boundary) ..	.. .. .	17	52 $\frac{1}{2}$

There are five registered canoes at Atura Ferry.

HOIMA—BUTIABA ROAD—			
Kitoba ..	.. .. .	7	
Kigerobva ..	.. .. .	9	
Bunumi ..	.. .. .	12 $\frac{1}{2}$	
Butiaba ..	.. .. .	7	35 $\frac{1}{2}$

HOIMA—FORT PORTAL ROAD—			
Mowhiju (approximately) ..	.. .. .	7	
Namakesa ..	.. .. .	9	
Kigumba ..	.. .. .	11	
Karama ..	.. .. .	8	
Nkussi River (provincial boundary) ..	.. .. .	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	36 $\frac{1}{2}$

The River Nkussi is bridged.

HOIMA—MUBENDI ROAD—			
Kigaya ..	.. .. .	10 $\frac{1}{2}$	
Kafu Ferry (provincial boundary) ..	.. .. .	7	17 $\frac{1}{2}$

There is one canoe at the Ferry.

(2) GULU DISTRICT.

This district comprises an area of 6,995 square miles of which area 192 square miles is water in the River Nile and Lake Albert.

The boundaries are as follows :—

Commencing at a point on the Anglo-Congolese boundary on the parallel of $2^{\circ}7'$ north latitude, half-way between the shores of Lake Albert, the boundary of the Gulu District



Photo by Guy Eden.

THE MURCHISON FALLS.

runs in a straight line in a north-easterly direction to the point at which the White Nile (Bahr-el-Gebel) flows out of Lake Albert, and follows the thalweg of that river to the south-eastern extremity of the Balala Swamp; thence it follows a straight line in a westerly direction to a point on the River Atula, 18 miles from its confluence with the White Nile; thence it follows a straight line in a north-easterly direction to a point three miles due west of Luferru Rest Camp; thence it follows a straight line to the source of the River Ayu; thence it follows the thalweg of the River Ayu to its confluence with the River Nyaura; thence it follows the Uganda-Sudan boundary to its point of intersection of the River Assua; thence it follows the River Assua up stream to its confluence with the River Udek; thence it follows a straight line in a south-westerly direction to the summit of Mount Moru; thence it follows a straight line to the confluence of the Rivers Abega and Tochi; thence it follows the thalweg of the River Tochi to its confluence with the Victoria Nile; thence it follows the thalweg of the Victoria Nile to its entry into Lake Albert, and thence it runs in a straight line to its point of commencement.

The country is undulating with prominent outcrops of rock, and comprises two distinct types—rolling plains and thick bush. With the exception of the Tochi River, which is of a swampy nature, the country is well watered throughout by fast flowing streams. A watershed twenty miles in length runs north-west and south-east through the district, with the station of Gulu on the south-east extremity; the rivers lying to the north and east drain into the Bahr-el-Gebel, those to the south and west into the Victoria Nile. Topography.

The Bahr-el-Gebel and the Victoria Nile, between Fajao and the Albert Lake, alone are navigable. These form part of the boundaries of the district. Other important rivers are the Assua, which divides the Gulu from the Chua district, the Unyama, the Aiyugi, the Tengi, the Achwa and the Ume, all of which have their outflow into the Bahr-el-Gebel.

The Tochi and the Aiyago, two other important rivers of the district, flow into the Victoria Nile.

The soil south and west of the watershed consists of stiff, red earth, intermingled with sand, in which frequent outcrops of ironstone occur. North and east of the line the red soil gives place to hard, black earth. With the exception of a few hills which attain an approximate height of 4,000 feet, the height of the district above sea

level varies from 2,000 feet on the banks of the Nile to 3,600 feet in the higher parts of the interior.

	Miles.
Main Roads. Gulu—Masindi Road (to Tochi River, provincial boundary, to Atura Ferry, Victoria Nile, 17 miles)	31
Gulu—Kitgum Road (to Abia Ferry, district boundary)	22
Gulu—Boroli—Port Liri Road (Port Liri is the Madi Port on the Bahr-el-Gebel)	65

The above roads are practicable for hand carts ; motor-bicycles are of assistance on all. Swamps and rivers are roughly bridged. Two canoes have been placed on the ferries over the Tochi River and two on the Assua River at the Abia crossing.

(3) CHUA DISTRICT.

This district comprises an area of 7,007 square miles. The boundaries are as follows :—

Commencing at the point of intersection of the parallel of 4° north latitude and the parallel of 34° east longitude the boundary runs in a straight line in a south-westerly direction to a point on the southern foothills of Mount Napono ; thence in a straight line to the confluence of the Rivers Udek and Assua ; thence in a north-westerly direction following the thalweg of the River Assua down stream to the point on that river at which the Uganda-Sudan boundary intersects the river. It then follows the Uganda-Sudan boundary in a north-easterly direction to the southernmost point at the bottom of Mount Harogo ; thence it runs in a straight line to its point of commencement.

Topography.

The country consists of low-lying, undulating plains, lightly covered with thorn bush. The plains rise slightly as they approach the hilly regions surrounding Mount Agoro, 9,400 feet, on the northern boundary of the district. Besides Mount Agoro, other noticeable features are : Mount Akol, 3,570 feet, and Mount Napono, 6,800 feet, on the eastern boundary line ; and Mount Parabong, 6,600 feet. These hills or mounts rise precipitately from the plains and form rugged and most imposing features on the local landscape.

The country is not well watered. Beyond the Assua and its tributary, the Agaga, there are no rivers other than watercourses (kors), which, although they may attain considerable depth and volume of water after heavy rains, are, for the most part, sandy courses in the dry seasons of the year.

Springs and water-holes exist on all the hills and mountains. The soil is of a black and sandy nature in the west, and red and very sandy in the east. It possesses rich cereal producing qualities in the centre of the district.

	Miles.	Roads.
Kitgum—Gulu Road (to Abia Ferry, Assua River, district boundary)	35	
Kitgum—Lira (to Paranga Ferry, district boundary)	46	
Kitgum—Palabek (for Nimule)	24	
This road is not kept up beyond Palabek owing to presence of fly.		
Kitgum—Masindi	68	

The Kitgum-Nimule road after crossing the Uganda-Sudan boundary is no longer cleared and has lapsed into a state of bush, with only a narrow path through it.

With this exception the above roads are 18 to 20 feet broad and are generally practicable for motor bicycles.

Swamps, rivers and watercourses are roughly bridged, with the exception of the Ajan River in the Kitgum-Gulu road.

Two canoes have been placed on the Abia crossing on the Assua River.

	Camps.	Mileage.	Total Mileage.
GULU—MASINDI ROAD—			
Koro		10	
Paranga		5	
Minnakulu		6	
Poumwa		10	
Jaber (Lira District, Eastern Province)		11	
Atura Port (Victoria Nile)		6	48
GULU—KITGUM ROAD—			
Painchor		12	
Abia Ferry (Assua River, district boundary)		10	22
GULU—BOROLI—PORT LIRI ROAD—			
Patiko		10	
Turu		12	
Pabbo		10	
Palaro		12	
Boroli (Madi headquarters)		5	
Adropi		10	
Liri (Port on Bahr-el-Gebel)		6	65
KITGUM—GULU ROAD—			
Natdiang		10	
Goma		11	
Abia Ferry (Assua River, district boundary)		14	35
KITGUM—LIRA ROAD—			
Lukuku		10	
Pajuli		12	
Pader		9	
Paranga		7	
Assua River Ferry (provincial boundary)		7	45
(To Lira Station 26 on.)			

	Camps.				Mileage.	Total Mileage.
KITGUM—MADIAL—						
Mussini	13
Madi Opei	13
Terretenia	15
Madial	21
						62
ARUA—PORT MUTIR ROAD—						
Ajia	12
Aiavu	14½
Powaa	11
Mutir Port	7
						44½

(4) WEST NILE DISTRICT.

This district comprises an area of approximately 4,113 square miles.

The boundaries are as follows :—

Commencing at a point on the Anglo-Congolese boundary on the parallel of 2° 7' north latitude, half-way between the shores of Lake Albert, the boundary of the West Nile district follows the western boundary of the Gulu district to the confluence of the Rivers Ayu and Nyaura ; thence it follows the Uganda-Sudan boundary in a westerly direction to its intersection with the Anglo-Congolese boundary, which boundary it follows to its point of commencement in Lake Albert.

Topography.

The West Nile district, once leased as the Lado enclave to Leopold II., King of Belgium, consists of two distinct types of country ; low-lying bush country is found along the Nile and high, open country on the Congo-Nile watershed. The district is well watered by several rivers of fair size, running generally from west to east. The country is not mountainous, but is interspersed with isolated groups of hills whose peaks rise to a height of approximately 6,000 feet.

An abrupt escarpment pursues a course parallel to the course of the Nile at a distance varying from two to four miles from the river from a point on its west bank a few miles south of Nimule. This escarpment rises to a height of 5,000 feet, approximately, at Mount Otze. From this latter point the escarpment runs for a distance of 25 miles before merging into an undulating bush country, which is intersected by formidable watercourses with swampy mouths. The escarpment again makes its appearance ninety miles further south and continues into Belgian territory.

In the north and south regions of the district the country rises towards the west in a series of rough, stony hills ; in its centre the rise is more gradual, the terrain assuming a uniform and less broken character. The rising country reaches its culmination in the Congo Nile watershed at a height of 4,500 feet. In the south of the district the river-ain escarpment is duplicated further westward with an abrupt rise to the plateau. The land lying below the plateau is thickly bushed and well watered with the exception of certain well-defined areas of country.

On the watershed the highlands are undulating and entirely free from bush or large trees ; the highlands are well watered by springs and small head streams which eventually form the large rivers referred to.

The positions of the mountains are well-defined and are quite separate. In the north, Mount Otze rises from the escarpment—an isolated peak and a good landmark. Further to the west, and approximately two days' march from the western boundary, a group of mountains is formed by the peaks Wati, Liru and Afuddi, while in the centre of the district is Mount Luku. In the extreme south there is an extensive group of minor peaks which merge into the escarpment leading up to the watershed.

All the mountains are well wooded and in some cases covered with bamboos.

The district is entirely without tropical forest ; the soil of the highlands is apparently excellent ; that of the low-lying country is barren and unfertile, except in proximity of the rivers.

Since 1914 some 400 miles of good, administrative roads have been opened up which are maintained by the natives of the district. District Roads.

The chief are :—

	Miles.
Arua—Port Mutir Road (principal port for West Nile on Bahr-el-Gebel)	44½
Arua—Gulu Road (to Relli Ferry for Port Liri) ..	61½
Panyango—Okoro Road (Panyango Port on Bahr-el-Gebel to Okoro, principal centre of High-land Alur.)	45

The Victoria Nile—known sometimes as the Somerset Nile between Fowaira and its junction with Lake Albert—the River Nile (Bahr-el-Gebel) and Lake Albert comprise the navigable waterways of the Province. Provincial Waterways.

The Victoria Nile is a broad river varying in its speed from a current which is almost imperceptible to four knots. It is navigable from its point of entry into the Province, at the confluence of Kafu River, to Foweira, a distance of 62 miles. Fifty miles of rapids, rocks and gorges, culminating in the Murchison Falls, render its course unnavigable from Foweira to Fajao. From Fajao it becomes again navigable for the remaining 16 miles of its journey to the Albert Lake.

The fall of the river during its journey past Bunyoro is 1,327 feet. The height of the Murchison Falls is 401 feet; the drop is not, however, a direct one. There are three cascades.

The Nile proper, or the river of the mountain, a continuation of the Victoria Nile, remains navigable from the point where it leaves Lake Albert for 125 miles (approximately) to Nimule. From Nimule to Fort Berkeley its course is intersected with rapids, after which it becomes once again navigable until passing the fourth parallel of latitude north (the northern boundary of the Province), it reaches Khartoum.

The Albert Lake with an approximate superficial area of 2,064 square miles is eminently suitable for navigation, but suffers from a paucity of sheltered harbours.

THE GULU DISTRICT, THE CHUA DISTRICT, AND THE WEST NILE DISTRICT.

Native Government.

There is no paramount form of native government in these districts, which are populated entirely by Nilotic tribes. Independent chiefs, assisted by elders and village headmen, nominally control their own people, who vary from tens to hundreds of adults. Except in isolated cases, the chief has little authority other than that which the Government affords him.

The chieftainships are usually hereditary. Much, however, depends on the behaviour and popularity of a chief after election whether all his people remain with him. Independent factors arise from time to time and give rise to independent chieftainships in cases of oppression, injustice or weakness.

A chief has always been expected to lead his people in their raids, make rain when such is required, and arrange for the sowing of their crops. He does no administrative work on his own initiative, but is slowly learning to carry out the definite instructions given him by the District Officer.

A district "Lukiko," or native political assembly, has been instituted recently in both the Gulu and the Chua Districts. At these Lukikos the chiefs and the District Officers meet once monthly to decide points at issue among natives of the district. Administrative measures are discussed also and promulgated to the chiefs at this assembly.

In the West Nile District, a similar state of affairs exists without the more advanced addition of a Lukiko. The Lugwari tribe, the most populous of those inhabiting the West Nile District, is lacking in organization at present.

Species.	Lunyoro Name.	Remarks.	Game, Bunyoro District.
Elephant	Njojo	Very plentiful.	
Buffalo	Mbogo		
Hippopotamus	Njubu	In "lake and Nile.	
Lion	Ntale	Difficult to obtain.	
Leopard	Ngo	" "	
Hartebeest (Jackson's)	Nyemera	" "	
Waterbuck (Kobus defassa)	Nsaina	—	
Bushbuck	Ngabi	These are distinct species and occur together on shores of Lake Albert.	
Harnessed antelope	Ngabi		
Situtunga	Njobe	—	
Uganda cob	Mparaki	Very plentiful.	
Reedbuck	Njaza	—	
Duiker	Nsa	—	
Oribi	Nyajwakyä	—	
Ntalagania	Nende	In forests.	
Wart hog	Ngiri	—	
Bush pig	Mpunu	Very plentiful.	
Giant pig	Nsenge	—	
Colobus monkey	Ngeye	In forests.	
Hyæna	Mpisi	—	
Jackal	Eboha	—	

The greater part of the lesser game, *i.e.*, antelope, etc., is to be found on the plains near the Nile and Kafu Rivers and on the shores of Lake Albert. The most favourable months for shooting are from late January to late April.

Elephants are generally to be found in the forests during the hot weather (from early December until the end of February) and in the more open and sometimes swampy districts during the rains.

Game, Gulu District.

Species.	Acholi Name.	Madi Name.	Sudanese Name.	Remarks.
Elephant ..	Lyec ..	Lahr ..	Fil ..	Fair number in Madi country.
Rhinoceros	Omuka	Ijiji ..	Anaja ..	Small horns ; scarce.
Buffalo ..	Jubi ..	Urdru ..	Gamus ..	Scarce.
Hippopotamus	Ra ..	—	Guloba ..	Lake Albert and Nile and R. Assua.
Giraffe ..	Ri ..	Kuri ..	Zaraf ..	Scarce.
Lion ..	Labwor	Ebi ..	Asad ..	Fairly plentiful Madi area.
Leopard ..	Kwaik	Oddo ..	Nimr ..	Plentiful.
Hartebeest (Jackson's)	Pura ..	Kundru	Teital ..	Fair number in vicinity of Nile
Uganda cob	Til ..	Leza ..	—	—
Reedbuck ..	Lajwar	Aburi ..	Bashmat ..	—
Waterbuck (Kobus defassa)	Apoli ..	Labih ..	Abu-Ru ..	—
Bushbuck ..	Roda ..	Leba ..	Abu Nabah	—
Dik Dik ..	Amur ..	Ogwoh ..	Dig Dig ..	—
Oribi ..	—	Mutseh M Kajalla	ora or	Plentiful.
Wart hog ..	Beul ..	—	Halluf ..	Very plentiful.
Giant pig ..	?	?	?	Scarce.
Bush pig ..	Opego ..	—	—	Scarce.
Hyæna ..	Lalur ..	—	Marfain ..	—
Jackal ..	Tor ..	—	Bashum ..	—
Wild dog ..	—	—	—	Several packs Madi area.
Wild cat ..	—	—	Kutt Barri	Plentiful.
Colobus monkey	—	—	—	In Zoka River forest.

With the exception of elephants, the habitat of the game of the Gulu District lies in those parts of the country which medical and administrative reasons have cleared of native inhabitants.

Game in this district is fairly plentiful, but wild, owing to being much hunted by the natives, who hunt with nets and by means of drives with the aid of dogs. The animals are entrapped in the meshes of the nets and speared.

Organised lines of pits are also made, which are carefully concealed with grass and left for the game to walk into.

Hippopotami are harpooned from canoes.

Species.	Acholi Name.	Remarks.
Elephant	Lyeh or Lyek	—
Rhinoceros	Omuka ..	—
Hippopotamus	Ra ..	—
Giraffe	Ri ..	—
Buffalo	Jubi ..	—
Greater Kudu	Burre ..	—
Waterbuck (<i>Kobus defassa</i>)	Apoli ..	—
Roan antelope	?	—
Oribi	?	—
Dik Dik	Amur ..	—
Duiker	?	—
Grant's Gazelle	?	—
Bushbuck	Roda ..	—
Reedbuck	Lajwar ..	—

As this district has only been administered since August, 1912, much is not known as yet of the habitat of game, or the species to be met with.

Species.	Madi Name.	Sudanese Name.	Remarks.	Game, West Nile District.
Rhinoceros	Ijiji ..	Anaja	Species known as "The White Rhino."	
Hippopotamus	?	Guloba ..	—	
Buffalo	Urdru ..	Gamus ..	—	
Waterbuck	Labih ..	Abu-Ru ..	—	
Oribi	Mutseh ..	Mora or Kajalla ..	—	
Dik Dik	Ogwah ..	Dig Dig ..	—	
Duiker	?	?	—	
Bushbuck	Leba ..	Abunabah ..	—	
Hartebeest (<i>Jackson's</i>)	Kundru ..	Teital ..	—	
Uganda cob	Leza ..	?	—	

The game of the district is to be found adjacent to the banks of the Nile. The watershed is devoid of all game.

Masindi—the headquarters of the Northern Province. Government Stations.

The historical associations connected with Masindi date back to 1864, when Mr. Baker (later Sir S. Baker) and Mrs. Baker paid their first visit to Bunyoro in their search for Lake Albert. Baker was kept, however, under strict surveillance by Kamrasi, who imagined him to entertain designs on his native kingdom. The party were allowed to depart after considerable delay, and then only at the urgent request of the people of the country who feared the "Muleju" (the man with the beard).

In 1871 Sir S. Baker, Lady Baker and their nephew, Lieut. Baker, R.N., paid a second visit to the country, reached Masindi and claimed Bunyoro on behalf of the Government of Egypt as part of the Egyptian Province of Ismailia. (This Province was given up in 1878). Kabarega, son of Kamrasi, the reigning Bunyoro king, adopted an attitude of marked hostility towards Sir S. Baker, which culminated in a treacherous attack at Masindi. Kabarega was beaten off; the Egyptian force ultimately retired on to the Nile. The site of Sir S. Baker's camp at Masindi is preserved; old natives assert they can yet point out the stump of the sacred fig tree under which he camped, as also the trenches which surrounded the encampment of the force which accompanied him.

Very little of further interest occurred until 1893 and 1894, when Colonel Colville occupied with troops the site of what is practically the existing station, and held it for strategical purposes during the guerilla warfare and military operations which the Government were directing against the native king, Kabarega, and his army.

In 1898 Masindi became once again a centre of activity during the days of the mutiny of the Nubian and Sudanese soldiery; Captain Dugmore and Captain Price were in command of the loyal troops.

In 1899 the station was occupied by a regiment of Sixth Infantry, Indian Army, under Lieut.-Colonel Evatt, who was then in command of troops in Bunyoro. Operating from Masindi late in 1899, Lieut.-Colonel Evatt effected the capture of Kabarega and Mwanga, the fugitive kings of Bunyoro and Buganda.

The old fort, which had been built during the days of the mutiny, was dismantled after Kabarega's capture, by Mr. G. Wilson, C.B., in 1900, and the native capital removed to Hoima. From 1900 to 1912 Masindi remained a sub-station in Bunyoro in charge of an Assistant District Commissioner. The construction of a motor-road, together with other considerations, resulted, in 1911-12, in a decision to re-establish this station as the Government headquarters of the Northern Province and of the district of Bunyoro. The native Government followed the administration to their old home.

A new station was laid out and surveyed in 1912, in which consideration has been devoted to future possibilities of development.

The development, which showed signs of birth in 1912, took definite root in 1913. British firms inaugurated a successful agency and forwarding business with the Belgian

Congo and were responsible for the expenditure of considerable capital with the object of encouraging the growing industry of cotton and the culture of silk. An hotel was built and private motor transport put on the Masindi Port-Butiaba road by the Congo Estates, Ltd. Residential and commercial plots were applied for by European firms and motor services inaugurated by Government and private capital. The advent of European planters in the neighbourhood together with an increased commercial European population combined towards the formation of a club for purposes of recreation and amusement.

Buildings are springing up quickly in the township, which should take its place at no distant date among the more important and growing towns in the Protectorate.

HOIMA.—Hoima first appears in history in 1894 as one of the chain of forts encircling Bunyoro, and was built by Colonel Colville and Major Owen in January or February of that year. The original fort, two miles north of the present district office, was formed into the chief administrative centre of the district of Bunyoro in 1900 by Mr. George Wilson, C.B., In 1903 the unhealthy situation of the locality necessitated the station's removal to its present position. Until June, 1912, Hoima remained the district headquarters of Bunyoro, as well as the centre of the native Government.

The station and district is now administered by an Assistant District Commissioner who is immediately responsible to the District Commissioner at Masindi.

BUTIABA.—The headquarters of the Lake Albert Marine Transport Service. Butiaba possesses a small natural harbour. The site of the station was selected in 1906.

An increasing trade with the Belgian Congo is anticipated with the facilities of communication afforded by the Busoga Railway and the through motor service between Masindi Port and Butiaba.

Excellent fishing is to be obtained in Lake Albert and the waters of the Victoria Nile below that lake. Mahseer tackle is required for handling the Nile perch (Arabic "Baggara," Lunyoro "Puti"), a sluggish heavy fish of good edible qualities. Specimens of this variety have been landed weighing from 75 to 100 lbs. on the rod and line, whilst the two record catches reached 135 and 197 lbs. respectively. Fine tiger fish, 10 to 15 lbs. are also to be found in these waters and afford the expert angler capital sport. They prove hard fighters, and their sharp, closely

fitting teeth render wire traces necessary for successfully coping with their struggles.

Owing to a very high rise in the Albert Lake level during 1916-17, Butiaba has been found unsuitable as a permanent site and consideration is being given to its removal to another site.

MASINDI PORT.—This is a marine and transport station only.

The land adjacent to the river is unfortunately low lying, swampy and unhealthy.

Masindi Port is the eastern terminus of the motor road linking the Lake Kioga and Albert Lake flotillas.

GULU.—The station of Gulu dates from February, 1911, when the administrative post, which had been placed in 1907 on the Nile at Koba, was found to be no longer necessary, in view of the reversion of the Lado Enclave to the Government of the Sudan.

The first Government post in the district was founded in 1894 by Major Owen at Wadelai on the Nile. This station was moved in 1906, for reasons of health, to Mount Keyo and called Fatiko, the name of the sub-division of the country in which the hill is situated. In 1907 District Headquarters were moved once again to Koba, on the banks of the Nile, where they remained until the final move to Gulu took place in 1911.

In 1912 the administration of the Nile districts of Gulu, Nimule and Gondokoro was transferred from Nimule to Gulu, Nimule becoming Sudan territory in April, 1914.

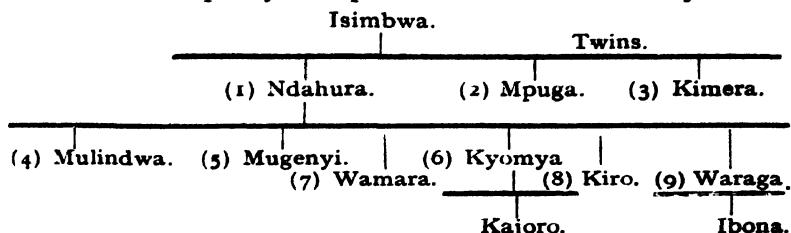
KITGUM.—This station was started as a temporary headquarters of the Chua district in August, 1912.

Provincial History.

Like that of all uncivilized and illiterate people, native history dates back to comparatively recent times. To legend and to the stories of witch doctors we owe the few details we possess of the Banyoro kings. Of the history of the Nilotic tribes we know but little.

Aged storytellers have passed the legends of the mythical kings of Bunyoro from father to son. Memory has failed the native little. Glamour of deity and superstition appeal to their uneducated minds. We hear the story of the origin of their race from gods, who sprang from the fires of the crater lakes of Toro (once included in Bunyoro), who in turn begat the Bachwezi. Legend tells of nine Bachwezi, possessed of life unending, who knew

not sickness or death. This is their genealogical tree known and kept by the present Mukama of Bunyoro :—



No. 2 is Kamarasi's, Kabarega's and Duhaga's (present Mukama) direct line.

No. 3 went to Uganda ; said to be the correct ancestor of the line of Baganda Kings.

The Bachwezi rulers were reputed craftsmen. To them is attributed the credit of first smelting ore from the ironstone of the country. It is believed that they invaded Bunyoro—some say from the north—that they subjugated the people, and instructed them in quasi-religious beliefs. They eventually passed from the country to the land across the Victoria Nile and were thenceforth lost.

It seems probable that the ancient Egyptians penetrated as far south as Bunyoro in search of slaves and ivory. It is reasonable, perhaps, to suggest that the Egyptians also instructed the people in smelting and iron work. Little doubt exists that the simple native knowledge of surgery came from ancient Egypt. Egyptian plants still exist in the country. Classical history tells us that Herodotus travelled some distance up the Nile and gained information of Lake Albert, Lake Edward and Lake Victoria. Aristotle himself wrote of the Pigmies, while Ptolemy, in the 5th Egyptian dynasty, mapped a course of the Nile to a great lake and a mountain (Ruwenzori).

From the remote and mythical ages we come thus through intervals of time to a more tangible era of rule ; to the administration of the kingdoms of Bunyoro, Buganda and of Toro, and possibly of Busoga and Ankole, from one central government in Bunyoro. Feudal principalities or caliphates in Buganda and Toro were conferred later from Bunyoro on the elder sons of one Lukedi. History relates that these impetuous princes delayed but little in the assertion of their independence ; feuds, raids and war became of common occurrence between the Baganda and the Banyoro, to the advantage of the Baganda, who possessed superior physical and mental capabilities.

Busoga and Ankole also severed their allegiance. Bunyoro and Toro remained, however, united as a kingdom until recent years.

The first native ruler we hear of, known then by the title of Okali, was believed to be a Mukedi named Wunyi. At the time of his accession, a division of the entire kingdom—which until then had included Toro, Buganda, a strip of land in what is now Congo territory on the further side of Lake Albert with, possibly, Busoga and Ankole—was made between Wunyi, his brothers and relations. Tribute was paid to Bunyoro by these relations after the division, but in diminishing quantities year by year, until Kato, who ruled in Buganda, refused to offer his brother further allegiance and declared Buganda a separate kingdom.

Wunyi reigned nine years and was followed by Okaki, who was succeeded by Oyo, a great king with many wives and a family estimated at 4,000 children. Oyo reigned with honour and lived to a great age. He was succeeded by Chwa, a warlike monarch, obsessed with the greed for cattle. Disease (rinderpest?) attacked the cattle in Bunyoro during his reign. To combat its ravages orders were given to ensure the total destruction of all infected or suspected animals, a procedure which resulted in denuding Bunyoro of its herds. Raids and expeditions followed, directed principally against the pastoral rich cattle country of Ankole. The Bachwezi, legend tells us, lured this king to his death by lowing in imitation of cattle in a forest by the roadside, when Chwa was returning from a foray in Ankole. Lusting for more cows and bullocks, the king pushed into impenetrable forest and was not seen again.

Dunego, his sister, succeeded him. She was soon deposed in favour of her son, Wunyi. During the reign of Wunyi II., Toro and Ankole, following the example set by Buganda, revolted and established for themselves governments and constitutions of their own.

After the death of Wunyi II., a reign of terror and bloodshed followed under Olimi. Buganda was ravaged, Ankole forced to submission and Bukedi laid waste. Towards the end of his reign, all the tribes which had been nominally subject to Bunyoro revolted.

Olimi was succeeded by his son, Insansa, who followed in his father's footsteps of bloodshed and murder. It was not until his son, Duhega, succeeded to the throne that Bunyoro became tranquil. Duhega was succeeded by Dubongoza, whose reign opened turbulently with internal dissension and disloyalty. The Baganda conquered Bun-

yoro to the Kafu River, the present district boundary. The south of Toro embarked during this reign on independent government.

Dubongoza was succeeded by Mugenyi, who in turn was succeeded by the well-known king, Kamrasi.

The reign of Kamrasi is associated with the arrival from Khartoum, via Gondokoro, in 1864, of Mr. and Mrs. Baker (afterwards Sir S. and Lady Baker) in Bunyoro, and incidentally with first association of the native with firearms. Kamrasi viewed Baker's intentions, the discovery and exploration of Lake Albert, with avowed mistrust. It was inconceivable to him that any man should travel so far as this celebrated explorer had journeyed to see water only. The Englishman was kept virtually a prisoner, as Kamrasi feared that he harboured designs on his kingdom. It was due to the pressure which was brought to bear by the people of the country, who feared the presence of the "muleju" (man with a beard), that Mr. and Mrs. Baker were permitted to leave the country.

Kamrasi's reign was attended throughout with great cruelty, bloodshed and tyranny. He died soon after Baker's departure north on his return journey to Egypt. Kabarega succeeded him, a native despot of great cruelty. His succession was at first disputed by his brothers. These were, however, defeated in a decisive action in Bugangadzi.

Kabarega built his capital at Bulyasoja, adjoining the present site of Masindi station.

In 1871 Sir Samuel Baker, accompanied by Lady Baker and Lieut. Baker, R.N., returned to Bunyoro and claimed the country on behalf of the Government of Egypt as a district of the Egyptian Province of Ismailia. Kabarega adopted an attitude of hostility towards the party, and attacked Baker at Masindi in 1872, but was beaten off. The Egyptian force ultimately retired to on the Nile, pursued fruitlessly by Kabarega's forces, returning to Gondokoro in 1873. It is said that Kabarega's attitude towards Sir S. Baker devolved on the accidental dropping of cigar ash in his milk in 1864, on the occasion of Baker's first visit to Kamrasi. Kabarega feared he had been bewitched.

Native events, while Kabarega was engaged with Baker, had followed one another with rapidity. His own brother, Kabugumire, had plotted with Mtesa, Kabaka of Buganda, for his overthrow and the conquest of Bunyoro by the Baganda. War followed with Toro against the Kabaka Nyaika. The Baganda annexed Bugangadzi, which was then part of Bunyoro. An attempt by the

Baganda to conquer Bugaya failed. Mwanga, the successor of Mtesa, planned a second invasion of Bunyoro, but was defeated at the Kafu River. This failure was followed by others.

It was not until 1890 that European intervention in internal politics once again made itself felt when Capt. Lugard entered the country and took 400 to 600 soldiers, once Emin Pasha's, from Kavalli. In 1893 Major Owen entered Bunyoro with an army, followed early in 1894 by Colonel Colville. Their objective was the capture and subjugation of Kabarega. Months of guerilla warfare followed. Advised by his chiefs and elders, Kabarega ultimately decided to surrender, but changed his mind and retired into Bukedi. From Bukedi, mindful of an old promise from the Mahdi of assistance, should he desire at any time to expel the white man from his country, Kabarega despatched a mission to seek help. The Mahdi, however, had died in 1885, and his successor, the Khalifa, was otherwise engaged. The members of the mission were made prisoners with the exception of two, who returned with the discouraging news of failure.

The outbreak of mutiny among the Soudanese battalions in Uganda, in 1897, gave Kabarega fresh courage. He joined forces with Mwanga, the Kabaka of Buganda. The Soudanese, unfortunately for his purpose, refused to work hand-in-hand with the native allies, and disaster followed.

Kabarega and Mwanga fled to Bukedi, but were captured by Lieut.-Colonel Evatt late in 1899.

Kabarega's reign was stained by acts of barbarous cruelty and much bloodshed. He was subsequently deported to the Seychelles where he lives, virtually a prisoner, on a small annuity allowed him by the British Government. He left behind him an enormous family of over 250 children.

Kabarega was succeeded in 1900 by Kitaimbwa, who held office at Hoima, to which the native capital had been moved, until 1902, when he was deposed by the Protectorate Government for incompetence.

The present native ruler or "Mukama" is Andereya Duhaga, a son (about the fortieth) of Kabarega.

Andereya is a Protestant, can read and write, and is taking considerable interest in the development of his country. He owns a large modern house at Masindi which he has built at a personal cost to himself of £600. It is furnished comfortably on European lines. In his study or office in this building he conducts the Native Government's administration of Bunyoro district, with the help

of many native clerks and such modern conveniences as typewriters, etc.

The native history of the tribes which inhabit the country bordering the Nile (Bahr-el-Gebel) is not known.

The European element was first heard of in the early sixties. At Gondokoro, an Austrian mission station was inaugurated by a few Roman Catholic priests from Khartoum. Information as to the length of their stay is uncertain.

In 1862-3 Grant and Speke passed through what is now the Gulu and the Madi and Bari districts, and met Baker at Gondokoro.

On the 15th April, 1871, Sir S. Baker arrived at Gondokoro in the official capacity of Governor of the new Egyptian Province of Ismailia, accompanied by Lady Baker, Lieut-Baker, R.N., and 1,900 native troops, with a commission to establish an Egyptian Government in the higher waters of the Nile and suppress the slave traffic. For two years Sir Samuel Baker remained in this part of the Province, using Fatiko (Baker's Fatiko), near Mount Apin, 15 miles north of the present station of Gulu, as his headquarters. It was during these years that the expedition to Kabarega's court in Bunyoro was made and Bunyoro annexed to Egypt.

Sir Samuel Baker returned to Khartoum in 1873.

Two years later, towards the close of 1875, General Gordon despatched an expedition from Khartoum through the country south of Gondokoro under Emin Bey, better known as Emin Pasha. The objective of this expedition was Mtesa's capital in Buganda.

During the same year an Italian named Gessi, who had served as interpreter to the British forces in the Crimea, circumnavigated Lake Albert. Gessi was at this time in the service of Egypt.

In 1878 Bunyoro, which Sir S. Baker had annexed for Egypt, was given up. Emin Pasha, however, remained from 1883 to 1887 as Governor of Equatoria. After the fall of Khartoum in 1885, Emin was left on the Upper Nile to his own resources, with his army of semi-mutinous troops as the only representatives of law, order or civilization. He occupied Dufile and afterwards used Wadelai as his headquarters.

It was not until December, 1887, that Stanley arrived at Kavalli (then part of Bunyoro), near Lake Albert, in his search for Emin Pasha. He waited for him until the following April. Nine months to a year later, in 1889, after enormous delays caused by the imprisonment of Emin by his soldiers and the late arrival of Stanley's rearguard,

Emin Pasha and Stanley left Kavalli for Mombasa, and the present Northern Province passed for four years out of the rule or control of Great Britain.

In 1893 it was, however, considered expedient that the interests of Great Britain, as defined in the Anglo-German treaty, should be consolidated in the Nile valley as they had been in Buganda. Vague rumours were afloat that expeditions were being equipped in the Congo Free State and the French Congo to acquire the Nile for their respective Governments.

Colonel Colville, who was in command of British interests in Bunyoro, accordingly despatched Major Owen to Wadelai with the object of trying to discover the whereabouts of a garrison of Soudanese troops supposed to be in existence under the command of Mulah Bey, of enlisting them if possible, of learning the native attitude towards British control and of annexing once and for all the territory adjoining the great waterway.

Owen reached Wadelai on February 1st, 1894, found and interviewed Sheikh Ali, and made a formal treaty with him by which it was agreed :—

“ That Ali, Sheikh of Wadelai, will at no time whatever cede any of his territory to any other Power, or enter into any agreement, treaty or arrangement with any Foreign Government except through and with the consent of the Government of Her Majesty the Queen of England,”

(Signed) Ali (his X mark).

(Signed) Roderic Owen, Major.

(Signed) Reban Raschid, Effendi.

Thus ended a race for the headwaters of the Nile, between England, France and Belgium.

There is little more to chronicle. England has held and controlled the Nile since the day of the treaty ; military posts and administrative stations have been established. Progress with the natives has been evolved by peaceful methods. Dervish raids, so common between 1870, and 1890, are no more known. Slavery has been suppressed and the country is being gradually opened up under civil administration.



Photo by Guy Eden.

BARI NATIVES FIRE-MAKING.

CHAPTER VII.

THE RUDOLF PROVINCE.

This Province lies to the north-east of the Protectorate, bordering on the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan and Ethiopia. It comprises an area of 14,138 square miles, of which area 1,152 square miles is the water of Lake Rudolf.

The boundaries are as follows :—

Commencing at the point of intersection of the meridian 34° E. with the parallel of latitude 5° N., the boundary follows the boundary of the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan along the parallel of latitude 5° N. to where it intersects the marsh of the River Kibish (Sacchi); thence it follows the boundary of Ethiopia along that marsh to the shore of Lake Rudolf at the northern extremity of Sanderson Gulf; thence along the western shore of the peninsula on the eastern shore of Sanderson Gulf to its most southerly point; thence a straight line through Lake Rudolf to the mouth of the River Suam or Turkwel; thence along the thalweg of the River Suam or Turkwel to the point where it meets the boundary of the Eastern Province; thence in a north-westerly direction along the Eastern Province boundary to where it meets the Northern Province boundary. From this point the boundary follows the eastern boundary of the Northern Province to the point of commencement.

Generally speaking, the country lying to the east of longitude 34° is gently undulating and is covered with short grass and thin thorn scrub. The country becomes poorer and barer as you proceed east towards Turkana, in which district there is scarcely any grass; and sand and stones, with a sparse sprinkling of bare thorn trees, meet the eye in all directions. North of Mount Debasien, and running in a N.N.E. direction through Manimani, Jie and Dodosi, is a stretch of country which lies at an average height of about 4,000 feet and forms a plateau from which the country falls away fairly gradually to the west, but drops sharply to the east over the escarpment formed by the chain of hills running through Magosi and connecting with Mount Maroto to the south and Mount Singhote to the north. The country in the neighbourhood of Mount Jie is very open, and short grass plains with hardly any trees extend south as far as

Topography.

Manimani, east to Magosi, and north almost to Lokutas. This country strongly resembles the Athi plains in East Africa. West of longitude 34° , a long grass country is entered very similar to that found in the Lango and Acholi districts. The country, generally, being flat and open, the various mountains and hills stand out very clearly and can be seen from long distances.

**Native
Government.**

A pastoral people of semi-nomadic habits, the tribes inhabiting the Rudolf Province have no system of chiefs, and have, hitherto, had no acknowledged authority. The elders of each village or group of villages have some slight influence with the younger members of such group, but they have no real authority whatsoever, and their wishes or instructions are completely ignored if they do not coincide with the wishes or ideals of the general body, or of any individual member. No tribunals exist for the settlement of disputes, which are consequently decided upon the principle of " Might is Right."

**Crops and
Food Supplies**

Milk, frequently mixed with blood, is the staple food. This is supplemented with mtama grain and some beans. The Karamojans do not cultivate at all extensively and seldom have more grain than is barely sufficient for their own requirements. The uncertain and scanty rainfall under which the whole country suffers tends, no doubt, to make cultivation a somewhat disheartening business. In addition, the cultivation is almost entirely carried on by means of wooden implements, and too often the same piece of ground is planted year after year after a slight scratching of the surface which hardly extends to an inch in depth. The Jie and Dodosi cultivate somewhat larger areas than the Karamojans, and after a good harvest a certain quantity of food is obtainable in these districts. Iron wire is the principal article of barter, and one load of this (value Rs. 12 at Mbale) will purchase 20 to 25 loads of food. The Turkana, owing to the desert and barren nature of their country, have practically no area at all under cultivation. The mountain tribes of Nakwai, Lobor, Nangiya, Teretania and Logire cultivate extensively mtama, beans, and muvelli, but the population of the two first-mentioned is not at all large and they have, as a rule, not much surplus over and above their own needs. A considerable amount of food is nearly always obtainable from the Nangiya, Teretania, and Logire ; more especially from the latter, who cultivate very largely and have a considerable population.

Roads.

A road with an average width of 12 ft. runs from Kilim in the south to Tshudi-Tshudi in Dodoso, a distance of 160 miles. This is intersected by a road leading from

Maroto to the border of the Teso District near Adachal, and by a road from Loyoro to the Chua district border near Meriss. Owing to the prevalence of cotton soil these roads are soft in the rains.

Name of Camp.	Distance, Hours.	Remarks.	Camps from Kilim to Tshudi-Tshudi.
Kilim	—	Good camping place with Bandas and running water from Kilim River. Native food obtainable. Game plentiful down stream in dry weather.	
Karita	3	Camping ground with Bandas. Water by digging in river bed. A little food. Fairly open thorn bush country.	
Pari Pari	2½	Camping ground with Bandas. Water from deep water hole. A little food. Open country. No shade.	
Katabok	3	S.E. foothill of Mount Debasien. Water from spring under the hill. No natives. No food. Cotton soil.	
Nakalele	2½	N.E. foothill of Mount Debasien. Water from spring under hill. No natives. No food. Cotton soil.	
Kanamut	4	Scrub country. Water by digging in river bed. No natives. No food.	
Nelechon	3½	Scrub country. Water from water holes in valley, often choked and muddy. No natives. No food. Cotton soil.	
Mani Mani	3¾	Camping ground with Bandas. Water by digging in river bed. Food obtainable. Cotton soil.	
Nyakwakwa	1½	Camping ground with Bandas. Water by digging in river bed. Food obtainable. Cotton soil. Open country.	
Lochoworyan	2½	Camping ground with Bandas. Water from river bed. Open plain. Cotton soil. Food obtainable.	
Apedet	1¼	Ditto.	
Kangole	1¼	Camp with Bandas. Water by digging. Plenty of shade. Cotton soil. Food obtainable. The Maroto-Soroti road crosses the Kilim-Tshudi Tshudi road here.	

Name of Camp.		Dis- tance, Hours.	Remarks.
Logito Nakasogwa ..		2	Camp with Bandas. Water from river bed. Food obtainable. Cotton soil. Open plain.
Lopei		3	Ditto.
Kamolo		4	Small rocky hill just south of Mount Tororo. Water in rainy season from deep pools in rocks but not permanent and often short in dry season. Open country resembling the plains of East Africa. Game plentiful. No natives. No food.
Longiro		9	Camp with Bandas. Water by digging in river bed. The only permanent water in the whole of the Jie section. Food obtainable. Open country. Cotton soil.
Lokwakipi		4	Water in deep rock pools which often run dry. Open country. Very little shade. No natives. No food. Cotton soil.
Kopus		4½	Camp with Bandas. Water by digging in Chibak river bed. Open country. Food obtainable. Cotton soil. Dodoso section commences. Loyoro post four hours east of camp. The Loyoro-Kitgum road crosses the Kilim-Tshudi Tshudi road here.
Tshudi Tshudi ..		4	Camp with Bandas. Water by digging. Broken and wooded country. Northern limit of inhabited area of the Dodoso section. From here a good native track traverses the Dodoso escarpment to Loyoro post via Kapelpolot, Timu and Nakot.
Camps from Adachal to Moroto.	Adachal	—	On the Teso District border.
	Okwangasi	16	Water from swampy pools. Open grass plains. No natives. No food.
	Kangole	24	Camp with Bandas. Water by digging in river bed. Food plentiful. The Kilim-Tshudi Tshudi road is crossed here. No intermediate water on the plain in the dry season. Open country.
	Moroto	16	Temporary headquarters of the Rudolf Province.

**Water
Supplies.**

East of longitude 34° there are no permanent streams throughout the whole area with the exception of the

Kilim and Turkwel Rivers. The other principal streams have deep, sandy beds in which the water only stands in pools during the rains, and has to be obtained by digging in the dry season. "Ngurunga," large holes in the rocks, are frequently found in the hills and some of these contain a large quantity of water. In the mountainous district west of longitude 34° a fair number of small streams are found at the base of the hills, but these quickly become lost, and water is difficult to find in the plains between the mountains in the dry season.

The following game is found distributed throughout the Province :—

Species.	Distribution.
Elephant	Neighbourhood of Mounts Debasien, Nakwai, Maroto, Murosokar, Nangiya and Logire. (Said to have been very numerous in the past, but now scarce.)
Giraffe	Found throughout.
Zebra	Very numerous near and to the east of Mount Debasien, and in the neighbourhood of Mount Jie.
Rhino.....	Found in the neighbourhood of Mount Debasien, and numerous near the Magosi hills; along the Kideppo River, between Nangiya and Dodinga; and in the plains between Nangiya and Teretania.
Eland	Found in neighbourhood of Mount Jie and Magosi. Numerous.
Greater Kudu	Found on Mount Maroto and Debasien.
Lesser Kudu	Found on Mounts Jie and Teretania, and among the Magosi hills.
Roan	Found in the plains south-east of Nangiya, and between Nangiya and Agoro.
Oryx	Fairly plentiful in the Magosi neighbourhood.
Kongoni	Found throughout. Very numerous near Mount Jie.
Topi	Numerous near Mount Jie.
Waterbuck	Found near the Kilim River and north end of Nangiya. Not numerous.
Grant's Gazelle ...	Found throughout. Very numerous in neighbourhood of Mount Jie and Magosi hills.
Oribi	Found in plain between Logire and Agoro.

No permanent Government stations have yet been opened in the Rudolf Province. In May, 1911, a Touring Officer was appointed, whose chief duties were to cause the withdrawal of all traders who had been allowed to enter these districts on an Outlying Districts Licence, and who had nearly all been engaged in gun-running, poaching and raiding, and to endeavour to get into touch with the natives with a view to the future administration of the Province.

Government
Stations.

In July, 1912, a District Commissioner in charge of the Province was appointed, but this appointment was still considered as a travelling appointment since the time was not ripe for the opening of any permanent stations.

Tribal Notes. Although in the past in a state of constant inter-tribal strife, the Karamoja, Jie, Dodosi, Dabosa and Turkana are really all branches of one tribe, with language, customs and habits in common (*vide* Anthropology).

The men are tall and of very fine physique, doubtless due to the fact that their staple diet consists of milk and blood.

History. Nothing is known as to the past history of these tribes. They are a semi-nomadic people, possessed of large flocks and herds, which in the dry weather they are compelled to move from place to place in search of water and good grazing ground. For many years there has been a caravan route through the country largely used by Swahilis and other traders engaged in trade in ivory. The natives are treacherous and generally untrustworthy, and porters who strayed behind their safaris were almost invariably murdered.

In recent years, an extensive gun-running business was carried on by Swahilis and Abyssinians who, by purchasing rifles in Abyssinia and selling them to the natives for cows or ivory, were enabled to carry on a very lucrative business, but this has now been put an end to.

The gradual pacification and administration which were in hand prior to the European War have had to be suspended. It is, however, proposed to resume civil occupation at an early date, when it is hoped further development can be proceeded with.

CHAPTER VIII.

ANTHROPOLOGY.

The natives of the Uganda Protectorate belong to the negro type and may be divided into four main classes, namely :—

The Pigmy Prognathous.

The Bantu.

The Nilotic.

The Hamitic.

THE PIGMY PROGNATHOUS.—This type is considered first because it is the most primitive, and probably closely resembles the original type of negro which, originating in Southern Asia, migrated west through Arabia into Africa. This group includes not only the dwarfs of the great Central African forests, but also those natives of normal height found from the Semliki to Lake Kivu.

At present they are of little practical importance in the Protectorate, as the majority of them are on the extreme western outskirts. Though occurring mostly in the Semliki valley, the type also makes its appearance in the large forests of Kiagwe and on the northern and western slopes of Mount Elgon. Their most distinguishing features are the remarkable size of the *ala nasi*, the long upper lip, and the comparative length of arm and shortness of leg. They appear to have no language peculiar to their race, but to speak in a more or less corrupt form of language of the tribe nearest to them. The Pigmies are remarkably intelligent, and have a good idea of drawing. In their natural state they wear nothing at all, even in the way of adornment, though some bore the upper lip with two to eight holes. The males are circumcised, and both sexes have the upper incisors and canines sharpened to a point. They have practically no religion and no trace of ancestor worship. They have no settled Government and no hereditary chief. Marriage is by purchase of the girl, polygamy depending on their wealth in barter goods. They bury their dead. They keep no domestic animals except the common yellow dog. They do not till the soil at all, but live on the raw flesh of birds, beasts and reptiles, honey and various grubs. Their huts are very small and primitive, being only about three feet high ; only one person sleeps in a hut ; even in a family each child has its own hut. They have drums and are very fond of dancing.

Closely allied to the Pigmies are the Lendu, the Bambuba, the Babira, the Baamba, the Batwa and Bakiga.

THE LENDU inhabit the country which lies to the west of the southern half of Lake Albert. They were brought into Uganda in hundreds by the Soudanese soldiers when they were transferred by Captain (now Sir Frederick) Lugard; and there are colonies of them at most Government stations in the Protectorate. They have arisen by the intermixture of the Pigmy Prognathous with the Hamitic type. They are conspicuous for their short legs, which are out of all proportion to the size of their body. They let their hair grow as long as it will, and they plait string into it so that the head is surrounded by a dirty mop of small plaits full of grease or clay. The men wear a small piece of barkcloth, but the women wear nothing at all. In the stations, however, both sexes now wear cotton loin-cloths. The men practise circumcision. They do not knock out their front teeth as do their neighbours. Their huts are fairly large and their thatching is peculiar, the layers of grass being cut off level below, so that they overlap in frounces. Their main food is grain. They excel in basket and mat-making, dyeing their materials in various colours and weaving in divers patterns. They bury their dead in their huts which are then abandoned. They have no religion, but practise ancestor worship.

THE BAMBUBA, THE BABIRA AND THE BAAMBA, who dwell near the Congo and the Semliki, all have allied customs. All practise cicatrization (scarring the body), some to an enormous extent. All were probably cannibals, but this practice is dying out.

THE BATWA are a tribe of semi-pigmies, averaging 4 feet 6 inches high, whose main home is the mountainous forest country to the south-west of Lake Bunyonyi. They are found in British territory in the Kigezi District. They are a wild race and were, until their raids were put a stop to by European occupation, the terror of their more peaceful neighbours. They excel in hunting.

THE BAKIGA, who inhabit the district of Rukiga, are for the most part a sturdy, independent race, wearing a single skin as clothing, and their hair often worked out into long tassels. They are much addicted to hard drinking.

THE BANTU NEGROES.

THE BANTU.—This type differs but little from the West African type, but it has been modified by intermixture with the Hamitic and Negroid races from the north. The bulk of the population of the Central and Western Provinces of the Protectorate belongs to this group.

THE BAGANDA.—The features of the Baganda are pleasant, and their expression is mild and agreeable. The aristocracy are largely a blend of the true Muganda with Hamitic blood, and have skins of a much lighter shade than those of the peasants, which are very black. Their hair is very thick and woolly, but is generally kept short. The Baganda alone of all Bantu tribes in East Equatorial Africa do not mutilate their persons in any way. They do not knock out or sharpen any teeth nor do they drill their lips or ears, and they do not practise cicatrization. They have many remarkable characteristics which mark the tribe as a superior type to others of the same family. Their progressive tendencies and the eagerness with which they welcome civilization are their most noticeable characteristics. In the early days of Mutesa's reign the Baganda are said to have numbered three millions. Unfortunately, during the last fifty years, civil war, famine and syphilis have wrought havoc among them, and during the last twenty years their numbers have decreased still more owing to sleeping sickness, which has been responsible for a large number of deaths. British rule, with the spread of Christianity and general education, may eventually check this decline in their numbers, but unfortunately so many Baganda women are sterile that it is not likely to effect this for a long time. The women neglect their children shamefully, and the infant mortality is in consequence very great.

The Baganda as a race are cleaner than their neighbours in their habits, and they keep their houses and courtyards very clean and, alone of all negro tribes, use privies instead of the open ground, but generally these are placed far too near the house.

Both sexes used to wear bracelets and necklets of iron, copper and ivory, but they are not much given to adornment. They are particular in covering their whole body from chest to ankle. Barkcloth was formerly the national dress, but this is rapidly giving way to coloured "lesos" in the women and white "kanzus" in the men. The Baganda build very fine huts, with partitions inside, elaborately covered with the neat reedwork so characteristic of their tribe. But the hut ten years ago gave way to the wattle and daub house of European style, and now this is being replaced by brick houses with thatched roofs and, in the case of the larger chiefs, by two-storied brick houses with corrugated iron roofs. Every Buganda house of importance has attached to it a series of neatly-kept courtyards surrounded by a high fence of reed-work (the universal "Egisakate"). The Baganda are good road makers and make causeways over swamps, but their roads go from hill-

top to hill-top in a straight line, irrespective of the steepness of the slope. The Buganda canoe is a thing peculiar to Buganda, though the art of making them will probably die out. The Basese were the chief canoe-builders. The Baganda make good pottery, mats and ropes. Their musical instruments are flutes, harps, horns, and drums. These last are a national institution, the kings' drums and drum beats all being named individually. Each Saza or district sends in drummers to Mengo for a month to beat the King's drums, taking turns in rotation. They keep the usual domestic animals; their staple food is "matoke" (bananas) and their drink "mwenge" and "mubisi" (fermented and unfermented banana beer). They have many native doctors, who have medicines for nearly all diseases; many drugs are given with disastrous results, especially during pregnancy and labour. Formerly they worshipped spirits, but the bulk of the population is now Christian or Mahomedan.

The Baganda are divided into a number of social or kinship divisions each of which is an Ekika or clan. The legendary origin of the Clan and Totem divisions emanated from the decree issued by Kintu, the first king of the Baganda, that certain animals should be taboo to certain families. The real reason for this decree was to prevent the wholesale slaughter of game, as in those days the chief means of livelihood was by hunting. Each family therefore refrained from slaying or eating that particular animal which they considered had brought them ill-luck.

The Clan (Ekika) is a family who trace their origin to one ancestor and have common totems (emiziro), which were held as sacred and never destroyed. All the men of the same generation in a clan are called brothers and all the women sisters. The younger generation call the men father and the women mother. Members of a clan were not permitted to inter-marry. At marriage a wife adopted her husband's totems and brought up her children to do likewise, but there was no necessity for children, with the exception of the first and last born, to respect their mother's totems and very often they ignored them entirely when they grew up.

Each clan had its family estates which were called Butaka (inheritance) and governed by a Mutaka (chief or father) who was responsible for the behaviour of the branch (siga) of the clan over which he ruled. The father of the whole clan had the most important estate. One of his chief duties was to select any person, male or female, whom he considered suitable and send them as life servants to the Kabaka.



Photo by Miss Chevallier.

BAGANDA WOMEN.

The following is a list of the clans and their totems :—

Clan (Ekika).	Totem (Muziro).	Peculiarities.
Lion (mpologoma)	Eagle (mpungu)	The lion, leopard and eagle are sacred to the king and from these skins the royal rug is made. The rain water clan (mazi) has since joined the lion clan.
Leopard (ngo)	Genet (kasimba)	
Colobus monkey (ngeye)	Small monkey (munyungu)	Kintu's wife Nambi was descended from this clan.
Otter (ngonge) ..	Genet (kasimba)	Royal bark-cloth makers. They have been joined by the crow (namunyona) and jackal (kibe).
Grasshopper (nseuene)	Locust (nabangogo)	The grasshopper is eaten by the Baganda and considered a delicacy.
Civet Cat (fumbe)	Frog (kikere)	The most important clan prior to Kintu's arrival.
Elephant (njovu)	Hippo- tamus (nvubu)	Descended from Mukalo (Kintu's herdsman).
Lung-fish (mamba)	1. A small fish (muguya) 2. Another species of fish (katumba) or frog (kikere)	Largest of all the clans.
Mushroom (butiko)	1. Snail (nsonko) 2. Ivory disc (nsanga)	The king's canoe-builders and sailors. Gabunga is the chief admiral.
*Sheep (ndiga) ..	Lion (mpologoma)	The royal gate-makers. They have been joined by the Katinvuma (small seed).
Buffalo (mbogo) ..	Eland (ntamu)	Trace their origin to Mbale, who lived at Mbale in the Mawokota district.
*Oribi (mpewo) ..	Grey rat (kayози)	The royal carriers.
†Small seed (katinvuma)	(All kinds of beads)	The Kibare, or representative of the king, who discharges all the king's private business in his absence, is chosen from this clan.
Small grey monkey (nkima)	Entrails of animals (byenda)	Supplied carriers for deities when they were taken to war or when they were brought to the king. They have since joined the mushroom (Butiko) clan.
*Bird (Nyonyi) ..	Another kind of bird (kunyuvu)	They hold the chieftainship of Mugema.
*Edible rat (musu)	Another rat (kayози)	They had charge of Buganda, one of the most powerful and dreaded of all the fetishes. King's private police.

Clan (Ekika).	Totem (Muziro).	Peculiarities.
*Yam (kobe) ..	Another yam (kaba)	Had charge of the bow and arrow with which the king on ending the period of mourning for his father when he ascended to the throne, shot his scape-goat.
Bean (mpindi) ..	Wild bean (kindira)	Royal bark-cloth makers, and also had charge of four of the royal canoes and provided the crews for them.
*† Bush-buck (ngabi)	Kind of grass (jerengese)	Not allowed into king's presence, because King Kimera was killed by a member. Women of this clan could become the wives of the king but were never allowed to rear a male child. Have since joined the Monkey (Nkima) clan.
† Dog (mbwa) ..	Iron bell	Guardians of the tombs of the kings' mothers.
Jackal (kibe) ..	Puff adder (mpiri)	Had charge of the royal canoe (Namwige) and manned it. Have since allied themselves to the Otter clan.
Hippopotamus (nvubu)	Tortoise (nfudu)	They built and manned the royal canoes and also constructed the royal shields and weapons. All their estates with one exception bordered on the lake.
*Ntalaganya ..	Tree fungus (malere)	Guardians of the royal fetish Lugala, a large gourd. Also a hunting clan who looked after the king's dog Mukoza.
*Reed-buck (njaza)	Antelope (njugulu)	Royal elephant hunters; have always lived in Mabira Forest (Kyagwe).
*Heart (mutima)	Lungs (muangwe)	Renowned as basket makers.
Tailless cow (nte teriko mukiro)	Crested crane (ngali)	Royal smiths.
*† Crow (namunoya)	Hearts of animals	Commonly called Bandjala. Have since joined the Otter clan.

*These clans were debarred from presenting a prince as candidate for the throne, although the king might choose a wife from them. In the event, however, of a male child being born the child was killed at birth or, if allowed to live, could never ascend to the throne. On account of this members of these clans allied their daughters to other clans so that if the king chose one of them for a wife they were presented to him as belonging to the clan to which they had been allied, and any male child resulting from such an alliance was not debarred from ascending to the throne.

† These clans have joined others for two reasons:—

a. To better themselves.

b. To enable them to give their daughters to the king.

They, however, were never regarded by the clan to which they allied themselves as blood relations, or allowed to inter-marry with them, but were permitted to adopt their totem names.

All Baganda date their history from Kintu, as do the Banyoro, and most assert that they are directly descended from him. Kintu was probably a very powerful chief who conquered the land and incorporated all the clans into one nation. Kimera, Kintu's grandson, is the first king of whom much tangible is known, and it was probably he who founded the feudal system of the Buganda kingdom and the various chieftainships and court posts, *e.g.*, the Mugema, the Pokino, etc., which are still in force to-day.

The BASOGA inhabit that area north of the Victoria Nyanza, bounded on the west by Buganda and on the east by Kavirondo. Tradition says that originally it was inhabited by Nilotic negroes. Some hundreds of years ago a body of Baganda invaded the country and, mingling with the neighbouring tribes, became the ancestors of the Basoga. The ancestors of Wakoli's people, for instance, came originally, according to native tradition, from Bunyoro, while Zebondo's and Tabingwa's people claim to have arrived from the direction of Mount Elgon. The Basoga so closely resemble the Baganda, as do the Basese, that the description of the Baganda given above applies to the Basoga, too. In recent years they have been particularly unfortunate, their country being visited time after time with pestilence or famine. Sleeping sickness first appeared here, as far as the Uganda Protectorate is concerned, and killed thousands. The Basoga have a reputation for petty theft, and as far as European's goods are concerned they have certainly earned their reputation.

THE BANYORO.—These are nice-looking negroes, but their features are spoilt by the custom of removing all four lower incisors so that the upper ones get long and slant forward. They do not practise circumcision or cicatrization. They are, in fact, very like the Baganda. They are never naked, except the Bachopi, a Nilotic tribe who appear to be undergoing assimilation into the neighbouring Bantu. Their ornaments present nothing striking. Their huts are like those of the Baganda, but not so elaborate, and they have no reed-work. They have fair roads and they bridge swamps. Their weapons are light spears, bows and arrows, and flat, wooden shields. They are great hunters of the hippopotamus, which they kill with a large harpoon from canoes. They had a large number of dug-out canoes, but this industry is fast dying out. Their birth, marriage and death customs are all similar to those of the Baganda, and, like them, they had clans; but war, pestilence and famine have so decimated the people that these are now very much obscured. They were formerly a very immoral race; now their great vice is drunkenness.

THE BATORO are really only a section of the Bariyoro, without, perhaps, quite so much original mixture of Hamitic blood. Tall men are very common, even where this is not due to recent intermixture with the Hamitics. The average Toro peasant is a rather degraded type of negro. They are very prone to skin diseases, as are the Banyoro, possibly due to poor food.

THE BAKONJO, who inhabit the southern flanks of Ruwenzori and the grassy slopes of the upper Semliki and to the west of Lake Edward, ornament themselves with scars, but they neither sharpen nor remove teeth, nor do they practise circumcision. The women have a peculiar adornment, *i.e.*, rings of fine plaited grass or fibre worn on both arms above the elbow, the lower rings being smaller than the upper. The men wear nothing from the point of view of decency, but wear cloaks of skins over one shoulder. Their huts are well-made, generally of plantain fibre, with the upper parts thatched with leaves over the fibre. Their food is mainly grain, but they are fond of meat, especially hyrax. The Bakonjo speak a most interesting language, and either it or the Masaba speech of Elgon comes nearest to the original Bantu tongue. They practise a vague ancestor worship. They are a very moral race compared with other tribes. Marriage is by the usual method of barter. They are not warlike, and of late years have become industrious agriculturists.

THE BAIRO, who form the bulk of the agricultural population of Ankole (the aristocracy being the Bahima), resemble the Baganda. They are a tall race with rather projecting brow ridges. All the inhabitants of the Western Province are well proportioned in their limbs and bodies. The word "Bairo" appears to be a Hima word for slaves. The Bairo wear very little, but what they do wear they arrange to safeguard decency, which their Hima aristocracy think it unnecessary to do. Formerly the Bahima did not allow them to keep cattle, deeming this their own perquisite, but under British rule they now keep them. They are great hunters and use long nets. Their standard of morality is very low, and their religion practically non-existent.

THE BAHUTU occupy the same position to the Batusi in the Ruanda District as the Bairo do to the Bahima in Ankole, though many occupy positions as responsible chiefs. They are exceptionally industrious and great agriculturists, both men and women working side by side in the fields which often extend far up the steep slopes of the hills. Some are dressed in cloths, but many wear a single skin hanging

down over the shoulder. Their hair is worn similar to the Batusi.

Three of the tribes in the Bukedi District belong to the Bantu group, the Bagishu, Banyuli and Bagweri, and may be considered here.

THE BAGISHU.—This is the most numerous tribe in the district, inhabiting the foothills of Elgon and the slopes of the mountain itself up to 9,000 feet. The men are mostly small and badly proportioned. But is it noticeable that the numbers of those clans which live in the plains adjacent to the Budama border are of finer physique, and taller than the dwellers in the hills. Among the hill clans numbers of a very primitive type are found; short, wiry men with long arms, small heads, and bearded faces. Many of the latter are not more than five feet in height, while the plain-dwelling Bagishu occasionally attain six feet, and, when clothed, are very similar to the better type of Baganda. In colour they range from light brown to black.

The national dress of the Bagishu men is a goat-skin, slung from the shoulder, and this is still worn by the great majority; only those who have been in direct contact with Europeans or Baganda wear clothes. The women wear either a short skirt made of banana leaves, or else a triangular contrivance of string caught up into a knot in front of the waist.

Circumcision is generally practised, the usual age being about 18, though Bagishu are sometimes circumcised as early as 13 and as late as 30. The rites, which are accompanied by a great deal of drinking and dancing, and the slaughter of very large numbers of cattle, take place every two years. All those who are circumcised in the same year receive a collective name, which is usually an allusion to some outstanding event of the year, *e.g.*, Bamuliongobc, "those of the rinderpest." The 1917 class is called Badaki, "the Germans," owing to the fact that recruiting for the Carrier Corps for German East Africa coincided with the commencement of these rites.

Before circumcision no clothes are worn; afterwards the goat-skin, or some other form of clothing, is compulsory. Among the hill clans some form of ornament is usually worn, the elder men wearing a heavy iron neck-ring, and several iron rings on one arm. The ears are frequently pierced for suspending rings, shells, etc. The women wear anklets, bracelets and bead necklaces. The Bagishu have clans similar to those of the Baganda, only they appear to be far more numerous; it is said that there are some 150 of them. As a race they are extremely industrious, and the men work in the fields alongside the women. A wife is usually

selected for her capacity to cultivate. Anyone who has seen the terraced gardens on the hill-sides, and the way in which every little piece of land is parcelled out and fenced off, will agree that the Bagishu are essentially an agricultural people.

They were also at one time great cattle-owners, and though their herds are now only a fraction of their former numbers they are still rich in cattle by comparison with some other tribes. It is possible that they obtained their name from the Masai, in whose language Ngishu means oxen.

The Bagishu are a very prolific race, families of five or six children by one wife being the average. There is no longer room for them in their own hills, and they have spread out to Budama, Bunyuli, Bugweri, and even to Teso. Like the Baganda, they have the instinct for travel well developed, and are to be found working in most places where money is to be earned between Khartoum and Mombasa.

An enormous quantity of fermented liquor (made both from millet and bananas) is consumed by the Bagishu.

The language of the Bagishu—Lugishu or Lumasaba—would appear to be one of the original Bantu tongues, on which other languages have been based. Although the people are essentially primitive, Lugishu has an elaborate syntax and a very extensive vocabulary. Dialects, only one stage removed from Lugishu, are spoken in Banyuli, Kitosh, and among the Bantu Kavirondo.

THE BANYULI.—This tribe represents the transition between Bagishu and Basoga. It is held by some (and there is native tradition to support the theory) that Mount Elgon is the original home of the Baganda and Basoga. If that is so, one would expect to find between the Elgon aborigines and the Basoga a tribe which had some of the characteristics of both. The Banyuli supply this link. Their own tradition is to the effect that they came from the Kavirondo country, or Lake Victoria, to Bunyuli in Busoga, from whence half of them penetrated north of the Mpologoma to their present home in Bukedi District. This migration was probably in the nature of a return towards their place of origin, under pressure from the Nilotic Kavirondo.

Lunyuli, as spoken by the elder men, is more akin to Lugishu than to Lusoga. The younger generation speak by preference a bastard Luganda.

In physical characteristics the Banyuli are very similar to the Basoga. Barkcloth is the national dress, superseded by *americanis* for those who can afford it.

THE BAGWERI are practically indistinguishable from the Basoga to European eyes, though they do not themselves admit the identity. They also represent a step back from the original southward migration, having occupied the land that they now hold as a result of re-settlement by colonists from Busoga. Lugweri, probably an older form of Lusoga, like Lunyuli, is now being superseded by a form of Luganda.

The Bagweri were the first tribe in this district to come directly under European influence, as the original station at Budaka was in their country.

THE BALEGENYI.—Here may be mentioned a small tribe, the Balegenyi, consisting of barely 1,200 persons, inhabiting one ridge in north-east Bugishu. They are, however, interesting as being a hybrid race. Some three generations ago a colony of Bagweri, hunting in the neutral ground between the Teso and Mbai, colonized this ridge, which had been left unoccupied owing to tribal wars between the Mbai and Bagishu. They then intermarried with both the latter tribes, and their descendants are now a mixture between Bagweri-Basoga, Bagishu and Mbai (Nandi). Many of them are tri-lingual, speaking Lugishu, Nandi and old Lugweri, which is the same as old Lusoga.

THE NILOTICS.

The Nile negroes form the bulk of the population of the Northern Province in the Nile valley north of Bunyoro, and of the Eastern Province north of Lake Kioga.

The typical Nile negro has ugly features, except where they have intermingled with the Bantu, the Masai, or the Hamites, when they are fine, handsome people. Their skins are very dark; in fact they are the blackest of all the negroes. Their feet and hands are small, and their arms are long. The head hair is thick and woolly, and may grow in some tribes to the length of nearly a foot. All body hair is scrupulously removed.

None of the Nilotic races circumcise; several tribes knock out the lower incisors, but not the Madi or Bari. The Madi have acquired the habit from the Nubians of scoring their cheeks with longitudinal scars. The Aluru and some Acholi men raise prominent wavy scars on the brow. The Bari women cicatrise their upper arms in a herring-bone pattern.

In several of these tribes the lower lip is pierced and a piece of polished quartz (or in recent years of glass) inserted from one to four inches in length, either straight or curved. In some tribes the women pierce the upper lip and wear a

large brass ring through it, hung with beads. The Acholi pierce the ears, but do not distend them as do the Masai, etc.

*The one feature which distinguishes the Nile negro is the complete nudity of both sexes, and this feature has given rise to the name of "Bukedi," which now appears on all maps. It is simply the Luganda for "The land of naked people," and is applied primarily to the Teso.

Their huts are characteristic; they are not very big, circular, and with their roofs thatched in flounces. The Latuka especially have roofs of great height. Nearly all have thorn hedges round their villages; the Lango and Acholi have a stockade of stout poles, and the Madi have in addition a deep trench. The Lango do not stockade their villages in any way, but the Kumam villages are surrounded by a thick, circular hedge of euphorbia.

All Nile negroes are industrious agriculturists, and they keep cattle, sheep and goats. Their weapons are spears and shields, and their musical instruments horns, drums, flutes and zithers. Their morals are very low, chastity not being expected even in a girl before puberty, but adultery is reckoned a serious crime.

After death a man is buried outside his hut, but a woman is frequently thrown out to the hyænas. They have practically no religion, but they have little fetish temples, and their medicine-men are generally their chiefs.

The above notes apply more or less to all Nilotic negroes.

The following may be described separately:—

THE ACHOLI are tall, long-limbed, loose-jointed, long in leg and flank, and of a cheerful, pleasant disposition. They are imbued with a natural propensity for raiding and are notorious as liars, even among the surrounding tribes. Armed with spears and bows and arrows, the Acholi are great hunters of game. Their love of ornament is inherent. Biceps and neck are encircled with coils of tightly-bound steel or brass wire, which more often than not is burnished. Upper lips are pierced for the insertion of curved glass

* NOTE.—This is the current explanation of the nickname "Bakedi," but the interpretation would not appear to be warranted by the facts. It has also been suggested that Bakedi means "the eastward people," as the name has been applied by the Baganda and Banyoro to various peoples living east of the Nile—the Lango, the Kumam, the Teso and Bagishu. The derivation would refer it to the Lango word *Kidi*, meaning east, or to the Teso word *Akidi*, meaning dawn; but it is improbable that the Baganda would employ a foreign word if they wished to invent a nickname meaning the eastward people. The most likely explanation is to be found in the fact that the Baganda first penetrated that part of Teso which is known as Okedea, distorted this word into Bukedi, and subsequently employed the name Bakedi indiscriminately for all the new peoples east of the Nile.

ornaments ; ivory bracelets are worn. Ornamental head-dress of hair and bead-work, which for dances are decked with the feathers of the ostrich, are met with frequently. The tusk of a pig, or wart-hog, rising upward from the hair, is another popular head ornament. Native dances are an institution. Every dance has several separate and distinct figures.

The leopard skin is worn by chiefs and chiefs' sons on ceremonial occasions.

The Acholi bury their dead before the dead man's house. Sickness is not prevalent, although a pronounced form of "housemaid's knee" is common, possibly due to the low entrances they make to their houses, and to the necessity that thus exists for entering them on hands and knees. Cases of elephantiasis are met with also.

The staple food is grain and sim-sim.

The Acholi are at present pagans, and witch doctors exist throughout the country and do considerable harm. Their morality is of a low order, and they are not a brave race.

THE MADI are the remarkable possessors of a language which is allied in no particular whatever to that of those of their neighbours. No European has ever mastered or become fluent in their vernacular. It is difficult to trace the growth of these people, or to arrive at any conclusion as to whether they are indigenous, or whether they have migrated to their present location within comparatively recent date.

In appearance and facial characteristics they resemble very closely the typical natives of the Nile. Their skin is jet black ; neither sex wears clothes save the charms and girdle of beads and ivory bangles with which they love to ornament themselves. As a race they are not unintelligent, and possess stouter hearts than the Acholi. They cannot, however, compare in intelligence to the Bantu tribes of the southern part of the Protectorate. To attempt to enumerate even a part of the Madi customs and superstitions would demand space which this chapter cannot afford. Witchcraft and superstitions pervade the tribe ; like their northern neighbours, the Bari, they believe their spirits can communicate with one another while their owners sleep. They believe in second sight and the powers of telling by "voka" (strips of giraffe or cowskin used as dice), whether the omens are favourable for any contemplated expedition. Women are bought and sold as wives. Sickness is not prevalent. As a tribe they bury their dead before the dead man's house. All believe the spirit returns after five days'

sojourn in the bush to the house of the dead man's head wife. They are polygamous as a race.

The Madi are pagans and have very little in the way of morals. Compensation for offences against their social economy suffices.

THE BARI appear to have come into existence within comparatively recent date. Families from the Mundari, Fajallu, Lokoya, Dinka, Berri and other places, where the tribal territories were thickly populated, appear to have migrated towards and settled on the uninhabited strip of somewhat barren soil which the Bari tribe now occupy. Possession of stock has been and is primary claim to eminence by reason of its powers to provide feasts and to purchase labour for cultivation of grain. Rainmakers are often imbued with great power.

The language of the Bari is the same as is spoken by the Fajallu. They possess many Masai (East Africa tribe) words.

Polygamy exists throughout. The actual number of wives a Bari possesses depends on the worth of his worldly possessions. The rich seldom have more than five; the poor are content with one. Girls are bought and sold as wives. The men clear and prepare the ground for cultivation, the women care for the crops and harvest them. Each wife keeps her own granary. Witchcraft and superstition are existent throughout the tribe.

Like the Madi and Acholi, they bury their dead in front of their houses, placing the more personal belongings on the grave for a few days after burial. These are afterwards recovered and pass into the possession of the dead man's successor.

Bari morality, like that of the Madi and Acholi, is of no high order. Wives pass freely from one husband to another after a payment of compensation in cattle or goats, if offence has been committed.

As a tribe they are avaricious but lazy; they lack initiative and are slaves to procrastination, incapable of sustained effort, quarrelsome, sulky and cunning. Their words cannot be trusted. With all their faults they are brave. They know no religion, admit no god, but believe in the existence of spirits.

THE LANGO, to whom the nickname of Miro has been given by neighbouring tribes, are a well-built and upstanding race. They are tall and, like most Nilotics, the upper part of their body is better developed than the lower. As a rule their features are good, though very degraded looking specimens are occasionally to be found. In contrast with the practice of Bantu tribes the men do all the hard

work of cultivation, and this together with the pursuit of hunting and fighting has resulted in a fine appearance of physical capacity, which is not belied by their powers of endurance and sustained exercise. One of the remarkable results of their energetic life is the excessive development of the iliac line. They have well-formed noses, with thin nostrils and a high bridge. As a whole they are dark-skinned, but the colouration varies from jet-black (which is rare) to a sub-fuse reddish tinge. A remarkable family of albinos exists at Chegere.

The lower middle incisors are removed, as it is believed that if this is not done the child will not grow up, and this sometimes results in an undue development of the corresponding upper teeth. The teeth are never sharpened, and the circumcision of either sex is unknown. The bodies and arms of both men and women are decorated with cicatrices, an unsightly hypertrophy being not infrequent. Certain cicatrisations have a religious motive and are made after killing an enemy to propitiate his spirit, but the majority are now purely ornamental and assume many and various designs according to the taste of the individual.

Hair is not allowed to grow on the face or body, but until recently (and even now in the most newly administered areas) the custom of the men has been to let the hair grow long at the back in a thick mass, to which beads or cowries are strung forming a helmet-like cap, sometimes covered with red chalk, sometimes variegated by designs in coloured beads of lizards or fanciful figures. In recent years the head has been shaved, and large wicker-work helmets are worn, on to which is worked to form a felt-like covering such of the owner's hair as has been cut since he reached the age of puberty. The head is not entirely shaved, but the hair is cut into various forms of tonsure, to each of which is given the hairdressers' technical name. A special form of tonsure indicates that a man has just killed an enemy. Young warriors wear a thick busby-like headdress made of cock's feathers. Women do not shave their heads, except to inaugurate and to close a period of mourning or when afflicted with lice, but anoint the hair with croton or sem-sem oil mixed with ashes or red chalk and twist it with ringlets hanging on all sides from the crown.

Both men and women are inordinately fond of ornaments, the nose, lips, ears, tongue, and sometimes even the eyebrows and umbilicus being pierced to admit brass rings and beads. Gorgets of brass or iron wire are worn on the neck and coils of it are wound round the upper and

fore arms, below the knees and above the ankles. Bead waist-belts are normally worn, and three of four strings of beads, forming one piece, are bound on the forehead, the ends being tied behind the head. Among the Lango of Dokolo, in the south-east, a heart-shaped disc has been worn of late years. The material was originally obtained from beaten out brass wire, later from cartridge cases from the expedition sent against them in 1907, and later again from kerosine oil tins. These discs are not often seen elsewhere except in the east towards the Moroto River. The Jo Aber section of the tribe, when grown up, wear a small goatskin round their waist like an apron, but usually it is too small to serve any purpose of modesty. A leather noose is hung over the shoulders round the neck and attached to it at the back is worn a tail, frequently made of the bristles of a wart-hog, or sometimes three tails united to a metal ring, and the horn of a young bush-buck or ram made into a whistle. Otherwise the men go nude, though with the development of trade cotton clothes are more in evidence. The women from about six years old wear a few strings of thread made of wild cotton, the number of strings increasing with the age of the wearer. These hang down in front from a waistbelt of leather, which is worn by both girls and women, but after a woman has borne a child she wears a tail-like strip of leather falling down from the belt at the back, and a stick-like erection of leather projecting horizontally behind. This tail is given her by the father of her child, and in the old days used to be very broad, covering both buttocks. An unmarried woman, if her father is a man of substance, wears an apron of small metal inter-locked chains (called ariko) in place of the cotton threads.

It would be impossible in the available space to do more than to summarise the ornaments assumed by the Lango. Sufficient has been said, however, to indicate the general tendencies, but it should be borne in mind that there are considerable variations in custom dependent on a man's clan or fraternity, and that the requirements of religion may necessitate abnormal decoration, as for instance the wearing of peculiar cowries by twins. Ostrich-shell necklaces are heirlooms from the days when they used to live north of the Moroto in ostrich country. Bells are only worn at dances.

The Lango are very independent and impatient of control, but are cheerful and good-natured. They are easily excited and are liable in the heat of passion to commit sudden acts of violence, but it is not usual to

harbour a personal grudge for any length of time, though a blood vendetta is remorselessly carried out on behalf of the clan as opportunity offers. They are renowned fighters, being much feared by the Acholi and Kuman, but, pitiless as they are in the conduct of war, torture or the mutilation of the living or dead is abhorrent to them. It would appear that it is only within the last thirty or forty years that they have adopted the practice of killing women and children in battle, and it is probable that this practice is due to the use of the spear in place of the club and fighting lash, their previous weapons.

They build dome-like huts, consisting of a mud wall about eighteen inches high, the roof being thatched in flounces. There is a small door at the front with a low porch projecting about two feet, thatched usually continuously with the roof. The opening is just sufficiently large for a body to crawl through on hands and knees and is closed from inside by a stiff, plaited mat. The houses are well built and last for about three years, by which time the soil in the immediate neighbourhood is worked out and the village migrates and rebuilds. Sheep, goats and young calves are kept in the houses at night. Boys after reaching the age of puberty live in huts elevated on poles from three to eight feet above the ground; they are approached by a wooden staircase, which is sometimes roofed in with sticks and sometimes has mud walls. The entrance to the hut is only just large enough to allow a man's shoulders to pass. Inside is a wooden pillow and a grass mat for closing the doorway. This custom is probably due to a desire to prevent young men being magiced at a particularly susceptible period of their lives, as it is believed that magic cannot operate at a distance off the ground. Bachelors live in these huts till marriage, and they are sometimes kept in repair even after marriage as a guest house or for use on the occasions when a man may not cohabit with his wife. In remote times there used to be a separate house for the girls of the village, but since the last two or three generations they have lived with their mothers. Less elaborate huts than the dwelling houses are used for kitchens; these are only made of grass and upright sticks and have a wide doorway. Tub-like structures raised on four large stones and covered with a removable grass roof are used to store grain crops. They usually measure five feet in diameter and three to four feet in height. Smaller granaries about one foot in diameter and two feet high are built for the storage of sem-sem, peas and minor crops. Chicken houses, a cattle kraal, log benches built in the shade of a tree, and a shrine by which are planted the

sacred euphorbia and other ceremonial shrubs complete the picture of a Lango village, which is usually well swept and clean and free of unpleasant odours.

Malignant witchcraft is rare, probably on account of the fact that a witch when discovered was clubbed to death and then burnt to ashes, and the practice of "smelling out," common among certain Bantu tribes, is happily absent. In common with other natives the Lango do not believe in death from natural causes but they usually attribute sudden deaths, due to no apparent cause, rather to an unappeased spirit or the ghost of a dead man than to the agency of a living wizard. A brief, and at the same time adequate, account of Lango religion would be impossible, but their high god is Jwok, a vague term conveying the idea of an aggregate of all the spirits of men who have been long dead, a kind of Spiritual Force overseeing and controlling the destinies of man, into which man is absorbed at some eventual period after death. Jwok is likened to a moving wind, and his habitat is in many places, but Mount Agoro is his most permanent home, and to it Lango used to make pilgrimages in order to obtain small stones impregnated with the divinity to ensure their wives auspicious conception.

Males are buried to the right of the doorway of the house, females to the left, and as a corollary to this rule if a woman dies enceinte, the child is first removed from the womb and buried separately according to its sex. If this is not done, the woman will haunt her husband. The owner of a kraal is buried in the centre of his kraal, but this does not prevent it from being subsequently used. A man killed far off in battle is left to the vultures and hyænas, but if killed close to the village is brought back and buried as usual. Suicides are buried where they die, but never within the outskirts of the village, and in their case the ceremonials are for the most part omitted and there is no prolonged mourning. Graves must always reach the depth of red soil and the head must be towards the sunrise. Good hunting dogs are buried in the goat pasturage in a shallow grave, and yearly a goat is killed over the place of burial. After frequent and inexplicable deaths deceased is buried in a swamp, as some supernatural agency is suspected and water—the greatest charm against witchcraft or supernatural foes—will put an end to the visitation. Twins are buried in earthen pots, which are hermetically sealed. The burial position is lying on the side with the legs bent up and arms folded across the breast. The suicide of close relations of the deceased is not uncommon

during the first paroxysms of grief and for that reason they are generally put under restraint and the actual burial is conducted by men of another clan, whose fee is a ram of any colour except black. The family and relations go into mourning on the day of the death, and on the third day after the death the male relations shave their heads, while the females shave on the fourth day. On the arrival of the relations, who have been summoned on the day of the death, they sit down to the funeral feast, which is a lugubrious and mournful proceeding punctuated with the lamentations of the women. They all remain in mourning and do not again shave their heads till the Feast of Unfastening which takes place at the next harvest, which may be any time from four to fifteen months distant, as the harvest of the crops which are growing at the time of the death is not considered in the reckoning. It is a riotous meal, to which everyone contributes meat and beer, and it is celebrated with song and a dance which is now otherwise obsolete. On the day of this feast they all shave their heads, remove the badges of mourning, and put on all their glory of beads and brass wire.

When a man wishes to marry he has to pay a certain amount of property which varies, according to the locality, from four head of cattle to eight head of cattle. Where there are no cattle from sixty to eighty goats is the usual dowry. The distribution of the property among the women's relations is strictly governed by customary law, and it is of interest as illustrating certain matriarchal tendencies in the tribe that one heifer is always paid to the girl's maternal uncle and one bull to her mother's mother. In this connection mention should be made of the respect paid by a man to his wife's mother, whom he is not allowed to see or address for the rest of his life, except on one ceremonial occasion at the command of the woman herself. The Lango do not intermarry with other tribes but keep strictly to themselves. Illegitimate intercourse with an unmarried girl is an offence, but does not bear the same serious character as adultery, which is a crime punishable with death unless the injured husband receives suitable compensation without delay. Compensation for the former is thirteen goats, of which six are ceremoniously killed, and for the latter varies from two to three head of cattle. In the case of a divorce, a man may claim all the dowry paid by him together with any calves which have not been weaned and are still in the possession of the woman's family. Lango women are very prolific, and the following statistics, obtained by interrogating one hundred women at haphazard in different parts

of the district, are an indication of the rate at which the tribe is increasing its numbers :—

Children born	521
Number died in infancy ..	124
Number died before puberty .	77
Number survived	320
Percentage of girls born ..	55.5
Percentage of boys born ..	44.5

Parturition appears to cause considerable pain for two days before the birth of the first child, but subsequent births are accompanied by pain only within a few hours of delivery. Midwives attend all except oldish women, whose experience has made their presence unnecessary, and receive as a fee a pot of beer, or where there is any difficulty in expelling the placenta one he-goat. For seven days after childbirth a woman is carefully dieted according to custom, and the whole period is one during which the most scrupulous care is taken over all ceremonial observances in order not to prejudice the life of the mother or the child.

The tribe is divided into four large groups or phratries, Jo Aber, Jo Kidi, Jo Moita and Jo Burutok, and subdivided into 115 exogamous clans, each with their own tabus or prohibitions. It is difficult to say how far these tabus were originally totemic, as they would for the most part appear to have lost their strictly totemic significance, but they can with probability be said to have been ultimately totemic. In only three cases, however, can one now trace an intimate connection between the tabu and the clan, such a connection as would justify the use of the word totem, and in these cases the totem animal gives the name to the clan. The first is the clan known as *Jo Ayom* (the red colobus), who mourn as for a human being if a colobus is killed, as it is said to be one of their men; the second is the clan known as *Jo Akwaich* (leopard), who mourn the death of a leopard for the same reason, and whose tradition is that in the old days every new born child of the clan was put in a leopard's mouth and that no leopard would harm any member of the clan; the third is the clan *Jo Akarawok me Jo Amor* (duiker), who will not kill a duiker, and if they accidentally kill one bury it with leaves.

The staple food is millet (*kal*), which also forms the basis of most of the beer drunk. Sorghum (*bel*), of which seven species are grown, and pigeon peas (*apena*) are also largely eaten, while as vegetables, sem-sem (*nino*), ground nuts (*maido*) and beans (*ngor*) are most common, though

the sweet potato (*achok*) is growing in popularity; meat is eaten whenever obtainable, and livestock which die a natural death or are killed by lightning are not refused. The game killed in the dry season always forms an important item at a time when food is often scarce. Birds, rats and mice, as also wild cats, are trapped and eaten, and in fact, apart from clan restrictions, snakes, crows, vultures, kites, hawks and hyænas are the only articles of diet refused as a whole. The stomach of lions is not eaten as it is tainted with the flesh of man. The mud fish and other smaller species are killed in the swamps, while the crocodile is generally acceptable, but is by no means universally eaten. The scarcity of that reptile in Lake Kwania is attributed to this taste. Salt is obtained by burning papyrus sticks, bullrushes or goats' dung.

Milk from cows is made into butter and the butter milk is drunk, but most of the butter is given to one's brother-in-law, from whom the cow originally came. Food is cooked at open fires in the courtyard in front of the house, the principal meal being taken at sundown. Beer, made from fermented milk or sorghum grain, chiefly the former, is much drunk by both sexes. Drinking feasts take place usually in the afternoon, and as a rule the drinkers reach a stage of great exhilaration. The beer never seems to stupefy the drinkers, and during the season for beer feasts, *i.e.*, September to January, which is also the dancing season, the natives always seem in excellent physical condition. The beer is sucked up through reeds, at the end of which is a fine-meshed fibre strainer to catch the grains, and the reeds are carried inside a walking stick. Old men and women only smoke tobacco in rude, native-made pipes of baked clay.

The Lango are a healthy and virile race, as yet free from the scourge of syphilis and gonorrhoea. Framboesia is very wide-spread, and while malaria is rare and sleeping sickness, guinea worm and spirillum are unknown, dysentery (probably bacillary), rheumatism, hernia, ulcers, and affections of the eye, are the commonest diseases from which the Lango suffer. Bursitis is frequent and hydrocele is met with from time to time. Leprosy, both nodular and anæsthetic, is present in a mild form. Plague, though endemic in the neighbouring districts, did not affect the Lango till 1913, and small-pox, though a few sporadic cases were previously known at isolated centres like Kiaduku and Nabieso, did not become a problem till 1917, in which year cerebro-spinal meningitis also broke out with disastrous results. The mortality from these three diseases has been very heavy.

The Lango have always been hunters. Large assemblies for hunting took place every dry season, while small parties hunted whenever the grass was short. Nets stretched in a long line, towards which the game is driven, were much used. Elephants were hunted by means of fire and killed with spears. Traps consisting of heavy logs of wood, into which a spear had been fixed, were occasionally used, the log being connected with ropes which were stretched between two poles placed upright beneath the trees, but this is a practice adopted from the Jopaluos. Hunting dogs are frequently employed and dogs with a good record of kills are greatly prized.

THE BADAMA (so called by the Baganda, Doluo being the native name) migrated in fairly recent times from the Miro country. They are practically the same race as the Nilotic Kavirondo inhabiting the shores of Lake Victoria in the East Africa Protectorate. Their tradition is that their ancestors formed part of a large horde of Acholi, who left their home owing to famine and travelled southward and eastward to the shore of Lake Victoria. Later on a return wave of migration set in from the Lake to their original home, and en route part of the wanderers elected to settle in the country now known as Budama. This return took place about 50 years ago, and was led by the grandfather of the present Chief of Nagongera.

The Badama own large numbers of cattle, which are superior to those owned by any other tribe in Bukedi.

In former years they had a great reputation as warriors, and were, together with the Bagishu hill tribes, left more or less untouched by the Kakunguru's Baganda. They are a tall race, and uniformly black in colour, and are by preference a grain-eating people. Padela, the language of the Badama, is a dialect of Gang, differing very slightly from Gang proper.

THE MBAI.—This is a small tribe inhabiting a part of the north-east slopes of Elgon, from Kigule to Sebei. By origin, habits and language, the Mbai are very closely akin to the Nandi, and have many points in common with the Suk. There is considerable intercourse between the Mbai and the Suk and the Mbai and the Balago living near the Uganda border in Mumias District. The Mbai are, in fact, a colony of Balago-Nandi, who crossed to their present home from East Africa, via the well-known tribal path along the edge of the Elgon crater, and at one time occupied the greater half of north-east Bagishu. Up to about 50 years ago they were able to hold their own against the Bagishu, but since then the increasing pressure of the latter tribe, greatly outnumbering the Mbai, forced them

from one ridge after another till they were driven to the outer corner which they now occupy. Even here the Bagishu are rapidly gaining a foothold, by peaceful penetration now instead of armed force, and are causing the Mbai to migrate further round the mountain to the sparsely-populated northern slopes between Sebei and the Turkwel gorge.

The Mbai men are the handsomest natives in the district. They are not tall, but their physique is very fine and their movements graceful. In colour they are reddish-brown, and it is customary among the young men to have the head plastered with red mud. They wear a dress hide, hung from the shoulder, embroidered with beads. The women are, for the most part, extremely plain, and usually indescribably dirty, whereas the men appear clean. The women do all the hard work, the chief occupation of the men being the hunting of game. Their language is a dialect of Nandi. The Mbai are called "Batwa" (a mountain clan of Masai) by the Bagishu. The Batwa proper are a race closely akin to the Mbai, who inhabit the upper slopes of Mount Elgon, between 9,000 and 11,000 feet, build huts with earth roofs, and live principally on rats and other small mammals and honey.

THE KARAMOJO occupy the north-east part of the Protectorate bordering on the Sudan and East Africa. There is every probability that the Karamojo with the Jie and Dodoso in Uganda and the Dabosa and Donyiro in the south-east Sudan formed at one time an united tribe with common grazing grounds, but, owing to family quarrels, have since split up and now consider themselves independent of each other.

They are a nomadic people of Nilotic extraction but with Bantu affinities, and have much in common with the Masai of East Africa. The men are tall and of fine physique and go invariably nude. The women wear dressed hides hung from the waist and often embroidered with beads. Circumcision is not practised and all body hair is removed. The central lower incisors are extracted; the lower lip is pierced and a brass nail or piece of polished quartz inserted. The ears of both sexes are pierced and the pinna fringed with small rings or other metal adornments, while the biceps and neck are encircled with coils of wire. Ivory bracelets are sometimes worn. The hair is worn in enormous chignons which often reach the small of the back, forming a natural sun pad, and are provided with a pocket on the underside in which odd articles are carried.

The men are invariably armed and carry two long spears with a circular wrist knife and shield. An ostrich plume headdress, a giraffe's tail suspended from the upper left arm, a leopard, baboon or calf skin over the shoulders with anklets of white goat skin complete the equipment. Warriors are cicatrised and bear prominent scars on the upper part of the body.

They possess no musical instruments, even drums being unknown. Dancing is very popular nevertheless.

Excepting the Dodoso section the dead are buried in the cattle kraals. Witchcraft and superstition prevail, and raiding parties often abandon their objective on the sudden appearance of unpropitious omens, *e.g.*, a rhinoceros or pig.

As a tribe they are polygamous and chastity before payment of the marriage dowry is unknown. Adultery, however, is a serious crime.

Their home or wet-season kraals are surrounded by stockades into which the stock is driven at night. The huts are small and so low as to forbid standing room. On the dry-season grazing grounds zarebas of thorn bush with grass shelters suffice.

The women do all the heavy work and attend to the gardens.

Besides their totems they recognise a deity in the heavens.

THE HAMITES.

THE KUMAM, who inhabit most of Kioga County in the Lango District and the western fringe of the Teso District, are related to the Teso, but both physically and morally are somewhat inferior. Occasionally one meets with very tall men, attaining a height of six feet four inches, but these are exceptional and taken as a whole they are of medium height and slender build. The women have particularly good figures and a graceful carriage, and both sexes have in common with other Hamitic tribes pleasant, and often handsome, features. They are very cheerful and courteous to strangers without an undue servility, and have cultivated the art of singing and whistling to a high degree. Ardent cultivators, whose women take a more active part in cultivating than the neighbouring Lango, they are nevertheless chiefly devoted to their cattle, of which they own large herds, and so attached to them do they become that cases of suicide are recorded after the death of a particularly valued cow. As a tribe they are poor fighters and in the past suffered severe defeat at the hands of the war-like Lango.

Linguistically the Kumam present an interesting problem, as, while they formerly spoke a language closely allied to Teso, by contact with the Lango, and possibly under the influence of their spears, they now speak a bastard dialect, of which the vocabulary is largely a modified Lango, while the structure of the language remains principally Teso. The language is even now undergoing extensive changes by the assimilation of numerous Lunyoro words, is already unintelligible to the Teso, and is rapidly becoming unintelligible to the Lango.

The name of the tribe is obscure, as while they acknowledge Kumam (or rather Akum, of which Kumam is a Bantuized form), they claim the name Lango as the real tribal name, distinguished from other tribes of the same name by the addition of *Ikikolemu*; so much so indeed that disputes over the name with the Nilotic Lango have in the past resulted in fierce fights. The right to the name must remain in doubt, and they are now conventionally known as Kumam; but it is worthy of note that Lango (or Langu) is a common name among other Hamitic tribes. The Bantu nickname for the people, as for the Lango, Teso and Bagishu, is *Bakedi*, and by the Lango they are often jestingly called *Kerekere* (from their word for "all").

The lower incisors are removed and the brows (but not the bodies) are ornamented with cicatrices, but circumcision is not practised. Hair is not allowed on the face or body, and the heads are closely shaven. They wear few ornaments, but both sexes wear strings of beads round the neck and also round the waist. The women wear coils of brass wire round the forearms, while in both the top and bottom lips rings of beads are sometimes inserted, and it is usual for them to wear a piece of brass wire through the tongue. The older men used to wear robes of skins tied to the shoulder like the Banyoro, while the young men went nude, but now a strip of barkcloth or *amerikani*, tied round the waist and drawn between the legs, is always worn, while many wear on occasions cotton cloths and robes. In former times a metal helmet, in shape reminiscent of Viking helmets, used to be worn and is still occasionally seen; and at dances ostrich feathers are worn on the head and the limbs are covered or decorated with clay, while bells are coiled puttee-wise round the legs. The Kumam, like the Teso dance contains many intricate figures and affords a most pleasing spectacle. The women used to wear a fringe of banana leaves round their waists, or, if this was unobtainable, a small skin apron. Now a piece of cloth suspended on a string of beads is hung in

front. At dances they make an extravagant display of beads from the head downwards.

Their huts are dome-shaped, consisting of a mud wall about two feet high and a flounced roof reaching to the ground. The top of the roof is often ornamented with the horns of a buck or with sticks arranged to resemble horns. Being larger than Lango huts, too large in fact for the quality of timber obtainable, houses soon fall into disrepair and require frequent rebuilding. No distinction is made between the houses of married and unmarried men, partly owing to the practice of infant marriage, but the chief's or headman's hut is always the largest and is situated on the far side of the enclosure opposite the entrance to the village. The Kumam and Teso village is much more a family entity than obtains with the Lango, a fact which is due to its formation, which deserves description. It is composed of two circular enclosures made of hedges of the *Candelabra Euphorbia*, the one leading into the other by a common doorway, which is closed at night by logs, thus making the village tolerably secure from attack. The outer enclosure is smaller and usually contains shade trees. Here dances are held, the cattle are milked and the idle hours are passed in gossip. The inner enclosure contains the cattle kraal in the centre, and next to the kraal are the granaries, generally two to each house but often more. The huts are arranged along the euphorbia fence in a perfect circle, each hut equi-distant from its neighbour, with an ample courtyard between the houses and the granaries. It will be seen therefore that the village is essentially four concentric circles, not including the outer enclosure, first the euphorbia hedge, second the huts, thirdly the granaries, and lastly (the innermost circle at the point of the greatest security) the Kraal. A village may contain up to twenty huts, but is normally smaller, and the fact that the enclosing hedge sets a bound to its dimensions explains why the village usually comprises the family, in contrast with the Lango village, which is a straggling, unenclosed settlement, in which several families are united for purposes of offence and defence.

Witchcraft is unfortunately common and in recent years has considerably increased owing to association with Banyoro, whose witch-doctors have found apt pupils in the Kumam. The practice of witchcraft has also been facilitated by a severe epidemic of cerebro-spinal meningitis which broke out in 1917, and whose sudden and mysterious deaths opened a rich field to the wizards. Allegations of anthropophagy against witch-doctors are not infrequent, and one case at least has been authenticated.

Small-pox has caused numerous deaths since it broke out early in 1917, and plague since 1913. Both syphilis and gonorrhoea are widespread, largely owing to a time-honoured custom of prostitution, and there is no doubt that there is an increasing sterility among the women, while the infantile mortality is excessively high. Dysentery and diseases of the skin and eyes are common, but so far no case of sleeping sickness or spirillum fever has been recorded.

The tribe is polygamous and is divided into numerous exogamous clans, and while intercourse with an unmarried girl was not considered an offence, no penalty being exacted unless a child resulted, in which case the lover was expected to marry the woman, adultery is looked upon as an offence against the husband, who demands satisfaction to the extent of one or two head of cattle. Part of the dowry, which varies in amount, but is normally eleven or twelve head of cattle, is paid before the marriage, but the greater part is paid subsequently in instalments. The dowry is recoverable in divorce, which may be by mutual consent or on grounds of the constant infidelity or the sterility of the woman. Should a man die before his wife bears him a child, she will go to a relation and cohabit with him with the object of "raising up seed" to her deceased husband, and the resulting child will be considered in all respects as the dead man's child, with full rights of inheritance. After this proceeding the woman will pass as wife to the deceased's brother or some other relation according to prescribed custom. The dowry is divided in recognised portions among the girl's family, as its object is to compensate the clan for the loss of a productive member and with this in view to enable as many as possible to obtain wives. The Kumam intermarry with the Teso, but not as a rule with other neighbouring tribes, though prostitution is undermining this healthy rule.

They are essentially grain eaters and their staple food is millet and sorghum, of both of which very large quantities are grown. Pigeon peas are grown, but not to any great extent, but both beans and ground-nuts are widely cultivated. The beans are of a different species, though similar in appearance, from those cultivated by the Lango, and require several hours of cooking if dysentery is to be avoided. Sweet potatoes are now extensively grown, and with bananas are becoming every year more popular, and sem-sem, which was in the past a much neglected crop, is coming into favour as being a readily marketable produce. Chillies have since 1916 shewn an increase in cultivation both for home consumption and for export, and since 1913

the Kumam have proved themselves to be quite capable of producing a large quantity of excellent cotton. Owing to the irregularity and the local nature of the rainfall, more grain shambas than one are grown by each man in different months and often as much as five miles apart. This normally results in a supply of grain far beyond their needs and a large amount of millet flour is available for export. Meat is eaten whenever obtainable, and they have always relied on game to supplement their diet. The area in which they live, however, is so thickly populated, that game is not everywhere obtainable, having withdrawn to the less crowded regions beyond Atuboi and west of Kagaa.

THE TESO are the principal inhabitants of the Kumi District and the Palisa County of Mbale District. The tribe is very numerous and numbered at the last census 233,973 in the Kumi District, and 36,853 in Mbale District. The name Bakedi was given to them by the Baganda. Though they are all members of one tribe they differ somewhat in various localities, both in appearance and language. An interpreter from the Kumi neighbourhood is not very easily understood at Soroti.

They keep strictly to themselves and with the exception of the Kumam do not intermarry with other tribes, but the influence of neighbouring tribes is felt on the borders.

In appearance they are tall and well, though not heavily, built. Their skins are very black. Originally the men were quite naked, and the majority are so still, though clothes are growing increasingly common. They have the habit, in common with the Nilotic tribes, of standing on one leg. They are very cheerful and greet strangers heartily but without servility. Caravan porters are fond of singing on the march, and in the northern parts they dance and sing at the end of their journey. In spite of their fine physique they are bad hunters and bad fighters. They cannot be induced to face a leopard, and have a reputation for cowardice in fighting. They are not quarrelsome except when drunk on native beer, which they make out of wimbi, and under the influence of which murders are usually committed.

Their marriage custom is to pay part of the dowry to the father before taking his daughter, and the balance in instalments. Not only does the father get paid, but something is due to the uncles and other relations. The larger chiefs have as many as four or five hundred wives. Adultery is looked upon as an offence against the husband, and the offender is made to compensate him. The status of women is, however, much higher than among the Bantu tribes. The hard work of cultivation is done by the men,

and the weeding and similar light work is done by the women. The Teso are grain eaters, and their food-crops entail much more labour in their cultivation than banana shambas, so that the amount of work done by the men is considerable. These crops supply all their natural needs, and artificial needs have to be introduced to induce them to cultivate other crops. They are, however, industrious and take kindly to cultivation. They are a purely agricultural and pastoral people, and have no industries.

Their huts are well-built and are thatched with grass arranged in flounces. This thatch reaches to the ground, and the mud wall is only about two feet high. On many of the huts the sticks on the top are arranged in the form of horns, and occasionally the horns of a buck are put there. In the north-west raised huts for the unmarried men are found, but the platforms are not so high as those of Lango. Their grain is stored in raised granaries of mud, thatched with a movable grass roof. These huts and granaries are arranged in small villages, the whole being surrounded by a fence or a hedge of euphorbia.

In Serere County there is a number of Basoga and Banyoro, and the people are more mixed than in other parts. North of Orungo there are Lango, and at Bugondo there are Badiope. On the papyrus in the lakes and swamps a curious race called the BAKENYI live. They are akin to the Basoga, and build their huts on floating islands of papyrus. They make their living by ferrying travellers and by catching fish, which they exchange for grain. They move about in small dug-out canoes. Owing to the inaccessibility of their dwellings, they are very independent in character and have little in common with the dwellers on the dry land.

In Southern Budama, near the Malawa River, lives part of a tribe known as the WAMIA (the other parts being in Busoga-Kavirondo and the Mumias Districts.)

The Wamia are also Teso, who migrated south from the country near Kumi, and their language is the same as that of the Teso proper. In customs, mode of building, and lack of clothing they are also identical, but it is noticeable that in intelligence and in physique they are much inferior to the other Teso, who are tall, finely-developed men with high foreheads.

Near Tororo there is a small rocky hill known by the Wamia as Murokatipe, "the water of the shadow." It is interesting to note that in the Dabossa country, in Sudan territory, some 300 miles north of Tororo, there is a mountain with the same name and the same meaning.

THE BAHIMA (or Baima) are found among the aristocracy of Ankole, Bunyoro and Toro, and among the herds-

men scattered through Buganda. They are more numerous in proportion to the negro inhabitants of the land in the district of Mpororo to the south-west of Ankole.

A pure-blooded Muhima is a tall man, with a graceful, well-proportioned figure, small hands, and feet very like the European model. The neck is long, the head well poised, and the nose is straight and well formed. The skin is much lighter than the average negro, and may even be reddish-yellow. One feature in which the Muhima resembles the negro is the character of the head hair, which is very woolly. The body hair is always plucked out with tweezers. The woman's hair grows longer, and is tufty and closely resembles that of the Somali and Abyssinian. Although the Bahima men are tall, spare and thin, the young women are fattened up, and for this purpose are forced to drink immoderate quantities of milk; the chief beauty, in fact, of a Muhima lady appears to consist of immense rolls of fat. This fattening process is carried to such an extent that some women can hardly walk.

They do not practise circumcision, nor do they pierce lips or ears, nor do they knock out any teeth, but some are given to scar ornamentation. Formerly the men did not trouble to cover their persons, and the girls went quite naked until marriage, but now cotton goods are widely worn. Both men and women wear charms round their necks, hung on strings; and brass or iron wire armlets are worn round the upper part of their left arms and round both legs below the knee. The men, while herding, often cover themselves with white kaolin, making themselves look hideous.

The food of the Bahima is almost entirely milk, varied by meat from bulls or barren cows, and they drink large quantities of native beer. They never, under any circumstances, till the soil. About 20 to 30 years ago over half of the Bahima in Ankole are said to have perished, due, in the first place, to rinderpest destroying most of their cattle, and in the second place to small-pox following on and killing hundreds of people in their weakened, semi-starved condition.

The Bahima live in small villages of 10 to 20 houses inside a strong circular fence of thornbushes or euphorbias. Their huts are made of sticks and wattle, plastered with clay and thatched with grass.

The spear is their principal weapon, but they also have bows and arrows. Their shields are small, oval, very convex, and of basket-work. Their musical instruments are drums (which are like those of the Baganda), lyres and flutes.

They are a moral people, and their girls are generally chaste before marriage. They are fairly honest and, on the whole, truthful; but this cannot be said to apply to the average herdsman as met with in Buganda as regards milk and calves. They are also extremely indolent, being, as a rule, too proud to work. There is a great likelihood of the pure Muhima dying out. They practise spirit worship, and are profound believers in witchcraft, and each village has its little fetish huts. Marriage is by arrangement between the man and the girl, the man paying usually seven cows. The Bahima do not, as a rule, bury their dead (except their chiefs), the bodies being exposed to be eaten by Hyænas.

THE BATUSI.—Closely allied to the Bahima and very similar to them in appearance and customs are the Batusi, the ruling caste in the district of Ruanda. They are extremely intelligent, and though averse to manual labour, appear far more ready and capable of carrying out administrative work than their relatives, the Bahima. Their dress usually consists of lengths of kanga, black and white being the favourite shades, one piece hanging from the waist and another draped gracefully from the shoulder. A strip of the same material is often worn as a fillet round the forehead. A neatly-made bag of plaited grass with an otter skin collar and twisted tassels is often worn, while a ceremonial dress ornamented with the similar long-twisted skin tassels forms part of the national costume. The principal weapon carried is a long throwing spear, with a peculiar and rather small head; bows, arrows and shields are also used. The hair is worn in two ridges cut transversely across the head. Their villages are usually well-kept and enclosed by a circular grass fence round each group of huts. They subsist almost entirely on milk and beer.

ETHNOLOGICAL SURVEY.

An ethnological survey under the management of the Royal Society is now being made (1920). The leader of the party is the Reverend John Roscoe, who has devoted many years to missionary work in Uganda. The object is to make a scientific survey of the pastoral peoples in East Central Africa and this will embrace a study of the social and economic conditions amongst the Bahima of Ankole, the Banyoro in the Northern Province, the Bagishu on Mount Elgon and the neighbouring tribes of the Banyuli and the Badama.

CHAPTER IX.

ZOOLOGY.

Game.

The game animals of the Uganda Protectorate are practically all common to East Africa, with the exception of a small variety of the tragelaphus known as the harnessed antelope. On the other hand, many of those of East Africa are rarely found in Uganda, such as the Grant's and Thomson's gazelles, Coke's hartebeest and wildebeest.

The distribution varies according to the altitude and natural features of the country, and the various kinds of grass, scrub, etc., best suited to the different species. In some places the animals of certain species are curiously detached in small herds which occupy an area of a few square miles, divided from their fellows by huge tracts of country, noticeably the impala—having, it would appear, been killed off either by the natives or by disease in the intermediate spaces, and so become isolated.

Practically half of the Province of Buganda and of the districts of Toro and Bunyoro are covered with what is known as elephant grass, where no animals but the elephant and buffalo (excepting lion, leopard, and pig) can live. This confines the habitat for the antelope and gazelle to considerably less than half the area of the Protectorate, including the forests and thickly-populated localities with the country where they do not live.

The Uganda Protectorate may be roughly divided into the following zones, each having broadly-marked characteristic features which have a general bearing on the game distribution :—

(a) Undulating country with rich soil bearing "elephant grass," intersected throughout by valleys of papyrus swamps and forest scrub.

(b) Heavy timbered forest.

(c) Open plains and rolling downs of poor or shallow soil, with grass of the short growth variety, and stretches of forest scrub and acacia bush.

The game may be classified roughly under each as follows :—

(a) Elephant, distributed practically throughout, except in thickly-populated or badly-watered regions,

the large herds generally being found in the neighbourhood of the principal rivers.

Buffalo, ditto.

Leopard, occasionally.

Bush-pig, numerous everywhere.

Situtunga (Speke's tragelaphus), fairly plentiful in the large papyrus swamps.

Bushbuck,

Waterbuck,

} numerous in the forest scrub.

(b) Elephant.

Buffalo.

Giant-pig, scarce.

Ntalagania,* numerous at low altitudes.

(c) Elephant, in the rainy season.

Buffalo, ditto.

Lion.

Leopard.

Waterbuck (*Cobus defassa*).

Bushbuck.

Harnessed antelope.

Reedbuck.

Oribi.

Duiker.

Kobus Thomasi, by the lake shores and larger rivers.

Eland, in isolated herds, scarce.

Impala,

Jackson's hartebeest.

Topi (*Damaliscus jimila*).

Wart-hog.

Zebra.

Rhinoceros, by the Nile and in certain parts of the Eastern Province, scarce. Giraffe, ostrich, the greater and lesser kudu and the roan antelope, in the Nile Districts, Northern Province, and part of the Eastern Province, but scarce.

It is curious that the last-named animals, though common to British East Africa and the Soudan, do not exist in any other part of the intervening country in the Uganda Protectorate.

ELEPHANT.—Elephants are most plentiful in Bunyoro, which is a well-watered country with large forests, interspersed with large open tracts of elephant grass, affording good cover and an inexhaustible food and water supply.

The largest tuskers are to be found in Bunyoro also, which country they seem by instinct to have chosen as the

(*Ntalagania in the Luganda name for a small forest duiker.)

On the lakes cormorants and darters abound ; other birds most frequently seen being seagulls and, near the shore, the black-and-white kingfisher (*Ceryle rudis*).

Pigeons and doves are very numerous, the green pigeon (*Vinago calva nudirostris*) being a favourite both for sport and the "pot." It is very numerous in the southern portion of the Protectorate, while in the north its place is taken by a bird very much like it, *Vinago waalia*.

The genus *columba* is represented by two fine pigeons, *C. unicincta* and *C. guinea*, the former being common, but very shy, in most forests, the latter taking its place further north.

The commonest dove is *Turtur semitorquatus*, which is so numerous in some places as to afford excellent sport when flying to roost. Others which may be mentioned are *T. damarensis*, *T. senegalensis* and *Chalcopelia afra*, the latter being a small dove usually seen on the ground and when disturbed only flies on a few yards before settling again. There is one other dove (*Oena capensis*), not much larger than a wagtail, which is common in the few localities in which it is found.

Uganda is rich in birds of prey, vultures, eagles, hawks and owls all being fairly numerous. Of the eagles the bateleur (*Helotarsus ecaudatus*) is perhaps the most graceful, though scarcely more so than the fish eagle (*Haliaeetus vocifer*), which is common all around the lake. The best known of the hawk tribe is without doubt the Egyptian kite (*Milvus aegyptius*), which is to be found everywhere and is a curse to the chicken fancier.

Kestrels are common at certain times of the year, and owing to the fact that they arrive when the cuckoos are leaving they are considered by the natives to change from one to the other.

Owls, though seldom seen owing to their nocturnal habits, are fairly numerous. They vary greatly in size from Verreaux's eagle owl (*Bubo lacteus*), which stands some two feet high, to the pearl-spotted owl (*Glaucidium perlatum*), only about six inches.

The extraordinary Secretary-bird (*Serpentarius*) is to be seen occasionally in the Nile Province.

There are several species of storks in this country, the rarest and most interesting being the whale-headed stork, *Baloeniceps rex*. In the few localities in which it is found it seems to prefer, like most of its congeners, large swamps. The saddle-billed stork (*Ephippiorhynchus senegalensis*) is usually found in pairs and can be seen in many of the large swamps.

The Marabou (*Leptoptilos cruminifer*) is local, but where found is usually in some numbers. It feeds mainly on carrion, but also eats fishes, insects, etc. The hammer-headed stork (*scopus umbretta*) is an interesting bird on account of the enormous structure it builds for a nest, some three feet high and four feet wide at the top, placed usually in the fork of a tree.

No visitor to Uganda can have failed to see the lovely crested crane (*Balearica regulorum gibbericeps*), which is always to be found near stations, usually in flocks. Their dances in the mating season are very quaint and amusing.

Parrots and parrakeets are not well represented, the commonest being the well-known grey parrot (*Psittacus erithacus*), a popular bird in captivity. The red-headed love-bird (*Agapornis pullarus*) is also common, and, where acacia trees are numerous, Meyer's parrot (*Poccephalus meyeri*) is often to be seen. There are a large number of species of cuckoos (including the English bird, *Cuculus canorus*, on migration) and their near allies, of which the most gorgeous are the touracous or plantain-eaters.

In every forest the ugly and very unmusical black-and-white hornbill (*Bycanistes subcylindricus*) can be seen or heard, while its near relative, the ground hornbill (*Bucorvus cafer*), a very large, black bird, is found in many parts where the grass is short. Space will not permit to mention more than a few of the smaller birds.

Of weavers there are some thirty species, all of which build their nest of grass woven into a mat, some with long tubes as entrances and some only with holes at the side of the domed nest. Some build in colonies and others singly. Most of the males of the sun-birds, of which there are some twenty-five species, are brilliantly coloured in the breeding season, but when not breeding change to the dull colours of the females.

Tits, wagtails (of which the common black-and-white species, *Motacilla vidua*, is perhaps the most popular bird in the country, enlivening every house by its joyous song), larks, pipits, buntings, the sparrow, *Passer griseus* (a bird very similar in colour and habits to the only too well-known English bird), serins (close relative to canaries), whydahs (whose tails in the breeding season appear too heavy for comfort), the little fire-finches (hopping about at one's feet), shrikes of all colours and sizes, bulbuls, warblers, almost without number, thrushes and their near relations, the cossyphas or robin-chats (the most beautiful songsters in the country), fly-catchers, swallows, brilliant bee-eaters and rollers, kingfishers, barbets and wood-peckers, make up a total of which volumes might be written.

The northern shores of the Victoria Nyanza afford exceptional opportunities for observing the movements of migratory birds, and especially is this true of the peninsula of Entebbe with its stretches of open country and numerous sandy beaches. European-breeding migrants arrive in numbers in the month of September, but the first swallows (*Hirundo rustica*) are seen before the end of July. Some species, such as the European sandmartin and at least two kinds of wagtail, remain in very large numbers until the homeward movement begins in March; others, like the red-backed shrike, halt for a few weeks only and then disappear southwards. More or less common all through the months of the northern winter are the European kestrel, wheatear, whinchat, spotted flycatcher, stonechat, redstart, tree pipit and the smaller warblers, while on the lake beaches and neighbouring uplands the turnstone, little stint, wimbrel, and other northern waders may be found. The common sandpiper is present throughout the year and has been found nesting in Buddu, but its numbers are largely increased in winter.

No less interesting, though more difficult of study, is the migration of African species within the limits of the continent. Vultures, eagles and hawks are common at certain seasons in parts of the Protectorate where they do not breed; bee-eaters, rollers and glossy starlings and the African swallows, *Hirundo griseopyga*, *H. atrocerulea* and *Riparia minor*, to quote but a few instances, are birds of whose itineraries, regularly though they arrive and disappear, almost nothing is known.

In a general way it is true that in Uganda non-migratory birds breed all the year round; there are, however, two marked "seasons" coincident with the rains of February-June and September-November, when far more individuals are to be found nesting than in the drier months. May is probably the month when most eggs are laid.

The birds of Uganda are on the whole shy and, therefore, difficult to observe. Notes on the nests and habits are very scarce, and although it is doubtful whether there are many new birds to be discovered, there is an enormous amount of work for ornithologists in this wonderful country, where forms from the north, south, east and west may be met with.

CHAPTER X.

ENTOMOLOGY.

The question of the variety of problems which is offered to both the entomologist and agriculturist in Uganda is hardly approached by any country. Apart from variety, the fact which is of the greatest interest in Uganda is that we are witnessing a rapid disturbance of the natural conditions by the bringing under cultivation from an uncultivated condition a large number of acres annually.

Insects respond quickly to the disturbance of the natural balance which existed before the advent of settlers in a new country. Insects which previously fed on uncultivated wild plants, when provided with an almost unlimited supply of available food in the form of newly-imported crops increase surprisingly rapid and attain an economic importance unthought of. Moreover, owing to the opening up and development of the country consequent on the large influx of settlers, large quantities of vegetation, including ornamental and economic trees and shrubs, are imported in constantly increasing quantities with the possibility of the introduction of insect pests.

No entomological work other than that connected with tsetse flies and sleeping sickness was carried out prior to the appointment of an Economic Entomologist in 1908. As before this agricultural development had scarcely begun, the Government certainly realised at an early date the necessity for taking steps towards the control of injurious insects. A few scientific expeditions for academic purposes had been sent out, the most notable being that sent by the British Museum (Natural History) to Mount Ruwenzori in 1905, but otherwise no actual investigation had been undertaken.

THE DIVISION OF ENTOMOLOGY.

The problems of insect control concern agriculture, forestry, public health and other activities of man; and in proportion to the increase of the activities in importance,

the knowledge of the means of control likewise increases. It is safe to say that, with our present knowledge of the methods of insect control, a great part of the loss now caused by insects to planters should be saved.

One of the chief objects of the work of the Division of Entomology is to assist planters in the prevention of these losses. It should be realised that it is bad business to advocate methods for the purpose of increasing the productivity of the soil and of the crops, if hand in hand with these improvements, steps are not taken to lessen the means responsible for reducing in such a large measure the crops produced.

Insects and ticks affecting man and live stock are a serious problem throughout Uganda. Through the co-operation of several officials and non-officials, reports and specimens are received from all over the Protectorate, and in this way a knowledge is being gained of the prevalence and distribution of these pests.

An increasingly large and representative collection of Uganda insects and biting arthropods is maintained and is used in the identification of collections sent by collectors for that purpose.

In addition to the work on the problems of insect control, the Division of Entomology also carries on the inspection and fumigation of plants and seeds imported into the Protectorate in accordance with Ordinance No. 2 of 1908.

Importations of plants and seeds are allowed to enter the Protectorate through the Port of Kampala only, where a fumigation station has been established.

It has been repeatedly found that imported pests are the most serious, for an insect may attract but little, if any, attention in its native home, where it is kept under control by its natural enemies ; but, on its being taken away and placed in a congenial environment with ample supply of suitable food, it will increase rapidly in the absence of the natural checks which kept it under control at home.

LEGISLATION AGAINST INSECT PESTS.

In addition to the above Ordinance, there are two notices under the "Uganda Customs Consolidation Ordinance, 1904," which deal with the question of the importation of plants and seeds ; one prohibits the importation of coffee plants and coffee, other than roasted and ground coffee, without the consent of the Governor previously

given in writing ; the other prohibits the importation of plant-life in any stage from Ceylon without the consent of the Governor previously given in writing.

The Plant Pests Ordinance, No. 13 of 1912, provides for the establishment of a Board for each Province, constituted of the Provincial Commissioner, the Director of Agriculture, the Government Entomologist, two members recommended by the Uganda Planters' Association or other Planters' Association, and in the case of Buganda Province, two members of the Lukiko. The Board has the power to enforce the owner or occupier of land to adopt measures, preventive or remedial, as it may consider advisable for the prevention or control of any insects, fungi, or parasitic plants that may occur thereon.

INSECTS ATTACKING CROPS.

The most important crops in Uganda are cotton, coffee, cacao, para rubber and tea. Insects
attacking
Cotton.

The most prevalent of the insects attacking cotton are the "cotton stainers," the bollworm, *Earias insulana*, Boisd., and the leaf-footed plant bug, *Leptoglossus membranaceus*, Fab. The minor pests include the scale insect, *Pulvinaria jacksoni*, Newst., the grasshopper, *Phymateus viridipes*, Stal., and the green fly, *Aphis gossypii*, Glover.

The "cotton stainers" occurring locally are *Dysdercus nigrofasciatus*, Stal., *D. pretiosus*, Dist., *Oxycaerenus gossipinus*, Dist., and *O. hyalipennis*, Costa. The insects are so named from the fact that they stain the fibre with their excrement and with the juices of their bodies, which are crushed during the ginning operations. They attack the bolls, sucking the juices from the lint and seeds, thus preventing the normal development. There is no satisfactory method for controlling these pests. The most practicable method is to collect and destroy the insects. The insects conceal themselves under any available rubbish, so a good method of combating them is either to remove the debris, or by using such places as traps to be destroyed with the insects they contain.

The bollworm, *E. insulana*, has periodically made its presence felt. Usually young bolls which have been pierced by this bollworm dry up without opening and remain on the plant. The attack of this insect on a rapidly maturing boll causes premature splitting, and the immature fibre remains in a matted mass within the boll. Handpicking of the infected bolls is the most satisfactory method of controlling this pest.

The leaf-footed plant bug causes on the boll blister-like areas of a diameter of 4 or 5 mm., while less frequently, and more especially in the small rapidly growing bolls, a physiological reaction in the proliferation of the tissues is caused on the inner side of the boll. The objective point of attack by this pest is the seeds, which it is able to reach with little difficulty by means of the thread-like organs of its mouth parts, except in the nearly matured bolls which are protected by the resistance offered by the lint. Under certain circumstances, contact insecticides may be of use against this bug, but only when they occur in such abundance that they cannot be coped with by collecting.

The principal pests on coffee are the following:—The leaf-eating caterpillar, *Metadrepna glauca*, Hmp., of which there have been several serious outbreaks, especially east of the Nile, but which is easily controlled by stomach poisons, and fortunately is parasitized by an egg parasite. Another leaf-eating caterpillar feeding on this crop is *Parasa* sp., but it occurs so infrequently that it can only be regarded as a minor pest. The cocoons are parasitized by the cuckoo wasps, *Chrysis* (*Tetrachrysis*) *lyncea*, Fab., and *C. postscutellaris*, Mocs.

There are several species of scale insects which are pests on this crop, and the species, *Pseudococcus citri*, Risso, causes great loss. The species at present known to attack coffee are—*Icerya nigroareolata*, Newst., *Asterolecanium coffeae*, Newst., *Pseudococcus citri* (Risso), *Ps. virgatus*, Ckll., *Pulvinaria psidii*, Mask., *Ceroplastes ceriferus*, And., *C. galeatus*, Newst., *C. vinsonioides*, Newst., *C. africanum* (Newst.), *C. viridis* (Green), *Saissetia hemisphaerica* (Targ.), *S. nigra* (Nietn.), *S. subhemisphaerica* (Newst.), *Stictococcus gowdeyi*, Newst., *Selanaspidus articulatus*, (Morg.), and *Ischnaspis longirostris* (Sign.). All these insects are controlled by the use of contact insecticides. The root form of *Ps. citri* is very difficult to control. Its presence is usually detected by the presence of an ant, *Acropyga gowdeyi*, Wheeler, with which it is always associated.

Cutworms, *Agrotis* spp., cause considerable loss amongst young coffee. They ring bark the stems just above the surface of the ground with the result that the tree dies, or in less complete cases of girdling the tree never looks healthy and if it produces the crop the weight of the berries often causes it to snap at the point of girdling. This insect is controlled by the use of poison baits, or by the collection of the caterpillars, which are found during the day just beneath the surface of the soil within a radius of three inches from the stem of the tree.

The leaf-miner, *Leucoptera* (*Cemistoma*) *coffeella*, Staint., has recently appeared in the Singo District and already ranks as one of the most serious pests on coffee. The eggs are laid on the leaves, the larvæ penetrate into the leaves and feed on the parenchyma, resulting in large, brown patches caused by the drying up of the upper epidermis. Leaves which are badly mined have a scorched appearance and eventually drop. Even when they do not drop so much of the epidermal tissue is destroyed that the functions of the leaf are interfered with. This insect lends itself to no other control measure than the collection of the infected leaves, those that have fallen as well as those still remaining on the trees.

The coffee berry borer, *Stephanoderes coffeae*, Haged., feeds on the beans, causing them to shrivel and become unfit for consumption. Since the whole life-cycle of this beetle is passed within the beans, insecticides are of no avail. As a preventive measure, berries in which the insect has tunnelled should be picked and destroyed, as by this measure the insect will, in one stage or the other, be destroyed. Artificial drying of the parchment coffee destroys any beetles that happen to be still feeding after the coffee has been picked and pulped, but sun-drying does not kill them.

The fruit fly, *Ceratitis capitata*, Wied., which attacks coffee, is known as the Mediterranean fruit fly. It has a wide distribution and a large variety of food plants. It can be controlled by the Mally fruit fly remedy, whereby a solution of attractive sweetness is made the carrier of a poison.

In addition to the berry borer there are three stem borers of coffee—*Nitocris princeps*, Jord., *Apate monacha*, Fab., and *A. indistincta*, Murr. The first beetle starts boring near the tip of the branch and downwards into the stem and continues boring until the collar of the stem is reached; it is controlled by injecting a few drops of carbon bisulphide at the point of entrance into the stem from the branch. The *Apate* spp. bore upwards; they are controlled by injecting a few drops of chloroform or benzine.

The green fly, *Toxoptera coffeae*, (Nietn.), attacks coffee in the nurseries and young coffee in the fields.

The two plant bugs, *Antestia variegata*, Thunb., and *Serinetha hexophthalma*, Thunb., are pests on coffee, the first named being one of the worse pests, if not the worst pest, on the crop. This bug attacks the flower buds, the fruit, and the young terminals—when the flower buds are attacked the flowers are killed—and is one of the many

causes of non-setting of the flowers ; when the berries are attacked they either fall off or remain on the tree and blacken ; and when the tips of the terminals are attacked they are killed and the tree throws out an undesirably large number of secondaries. Happily, the eggs of the bug are highly parasitized, and indeed to such a great extent that superparasitism occurs with the usual result that the percentage of parasitism temporarily declines. The other bug, *S. hexophthalma*, has appeared very recently and nothing is yet known of its bionomics. It destroys the tissues of the leaves in more or less rectangular patches.

**Insect Pests
on Cacao.**

The most important insect pest on this crop is the " Mosquito Blight ", *Helopeltis bergrothii*, Reut., var. This bug lays its eggs in the young twigs, which ultimately " die-back. " The nymphs and adults suck the pods and in the case of young pods they are either killed or the normal development is interfered with. The adoption of fires, made of material that produces a large amount of smoke, throughout the plantation drives away these insects.

The next in importance are the scale insects, *Pseudococcus citri* (Risso), *Stictococcus diversiseta*, Silv., and *Inglisia castilloæ*, var. *theobromæ*, Newst., which attacks the pods and branches, and are controlled by contact insecticides.

The green fly, *Toxoptera theobromæ*, Schout., attacks young cacao resulting in the stunting of the tree if no remedial measure is used.

The bug, *Plataspis vermicellaris*, Stal., is frequently found in large clusters sucking the stems. It also attacks the *Erythrina* used as shade trees for this crop.

The fruit fly, *Ceratitis punctata*, Wied., attacks the pod. As in the case of the Mediterranean fruit fly, it can be controlled by the Mally fruit-fly remedy.

There are two leaf-eating caterpillars attacking this crop, the larva of a Saturniid moth and a *Parasa* sp., which are readily controlled by stomach poisons.

The crickets, *Gryllus bimaculatus*, de G., and *Gryllotalpa africana*, P. de B., are very destructive to young cacao in the nurseries, especially when heavy shade is used. Collecting, or the use of poison baits, or a mixture of kerosene oil and sand placed at the base of the plants is effective in controlling these pests.

The beetle, *Adoretus hirtellus*, Castn., attacks the leaves. It only feeds at night, but the work of this insect can easily be recognised, as the portion of the leaf between the sub-veins is eaten, causing the leaves to have a lattice-

work appearance. The remedy is to spray with a stomach poison.

The "shot-hole" borers, *Xyleborus* spp., are invariably to be found in trees suffering from "die-back," and less often in those attacked by canker.

The beetle, *Sthenias cylindrator*, Fab., ring-barks cacao branches of a maximum diameter of $\frac{3}{4}$ inch, with the result that the part of the branch beyond the point of girdling dies.

The only insects of any importance attacking para rubber are the scale insect, *Aspidiotus destructor*, Sign., and the "shot-hole" borers, *Xyleborus affinis*, Erich., *X. confusus*, Erich., *X. camerinus*, Haged. The "shot-hole," borers, as in the case of the species attacking cacao, merely follow a disease and are not the cause of the disease.

**Insect Pests
of Para
Rubber.**

The only insects which are as yet known to attack tea, which is grown to a very limited extent, are the scale insects, *Aspidiotus transparens*, Green, on the leaves and *Coccus discrepans*, Green, on the roots, and the "Mosquito Blight," *Helopeltis bergrothii*, Rent., var.

**Insect Pests
of Tea.**

CHAPTER XI.

MEDICAL.

Climate.

The climate of the Protectorate as a whole, though pleasant, cannot be considered healthy for Europeans, and no part of it is or can be ever a "White Man's Country."

With some exceptions (the Ruwenzori Range and the mountainous country of the south-west, where it is cold, and the Nile Valley north of Lake Albert and its hinterland where it is hot), the temperature is moderate, and varies but little throughout the year.

In most parts of the Protectorate there are two rainy seasons and two dry seasons, the heavy rains generally being in March, April and May, and the lesser rains in November and December. The coolest season is from May till July, and the hottest during January and February.

The mean maximum temperature for most districts is about 80 deg. F., and the mean minimum 60 deg. Taken as a whole the temperature for the Buganda Kingdom varies between 75 deg. day and 65 deg. night. On the Ruwenzori Range there is extreme cold with perpetual snow, and it is also cold on the higher slopes of Mount Elgon, while in the Nile Valley the mean maximum temperature is 90 deg. and the mean minimum 74 deg.

The rainfall varies from 20 to 70 inches, that for Entebbe being generally just over 50 inches. For further details *vide* Meteorological section.

Health.

The health of Europeans resident in Uganda varies very considerably. Some enjoy good health for years while some seem to be always getting fever.

Malaria is common and liable to be contracted at any time, but especially at the end of the rainy seasons. Those who are careless get attack after attack and so render themselves liable to an attack of blackwater fever. The prevailing type of malaria if well treated is not in itself dangerous, but supervening blackwater fever is, and therefore every precaution should be taken to avoid an attack.

Mosquito nets should be used every night even in places where, and at seasons during which, there are apparently no mosquitoes.

The question of taking quinine as a prophylactic against malaria is a difficult one, but the best rule is to take five grains every day regularly. Advice as to the use of quinine during an attack of malaria is given below.

As regards the more dangerous diseases of the tropics, cholera and yellow fever do not occur in the Protectorate ; plague, sleeping sickness and small-pox are endemic, but with ordinary care can be easily avoided. Plague is endemic, especially in parts of Buddu and Koki, and in Bukedi, and is believed to have occurred in small epidemics in many parts of the Protectorate. Sleeping sickness is now rare and the risk of infection, outside the prohibited areas in which the tsetse fly exists, is practically negligible. As the result of stringent sleeping sickness regulations, the islands in Lake Victoria and the foreshores of lakes and rivers have been evacuated by the population, except at recognized points, which are kept permanently cleared. The prohibited area has now been reduced to one mile in the case of Lake Victoria and expert investigations are being carried out with a view to early re-colonization in the other depopulated areas of the Buganda Province. Small-pox epidemics occur at odd times at various places but it is very uncommon in Europeans. All visitors and residents should, however, be re-vaccinated if they have not been vaccinated within the last seven years. Dysentery is rare amongst Europeans and can be generally avoided by boiling the drinking water and using ordinary care in diet.

European children do very well in Uganda till the age of five, after which they are apt to get pale, wan and listless, and they should be sent home permanently after that age. Children in Uganda should preferably be kept indoors between the hours of 8.30 a.m. and 5 p.m., even on apparently dull days, and if this is not possible they should be kept in the shade.

General Health.

(a) PERSONAL.

The clothing should be light. For outer clothing cotton or a mixture of cotton and silk is suitable during the day-time for the greater part of the year. In the colder seasons and stations and in the evenings flannels or tweeds are worn with comfort. As a general rule underclothing should be of woollen or a mixture of woollen with cotton or silk. A raincoat and a medium or light overcoat are required. Perhaps the most important article of dress, however, is the helmet. Newcomers, especially those who have been in

South Africa, are very apt to despise a helmet and wear a double terai or even a single one. But a good pith, cork or felt helmet (preferably lined with red) is absolutely essential for man, woman or child between the hours of 8 a.m. and 5 p.m., in all parts of the Protectorate. Mosquito boots should be worn every evening, especially when travelling. Thick walking boots are preferable to thin ones, as they protect the feet from the heat of the ground, which is often very great in the daytime.

Drinking water should always be boiled, and, if possible, filtered. Moderation in both eating and drinking should be observed, especially at mid-day. At this time there should be a light meal with little meat and no alcohol. Alcohol should not as a rule be taken before sundown and then it should be well diluted. A complete change of diet now and then is advisable.

(b) GENERAL.

The house should be kept clean and free from dust and all floors well washed with cold water twice a week. All mosquito doors and windows should be shut by 5.30 p.m. at the latest and thrown open again in the morning. The tanks and gutters should be periodically inspected to see that the tanks are mosquito proof and that the guttering does not hold water. If it sags and retains water a hole should be pierced wherever it sags, $\frac{1}{2}$ inch in diameter. Barrels should not be used for storing water unless covered in with wire gauze. The compound should be kept clear and clean, an open space being kept all around the house. No tree should hang over the roof and no creeper should be allowed to grow over the guttering. No long grass or undergrowth should be allowed in the compound, as it forms a hiding place for insects, refuse, empty tins, etc. The whole compound should be inspected at least once a week for old tins, bottles, etc., capable of holding water, as these form ideal breeding places for mosquitoes. Water-holding plants, such as bananas, pineapples, etc., should not be allowed in the compound.

The "boys" should not be allowed to throw refuse on to the ground outside the back door; this should be put in a tin which is regularly emptied and cleaned, and no rubbish heap should be allowed in the garden, as such heaps breed rats, flies and other noxious insects.

The w.c. should be well away from the house and should be kept clean. The ordinary box containing a pail is the best, a box of earth and a tin of disinfectant powder being kept at hand. Daily exercise is essential to health, and this

is especially so in the tropics. 5 p.m. to 6 p.m. should be set aside for this every day. In out-stations and solitary places a hobby is essential, preferably in some branch of natural history, as this ensures out-door exercise. The Government entomologist will supply anyone willing to collect biting flies, insects, etc., and to send him specimens, with a complete entomological outfit containing all necessary apparatus, and also instructions how to collect and preserve the different orders of insects.

Medical officers and assistants are stationed as a rule **The Staff.** at the following places :—Entebbe, Kampala, Jinja, Mbale, Soroti, Mbarara, Masindi, Fort Portal, Bombo, Gulu and Lira. There are assistants generally stationed at Masaka, Hoima, Butiaba, Namasagali, Kigezi and Kitgum.

The Government European Hospital at Entebbe has six beds, and there are two nursing sisters attached to it ; that at Jinja has four beds, with one nursing sister. There is an Asiatic Hospital at Entebbe and native hospitals at Entebbe, Kampala, Jinja, Mbarara, Mbale, Soroti, Bombo, Fort Portal, Masindi, Masaka, Gulu and Lira.

There are out-door dispensaries at the following stations besides those given above :—Hoima, Butiaba, Namasagali, Kigezi and Kitgum.

In addition to the Government Hospitals the Church Missionary Society has a European and native hospital at Kampala and Fort Portal, and branch dispensaries at Ndeje, Mukono, Hoima, Mbale, Masindi, Kamule, Gayaza, Iganga, Nabumale and Njora.

The scale of fees at the various Government hospitals is as follows :—

I.—EUROPEAN HOSPITAL.						Hospital Fees.
						Per diem.
(a) Non-officials.						Rs.
Inclusive fee					12.0	
Admission to two-bed ward					5.0	
(b) Officials.						
Those whose salary does not exceed £200 p.a.					2.0	
Those whose salary exceeds £200 but does not exceed £250					2.50	
Those whose salary exceeds £250 but does not exceed £400					3.0	
Those whose salary exceeds £400					5.0	

The above charges include operations on officials only.

For non-officials the fees for operations are a matter of arrangement with the medical officer.

N.B.—The wives and families of officials are counted as officials except as regards operations and confinements.

2.—ASIATIC HOSPITAL.

	Per diem. Rs.
(a) Non-officials	1.50
(b) Officials whose salary exceed Rs. 16 but not Rs. 30	0.25
Those whose salary exceeds Rs. 30 but not Rs. 50	0.37
Those whose salary exceeds Rs. 50 but not Rs. 100	0.62
Those whose salary exceeds Rs. 100	1.0

Rules about fees for wives and families as above for Europeans.

3.—ISOLATION HOSPITALS.

As for other hospitals, if maintenance is supplied by Government, otherwise no charge.

LUNATIC ASYLUMS.

There are none in the Protectorate. At present a few native lunatics are kept at Kyetume Sleeping Sickness Camp ; criminal lunatics are confined in the gaol at Hoima.

NOTES ON A FEW OF THE DISEASES MORE GENERALLY MET WITH IN UGANDA PROTECTORATE.

Malaria.

The form of malaria generally occurring in Uganda is not the regular intermittent type with cold, hot and sweating stages, but is generally of a remittent type or irregularly and imperfectly intermittent. The well-marked rigor with sudden onset may be the first sign, but very often this is absent, and the patient after feeling seedy for some days, one day feels worse, and taking his temperature finds it 101 deg. to 103 deg. He should go to bed at once, put on two or three blankets, and take 5 to 10 grs. of aspirin or phenacetin with something hot, *e.g.*, a cup of tea. This will very soon produce perspiration, and then 10 grs. of quinine should be taken (preferably in liquid form), and thereafter 10 grs. of quinine should be taken twice daily until the temperature remains normal all day. Calomel, 3 grs., should be taken last thing the first night followed by some saline such as Epsom salts in the morning. Rest in bed is essential during the fever, and only liquid nourishment should be taken during the same period, as solid food is more likely to cause vomiting. When the temperature is normal, the dose of quinine may be reduced to 5 grs. three times a day, and this should be kept on for five days ; at the end of that period 5 grs. twice daily for ten days and then 5 grs. once daily for a month, after which it may be discontinued altogether for a time except in the more malarious districts.

Carelessness in the matter of not remaining in bed during the fever, or in not continuing with sufficient doses of quinine, undoubtedly predisposes to an attack of blackwater fever, which is a dangerous disease, while malaria, as met in Uganda, is not, if well treated.

The exact cause of this disease is unknown, but evidence **Blackwater Fever.** all goes to prove that the more malaria one has, the more liable one is to an attack of blackwater fever. Many people do not take sufficient quinine because some cases of blackwater fever are said to have been brought on by this drug. But it is just those people who do not take enough quinine when they get malaria, or who do not continue to take it long enough after an attack of fever, who get blackwater fever.

The passing of blackwater, *i.e.*, porter or port wine-coloured urine, is the first sign of an attack. The patient should go to bed at once and send for the nearest doctor.

Calomel, 3 grs., should be the first thing taken, and a large amount of liquid (milk, barley water, bovril or water) should be drunk regularly until the urine is quite clear again, and continued for two or three days after. As a rule no drugs are required at all, the treatment being complete rest in bed and copious fluid diet. Should the temperature, however, remain high after the blackwater has begun, quinine may be taken, but as a rule this should only be on the advice of a doctor. The rest in bed must be complete, *i.e.*, bed-pan and bottle must be used, and not even sitting up in bed allowed. The calomel must be repeated if necessary. Vomiting may be troublesome. Mustard plasters applied over the stomach and sips of really hot water are the best remedies. A complete change is advisable after an attack of blackwater fever.

This is often taken for malaria and *vice versa*. The **Sunstroke.** effects of the sun are felt very much more by persons suffering from malaria; hence mild malaria is often attributed to "a touch of the sun," treatment of quinine omitted and recovery delayed. A doctor should be consulted when possible. If it is certainly sunstroke, no quinine should be taken as it aggravates the headache. Rest in bed and very light diet is necessary. Aspirin or phenacetin, 5 to 10 grs., are the best remedies for the headache and reducing the temperature. This and keeping the bowels open generally is all that is required. In severe cases where there is collapse stimulants may be needed, and where the temperature is very high, affusion to the head or cold sponging is usually advisable.

DISEASES OF THE DIGESTIVE SYSTEM.

Sore Throat. This is a fairly common complaint in Uganda as an acute tonsillitis with sudden onset and severe headache and a high temperature. The patient should go to bed and take 3 grs. of calomel overnight, gargling frequently with some weak antiseptic, such as potass permang. Fluid diet is necessary during the acute stage. Quinine in 2 or 3 gr. doses twice daily should be taken during the attack, and for a week after.

Constipation. This is more common in the tropics than in England, though it should be guarded against even more carefully than at home, as a sluggish liver, piles, etc., are more likely to occur to those who are habitually constipated. Regular daily exercise, and the acquirement of the habit of relieving nature at the same hour every day, are the best prophylactic methods. Aperients must be taken whenever necessary, and it is better to vary these than to take always the same one. The vegetable laxatives are better than mineral ones, and may be followed by some salts in the morning.

Diarrhoea. This should be looked after at once and not be allowed to get chronic. As a rule the best course is to take a dose of castor oil (one ounce) or Epsom salts (2 to 4 teaspoonsfuls) to clear any irritating matter that may be left in the intestines, and then, four hours afterwards, to take 15 to 20 drops of chlorodyne or tinc. opii after each loose stool until the diarrhoea stops. Not more than three or four doses should be taken. Rest both for the whole body and the intestinal tract is important, and the diet should be very light and carefully chosen while the diarrhoea lasts and for the next few days after it has ceased.

Dysentery. This is a serious disease and the doctor should be called in as soon as possible. Fortunately, it is not as common as is supposed, and it does not follow, because a little blood appears in the stools in the course of diarrhoea, that the case is one of dysentery. In any event, in the early stage, and until medical advice can be obtained, the treatment given above for diarrhoea will be suitable. Complete rest in bed is essential from the start. If diarrhoea persists, sodium sulphate may be tried in small doses, or if no sodium sulphate is available, Epsom salts (magnesium sulphate). These salts should be given in teaspoonful doses every hour until the stools, though loose, regain a normal colour and smell. The drug should be given in hot water, flavoured with cinnamon of ginger if available. The following mixture may then be given for two or three days, or until all signs of blood and mucus have disappeared :—Magn. sulph.

2 ounces, dilute sulphuric acid, 3 teaspoonfuls, tct. of ginger, 3 teaspoonfuls, water to 8 ounces. Dose : One teaspoonful every two hours. But if the stools become watery the mixture must be stopped at once. The lessening of the pain and the frequent desire to go to stool shows that the sulphates are acting successfully.

DISEASES OF THE SKIN.

Prickly heat is not very common in Uganda. It is due **Prickly Heat.** to excessive sweating, and any measure taken to reduce that will lessen the condition. Light clothes should be worn and changed frequently, the skin being dried as well as possible. A lemon cut in half and rubbed on is a popular though, as a rule, an inefficient remedy. Keeping the skin as dry as possible and dusting it with any ordinary dusting powder is the best way of treating it.

Scabies, or the itch, is occasionally met with, though **Scabies.** cleanliness is, as a rule, an efficient safeguard against it. It is due to the burrowing of a small mite beneath the skin, generally between the fingers or toes, or round the wrist. The treatment is to scrub the skin well, in these parts particularly, with soap and hot water and then rub in sulphur ointment. This should be done morning and evening.

Boils are not uncommon, and may be troublesome and **Boils.** painful. They should not be incised as a rule, but if a boil is "ripe" and a "core" is obvious inside, an incision to aid extraction of the core saves a lot of time in the healing process. They should not be poulticed, but only bathed often with an antiseptic lotion. Corrosive sublimate (1 in 3,000) is perhaps the best. Great care should be taken to prevent pus, whether from wound, dressings or fingers infecting another part. Quinine, 5 grs., and tonics are beneficial, but, if the boils are troublesome and fresh ones occur, a change of climate is indicated.

Jiggers are very common, but Europeans who use soap **Jiggers.** and water regularly are not troubled with them very much. Itching of a toe or anywhere on the foot generally means a jigger, and a native boy should be asked to look for one at once. He should be allowed to take it out, as most natives are experts at it from long practice. But it should be seen that the needle he uses is quite clean. After removal of the jigger, if socks or stockings are going to be put on again at once, a clean piece of lint or linen should be wrapped round the toe. If the jigger has reached any size, absorbent dressings, either dry or wrung out with weak

carbolic lotion, should be applied for at least 48 hours, and the discharge should on no account be allowed to be retained in the wound and become septic.

Injuries.

Even the slightest injuries, such as cuts or scratches, should be washed at once with antiseptics and covered until healed.

Snake Bite.

It is not likely that a European will be bitten by a snake, but his porters may be. The treatment, to be effectual, must be immediate. A cross-shaped incision* is made over the spot, and the leg bound round above the wound quite tightly. Crystals of permang. of potash should be rubbed in if at hand. Large doses of whiskey or brandy are necessary if there is any collapse.

Internal Parasites.

Tape-worm, round-worm, ankylostoma, and bilharzia are common among natives. Guinea worm is common in the Nile Valley and in the Rudolf Province. These parasites are easily avoided by Europeans by using ordinary precautions in the use of food and water.

* The incision should be of the form shown below, the letters *a a* indicating the fang marks:





Photo by Lea Wilson

PICKING COFFEE, THREE YEARS OLD, KIREKA ESTATE.

CHAPTER XII.

AGRICULTURE.

In the early days no crops were cultivated for export, but simply for food. Ivory, wild rubber, and hides later on, became the principal exports, whilst at the present time, such exports are of subsidiary importance, as various crops are being successfully produced for export. As will be seen from the 1918-19 statistics the export of certain produce has considerably diminished. This is, however, only a temporary set-back, due to the lack of ocean transport caused by the war and, given natural conditions again, a large increase may be expected.

COTTON.

The cotton industry is by far the most important in the Protectorate, and the following table gives the statistics of the cotton industry during each financial year since the commencement of the industry :—

Year.	Estimated. Acreage.	Lint exported to 31st March.	Value.
		Cwts.	£
1904-5 ..	?	180	236
1905-6 ..	?	860	1,087
1906-7 ..	?	3,500	11,413
1907-8 ..	?	14,322	26,885
1908-9 ..	17,980	14,520	41,232
1909-10 ..	24,680	23,180	60,445
1910-11 ..	41,693	49,454	168,620
1911-12 ..	61,020	74,498	236,759
1912-13 ..	50,100	93,575	254,359
1913-14 ..	110,264	99,927	317,687
1914-15 ..	118,778	117,201	354,146
1915-16 ..	92,127	93,935	245,426
1916-17 ..	129,833	77,970	347,810
1917-18 ..	133,530	99,489	537,631
1918-19 ..	144,592	98,188	965,951

All the cotton is ginned and baled in the country now, whereas some years ago about 2,000 tons of unginned cotton were exported annually to British East Africa for ginning and baling.

The estimated acreage is largely based on the amount of seed distributed, but on the outbreak of war in August, 1914, much of the seed already distributed was never planted, and the drainage of population for war work seriously affected the quantity of cotton produced. This was aggravated by the crop being unsaleable for some months causing a serious temporary set-back to the industry, which is clearly shown in the table above. Real progress is again taking place, and it is hoped that gradual extension will be recorded in future years.

It should be noted that the exports of any year are not the direct result of the acreage sown during that year, or during the previous year, as the export of cotton is at its highest on the 31st March of any year.

Cotton Seed.

Cotton seed is a bulky product and export depends mainly on freight charges.

A little oil is expressed locally, but the greater part of the seed is entirely wasted, although it makes an excellent manure for all crops.

The exports for the last eight years are as follows :—

Year.	Unit.	Valuc.
	Cwts.	£
1911-12 ..	58,549	5,909
1912-13 ..	112,283	11,335
1913-14 ..	134,128	13,499
1914-15 ..	180,334	18,172
1915-16 ..	104,070	9,760
1916-17 ..	109,213	10,220
1917-18 ..	44,021	7,402
1918-19 ..	33,223	6,149.

Development of Industry.

The nomenclature of the cottons, from the botanical point of view, is rather hazy, but there is no doubt that more than one species of *Gossypium* has been growing in Uganda for a very long time.

In 1862-63, Speke and Grant collected specimens which were identified at Kew as *Gossypium barbadense*, L., which is Egyptian cotton. This was probably introduced by Arabs, whilst Sir Samuel Baker is said to have cultivated the old Egyptian type (*Gallini*) at Masindi in 1872, which grew well.

It is very probable that Uganda possesses three species of so-called indigenous cottons :—

- (a) *Gossypium obtusifolium*, Roxb., var. *Africanum*.
- (b) *Gossypium brasiliense*.
- (c) *Gossypium Kirkii*.

According to Watt, the habitat of *Gossypium Kirkii* is East Tropical Africa, where it is found purely wild and never apparently cultivated. In external appearances it has a strong resemblance to *Gossypium brasiliense*, and has undoubtedly influenced the other *spp.* of *Gossypium* in this country.

Gossypium brasiliense is abundant in Africa, and it is claimed as an indigenous plant, whilst the special race of *Gossypium obtusifolium*, Roxb., characteristic of Africa, viz., the variety *Africana* (Watt) possesses certain peculiarities that remind one of *Gossypium Kirkii*.

Although cotton cultivation is a new industry in the Protectorate, cotton rapidly headed the list of exports until, at the present time, the value of cotton exports exceeds the total of all the other exports added together, and promises to extend even more rapidly in the future than in the past few years.

Amongst the seed imported were the following Egyptian varieties:—*Affifi*, *Abassi*, *Yannovitch* and *Ashmouni*. Of these *Abassi* gave the most satisfactory results.

Various other kinds of seed were tried including *Sea Island*, *Caravonica*, *Peruvian* and *American Upland*, which latter included a large consignment of "*Black Rattler*." *Black Rattler* proved absolutely unsuited to the conditions prevailing, and resulted in a temporary set-back to the industry.

It was decided to restrict experimental work to the long-stapled *Upland Cottons*, and several of the better-known and well-established ones were tried with the result that *Allen* and *Sunflower* were selected as best suited to form the basis of Uganda cotton.

Work is still going on in acclimatising and grading up a suitable cotton, and the results are highly gratifying.

As the seed supply is entirely in the hands of the Government, each season's sowing is done with the highest quality seed obtainable, drawn from specially selected areas. Cultivation.

In the past the cotton has not been altogether satisfactorily handled after leaving the hands of the growers owing to lack of proper transport facilities, storage accommodation, and the absence of ginneries in the cotton-growing districts. Improvements are gradually being made in the right directions, but much yet remains to be done before the facilities for dealing with the crop are in any way commensurate with the value and quality of Uganda cotton.

Cotton growing is almost entirely a native industry, and the large exports are due to thousands of small cultivators throughout the country. The cotton is planted four feet between the rows and one-and-a-half feet between the

plants in the rows, after the soil has been well cultivated. Blanks are re-sown as soon as possible and the plants thinned as early as practicable, leaving only a single plant to each hole. Sowing takes place from May to August, but in the northerly places, on light sandy soil, April-sown cotton would most probably give the highest yield.

In the Western Province, the autumn rains are the better, but this area at present is of no importance from the cotton point of view.

Most of the cotton is grown in the Eastern Province, but Buganda Province will doubtless increase its production in future years. A little cotton also is grown in the Northern Province.

The yield varies greatly according to the district and the season. In parts of Buganda Province a yield of 400 lbs. of seed cotton per acre is common, although in Bulemezi the yield is often much above this figure, whilst in the Eastern Province a yield of 350 lbs. of seed cotton per acre is a moderate estimate in an average season.

Large numbers of native instructors are at work throughout the Protectorate teaching the peasants how to cultivate and handle this crop, and it is hoped by this means to eliminate many of the complaints incidental to the starting of a new industry. The natives are taught to pick the cotton at the right time, to store it properly, and to separate the stained and dirty cotton at the time of picking.

Pests.

Cotton pests are numerous, but have done comparatively little damage up to the present. The most important of them are:—Bollworm (*Earias insulana*), cotton stainers (*Dysdercus nigrofasciatus* et *Dysdercus pretiosus*), (*Oxycaenus gossypinus* et *Oxycaenus hyalipennis*), cotton aphid (*Aphis gossypii*), millipedes, scale insects, cutworms, grasshoppers, and the leaf-footed plant bug (*Leptoglossus membranaceus*).

Anthraxnose (*Colletotrichum gossypii*, South) is often met with, but is never serious except in isolated patches during very wet seasons.

COFFEE.

Coffee may be said to be indigenous in Uganda, as the early explorers, Speke and Grant, mentioned its existence. Botanists appear to agree that coffee is certainly indigenous to Abyssinia and the Sudan, and if not actually here, it must have been introduced a long time ago.

These so-called indigenous coffee trees are scattered throughout the Buganda Province in small lots of about five to ten trees, which receive practically no attention beyond picking the fruit when ripe. This coffee is *Coffea*

robusta, Lind. Later *Coffea arabica*, from Nyasaland, and *Bourbon* were introduced and largely planted up.

As far back as 1902-3 coffee to the value of £892 was exported grown mainly on the Sese Islands, but the exports diminished, and in 1906-7 coffee to the value of £129 only was exported.

The following figures show the amount and value of the Exports, coffee exported :—

Year.				Unit.	Value.
				Cwts.	£
1908-9	..	..	..	194	194
1909-10	..	..	..	299	371
1910-11	..	..	..	270	383
1911-12	..	..	..	1,172	2,563
1912-13	..	..	..	3,336	8,940
1913-14	..	..	..	12,254	23,167
1914-15	Hulled	..	..	2,103	5,542
	Parchment	..	..	18,998	35,463
1915-16	Hulled	..	..	8,691	22,714
	Parchment	..	..	34,547	64,488
1916-17	Hulled	..	..	31,136	81,323
	Parchment	..	..	17,477	32,616
1917-18	Hulled	..	..	15,362	33,278
	Parchment	..	..	4,485	6,283
1918-19	Hulled	..	..	50,460	102,658
	Parchment	..	..	3,851	3,351

The bulk of the coffee exports are now hulled before shipment. The rapid increase in coffee production has been mainly due to the large influx of Europeans planters, as this was their most popular crop. Natives planted largely, but very small areas only are now being put under coffee, and it is not expected that the exports will continue to expand so rapidly as in the past few years.

In the more humid parts of the Protectorate the life of the Arabian coffee tree is very short, so that *Coffea robusta*, which is indigenous, will probably be more largely cultivated in the future, as its yield is both large and sure, although the quality is not such as to please the home market.

Experiments are being made with many varieties of coffee from all parts of the world, and the results will be watched with interest.

The estimated acreage under *Coffea arabica* is 21,743 and *Coffea robusta* 416. Approximately, 9,000 acres of the former are interplanted with Para rubber.

Besides the indigenous coffee, natives have planted *Coffea arabica* to a large extent, and hundreds of small patches are to be found scattered throughout the Protectorate.

It is estimated that 9,437 acres are thus being cultivated by natives under various kinds of coffee. This includes 70 acres of *Coffea arabica* on the foot-hills of Mount Elgon, which is a new producing area and promises well.

The total area under coffee is thus 31,696 acres, but much of this interplanted with para is now being cut out, and the acreage is thus rapidly diminishing. The yields and prices of coffee have proved a disappointment to natives, so that many of their plantations are sadly neglected, and in many cases cultivation has stopped entirely.

Cultivation.

The seed is sown in seed-beds, and must not be heavily shaded. Many find it best to dispense with shaded seed-beds altogether, and at the best it must only be looked upon as a labour-saving device to save watering. The favourite distance for planting out *Coffea arabica* is eight feet by eight feet, as the plant grows rapidly and to a large size. *Coffea robusta* should be planted about twelve feet by twelve feet.

Coffea arabica cannot be grown successfully for many years under rubber of any kind.

Wind-belts are highly desirable, whilst with the presence of "coffee leaf disease" light shade is beneficial. *Grevillea robusta* has been found useful for this purpose as well as *Albizia molucana*. The *Erythrinas* are not a success as shade trees.

Cover-crops should also be planted to prevent wash on the slopes and to keep down weeds. Many kinds of beans are admirably adapted for this purpose.

The trees come into bearing at two years old, and in favourable situations give a heavy yield at three years.

Flat, waterlogged land must be avoided, and also heavy clays, and efforts should be made to prevent the removal of surface soil from steep hill-sides.

Pulping, etc.

In pulping, the machine should be set so as to reduce to a minimum the quantity of broken beans. After pulping comes fermentation, which requires vats of brick and cement or wood. Each day's pulping should be kept separate and left in the vat for twelve to twenty-four hours, depending on the temperature. The mass is covered at night, and preferably turned once to equalise the fermentation. It should then be thoroughly washed in clean water. The coffee is then well dried in frames until the bean becomes

Plantation Rubber.

Exports of cultivated rubber started in 1910-11, and the following statistics show what has already been done :—

PLANTATION RUBBER.

Year.	Ceara (<i>Manihot Glaziovii</i>).		Para (<i>Hevea brasiliensis</i>).	
	lbs.	£	lbs.	£
1910-11	549	146	—	—
1911-12	2,102	325	—	—
1912-13	3,874	756	600	77
1913-14	16,789	2,624	2,665	310
1914-15	18,228	1,519	3,828	319
1915-16	37,124	3,093	15,225	1,269
1916-17	23,093	1,839	48,902	4,017

The total export for 1917-18 was 144,727 lbs., valued at £9,965.

.. .. 1918-19 .. 253,063 £12,893.

Various kinds of rubbers have been planted by both Europeans and natives, but Para (*Hevea brasiliensis*) is the only one now receiving any attention.

Funtumia elastica.

This rubber, although supplying most of the wild rubber exports of the country, is entirely unsuited for cultivation purposes, as it requires about twenty years before it is really ready for tapping purposes.

Castilloa elastica.

This has found no favour for plantation purposes, and only eighty acres have been planted up. It is useless, as the borer beetle (*Inesida leprosa*) attacks the tree very early and practically ruins it.

Ceara (Manihot Glaziovii)

This gives a good rubber, grows quickly, but the yield is low. Planters are not at present paying any attention to it, although in the past it was planted up. Natives have planted it largely, and it will just pay them to grow it.

The other *Manihots*—*dichotoma*, *heptaphylla*, and *piauhyensis*—have been tried, but they are far too brittle to withstand the prevailing winds.

The statistics of the acreage under rubber are as follows :—

			Para Rubber.	Other Rubbers.
European Plantations	..	..	11,255	1,016
Mission Plantations	..	..	350	125
Native Plantations	..	..	875	636

Uganda has thus 12,480 acres under Para rubber and 1,777 acres under other rubbers. Most of the rubber is young and exports will gradually increase.

Para rubber is undoubtedly the best from every point of view. Planters generally are taking a very keen interest in its growth, and the cultivation is extending rapidly. An ample supply of seed is obtained locally, and the young plants are usually grown with coffee as a catch crop. *Coffea robusta* is the best for this purpose. A good method for Uganda is to plant the rubber 24 feet by 12 feet with the object of thinning out ultimately to 24 feet by 24 feet. The humid parts of the Protectorate are best suited to its growth. The plant grows slowly for two or three years, but then thickens rapidly and is ready for tapping at five or six years old.

Para (Hevea
Brasilienensis).

Tapping results on the oldest trees in the country—in the Botanic Gardens, Entebbe, and on the Kakumiro Plantation—have proved fairly satisfactory, whilst under estate conditions, the Kivuvu and Mabira Companies are proving that Para rubber can be looked upon as a permanent and satisfactory crop for Uganda.

Fortunately, insect pests are seldom met with. “Die-back” is sometimes present, and “bark-rot” and other similar diseases are likely to prove troublesome unless handled firmly and carefully in their early stages.

Diseases.

CACAO.

The area under this crop has extended very rapidly, and the Protectorate has now 1,709 acres over five years old and 2,958 acres under five years.

The exports for the first year (1915-16) on record were 18,374 lbs., valued at £405; in 1916-17 28,853 lbs., valued at £562; in 1917-18 12,868 lbs., valued at £138, and for 1918-19 23,408 lbs. valued at £331.

Cultivation.

This crop needs a deep soil and a sheltered situation. Good wind-belts are absolutely necessary. The crop is planted 14 feet by 14 feet under plantain shade, which is cut out when the plants become well established. Whether sun-shade is necessary in the latter stages of growth in this country has yet to be proved, but little harm can be done by thinly planting suitable leguminous shade trees. *Pithecolobium saman* is recommended.

Unlike coffee, no machinery is needed for treating the crop, which is fermented for about four days, before drying for export. Cacao cultivation is, however, making very slow progress and does not promise yet to be a success.

Diseases.

The chief insect pests are scale insects, fruit flies, cacao beetle, and "mosquito blight" (*vide* Chapter 10). The pests are serious, and need regular attention.

Diseases are common, the one producing "die-back" being the most difficult to cope with, and often killing the trees.

CHILLIES.

The chillie is indigenous to the country and grows in large quantities in a semi-wild condition in Busoga, in which district practically the whole of the exports originate.

This variety bears a small pod of great pungency.

An exotic chillie has been introduced, but is grown only to a small extent.

The exports for the last eight years are given below :—

Year.	Unit.	Value.
	Cwts.	£
1911-12 ..	13,643	16,658
1912-13 ..	10,599	12,408
1913-14 ..	7,205	8,247
1914-15 ..	5,116	5,835
1915-16 ..	8,333	10,850
1916-17 ..	13,317	27,328
1917-18 ..	9,287	18,586
1918-19 ..	5,187	6,847

GROUND NUTS.

There are two varieties grown in the country, and it is hoped to get steadily increasing exports of this crop, especially from the Eastern Province, as its cultivation makes a splendid rotation crop with cotton.

The following are the export figures :—

Year.	Unit.	Value.
	Cwts.	£
1911-12 ..	9,155	4,279
1912-13 ..	11,780	5,570
1913-14 ..	7,671	3,740
1914-15 ..	156	76
1915-16 ..	1,693	822
1916-17 ..	3,640	1,767
1917-18 ..	954	464
1918-19 ..	896	562



Photo by Lobo, Entebbe.

BOTANIC GARDENS, ENTEBBE.

SIM-SIM.

This is an important crop in the Lango and Teso districts, where its cultivation should rapidly increase. Hitherto it has been of small importance in Buganda Province.

Kavirondo seed has been introduced to improve the quality of the local product.

The exports are as follows :—

Year.	Unit.	Value.
	Cwts.	£
1911-12 ..	12,855	7,048
1912-13 ..	31,402	16,812
1913-14 ..	17,919	10,449
1914-15 ..	8,514	4,764
1915-16 ..	39,261	21,986
1916-17 ..	38,090	21,318
1917-18 ..	17,337	13,048
1918-19 ..	939	1,008

In addition, 230 cwts. of sim-sim oil, valued at £530, were exported in 1917-18 and 27 cwts., valued at £99, in 1918-19.

SUGAR CANE.

This crop is grown on a small scale only throughout the Buganda Province and is practically all consumed in the green state. New varieties of cane have been introduced from various parts of the world, and a few planters are beginning to show interest in the crop, as there is no reason why the local demands for sugar should not be met by the local product.

Three small mills for sugar production are in operation and more contemplated.

The exports of jaggree, or unrefined sugar, are as follows :—

Year.	Unit.	Value.
	Cwts.	£
1911-12 ..	289	226
1912-13 ..	319	301
1913-14 ..	216	193
1914-15 ..	265	159
1915-16 ..	551	329
1916-17 ..	520	310
1917-18 ..	851	668
1918-19 ..	2	3

TEA.

In December, 1909, tea seed was obtained from Assam which germinated well. The seedlings were planted out in November, 1910, on the Government Plantation, Kampala, and have made good progress. The crop is being watched with keen interest by planters, one of whom has already 50 acres under tea. The product is well reported upon, and this crop promises to be suited to the country.

TOBACCO.

The plant grows extremely well, and large quantities of tobacco are grown throughout the Protectorate by natives for their own use.

Some years ago extensive experiments were carried out on the Government Plantation, Kampala, but were abandoned.

Experiments on a small scale are being tried in more suitable places, as there is no doubt that within the Protectorate a large area of land is available with a suitable soil and climate which is capable of producing tobaccos of exportable quality.

The production of tobacco is well worth the attention of planters in the drier zones of the country.

WHEAT.

This crop was started many years ago in Toro, and at present there are three water power mills for flour production. Approximately 900 acres are cultivated by natives, but there is ample scope for a much larger production, as the flour sells well in the Congo.

Transport difficulties at present prevent the flour being used throughout the country.

The Mubendi District is growing a little wheat, and Kigezi also.

The crop has been reintroduced in the Mount Elgon region, where the transport difficulties are not so serious. Some years ago 250 loads of wheat were produced there, which could not be sold. A hand power mill is now ready to deal with the crop, and it is hoped to establish the industry permanently.

RICE.

This crop has been tried all over the country, but as the natives do not eat it readily and find a difficulty in

husking the grain, progress is slow. The imports of rice could easily be home grown. The Eastern Province is producing more, particularly in Bukedi, but much more remains to be done to satisfy local requirements. Two hand huskers have been introduced.

LINSEED.

This crop has been tried both for seed and fibre, and the results are inconclusive. Another attempt to produce fibre is being made.

A creditable crop of linseed was grown on Mount Elgon, but the produce was difficult to sell.

PLANTAINS AND BANANAS.

Plantains are the most extensively cultivated food-crop in Buganda Province, and are the staple food of the Baganda. There are many varieties, both of plantains and bananas, and the manufacture of banana flour is worth consideration.

Improved varieties for table purposes have been introduced.

SWEET POTATOES.

Sweet potatoes are grown all over the Protectorate as a staple food-crop. In dry districts sweet potatoes suffer badly from the effects of a caterpillar (*Acræa terpisichore*, L.).

MILLETS.

Various kinds of millets are largely grown, and they provide an important food supply to the Nilotic tribes particularly.

MAIZE.

Maize is not such an important food-crop as the prevailing conditions would lead one to expect, but its cultivation is extending rapidly.

Improved varieties of seed have been introduced which yield well.

CASSAVA.

Cassava is largely grown. Its extended cultivation has been encouraged in districts liable to shortage of food.

CASTOR OIL.

The plant is grown in every native garden for the sake of its straight poles. The seed is not utilised. Very many varieties are found in the country, and it is interesting to note the different kinds of castor oil seed.

PEAS AND BEANS.

Many varieties of each are cultivated, forming an important item in the food supply of the people.

BUCKWHEAT.

Buckwheat has been under trial for some time. It might ultimately be found useful in providing green fodder for transport animals in the larger centres.

FIBRES.

Many indigenous fibres are found throughout the country, which are utilised to a great extent for very many purposes by the native population.

Exotic fibres, like sisal and Mauritius hems, have been tried and they grow remarkably well, but it is doubtful whether fibres will prove much of a commercial success in this country.

Paper-making might ultimately be started on a small scale for the utilisation of some of the fibrous grasses which grow very luxuriantly in many parts of the Protectorate. Elephant grass has been successfully used.

AFRICAN SILKWORM.

The Mubendi district contains the largest quantity of indigenous silkworms (*Anaphe infracta*), and this industry was of some importance there, but since the war has been dormant. It is hoped that, as a result of recent experiments in England, the industry may be revived.

BEESWAX.

The production of this commodity has fallen far short of expectations in spite of strenuous efforts to make it a thriving industry.

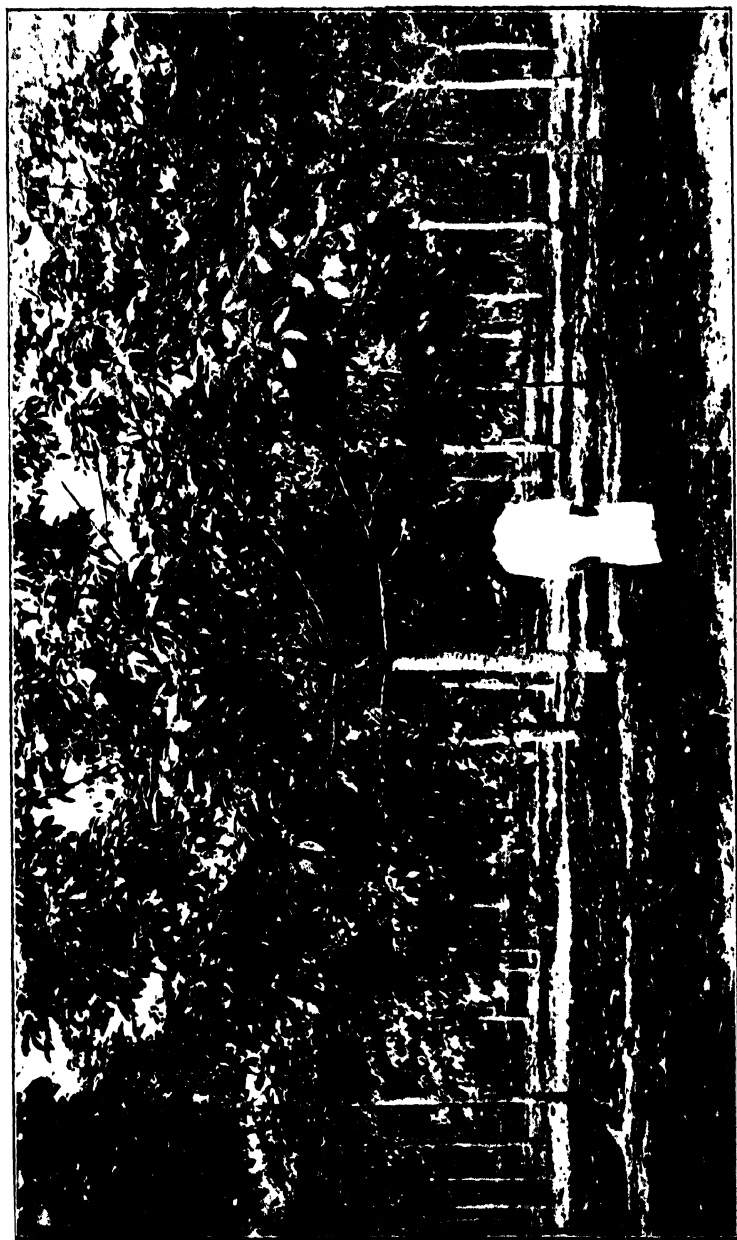


Photo by Brown.

PARA RUBBER (TAPPABLE), FIVE YEARS OLD, KINUVU ESTATE.

The export trade was never considerable and, as will be seen from the subjoined table, has been suspended completely in the course of the last two years :—

Year.	Unit.	Value.
	lbs.	£
1911-12 ..	3,539	162
1912-13 ..	2,352	117
1913-14 ..	882	42
1914-15 ..	350	17
1915-16 ..	42	2
1916-17 ..	35	2
1917-18 ..	Nil	Nil
1918-19 ..	Nil	Nil

FRUITS.

There is a shortage of fruits in the country, but the mango, pineapple, orange, paw-paw, bread-fruit, sour-sop, custard apple, passion fruit, guava, pomegranate, rose apple, tree tomato, Cape gooseberry, strawberry, banana, lemon, lime, and sapodilla grow well, and all are worthy of more attention, whilst the clove and nutmeg have fruited in the country. *Vide Gardening Notes.*

GARDENING NOTES.—(2) *Vegetables.*

The majority of the most favoured of English vegetables can be grown with such success as to allow of a supply at all times of the year.

This depends largely, however, on the situation in which they are grown. For example, the alluvial low-lying soils are so continually impregnated with moisture as to make them less subject to drought, and are usually more fertile than the higher situations. Soils and Situations.

Low-lying situations should therefore be chosen where possible. Very low-lying and water-logged soils, and those apt to become so during the rainy season, should of course be avoided.

A sheltered position is moreover essential, and this Shelter. will be more naturally obtainable in lower elevations.

On higher levels, and at some distance from water, and with less fertile soil, success in growing vegetables can only be attained with considerable expense and care.

Less favoured conditions can be made more amenable by the erection of shade, by improving the soil by deep digging, and by adding humus, *i.e.*, decayed vegetable matter such as lawn mowings, dead leaves, garden refuse Soil Improvement.

generally, and stable and cow manure if available. In applying this material to the soil it should be thoroughly incorporated with it.

Shade.

Shade will be found an advantage whether the position is otherwise favourable or not, and especially so during the early stages of the crops. A good, fairly permanent shade can be erected with forked posts of Ceara rubber, or "Mutaba" or "kirikita" stems. These, when put into the ground, will grow, and are thus not subject to attack of white ants and other pests. They should be put in 6 feet apart—the width of the vegetable beds—and at intervals of 10 feet along the beds. Six feet is a suitable height for the posts.

In the forks of the posts long sticks should be laid on which to roll a trellis work of "muli" (elephant grass canes). This is merely the "muli" tied $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch to 2 inches apart with "ebyai" (banana fibre).

A shade of this nature is admirable, as it allows a free passage of air and a gentle filtration of the sun's rays to the plants below.

Preparing the Beds.

A convenient width for the beds is, as stated, 6 feet. They may be of any reasonable length. They need not be raised to any considerable height, unless during the rainy season when they may be raised several inches.

Sowing the Seed.

Sowing the seed is an important operation, as good seed may be lost by either too deep or too shallow sowing. Seed should in all cases be sown sparingly. This is not only a saving of seed, but stronger seedlings result. These stand transplanting better, and suffer less from adverse conditions, than weak seedlings from crowded sowings.

Small seeds naturally require only a light covering of soil, and this is best done by shaking the soil over them through a fine-meshed sieve, and then pressing it lightly down with a smooth flat board. Lettuce, parsley, onions, tomatoes, celery, and such like, will benefit from this treatment.

Watering.

No hard and fast rule can be laid down as regards watering. Much depends on the nature of the soil, situation, exposure, etc. A light, unretentive soil may require to be watered daily, whilst a heavy black soil may go for days without it. No harm, however, can be done by watering daily where light friable soils are concerned. The best criterion is undoubtedly to wait until the plants or seedlings show signs of thirst, and then to water thoroughly. Watering should always be done during "sundown."

Cultivation

There will be two sets of beds in the garden. Those sown with turnips, beet, carrots, and the like, which are in

permanent positions, but which require thinning out, and those beds sown with cauliflower, cabbage, etc., seedlings from which will be transplanted to permanent and more widely spaced positions.

With the former, if the seed has been sparingly sown, thinning out will be an easy matter. The "thinnings," if carefully lifted, may be transplanted to other beds. This in the case of beet, khol-rabi, carrot, radish, can be done quite successfully.

With the latter, the seedlings may be lifted as soon as they can be conveniently handled. Holes in the prepared beds, for inserting the seedlings, can be made with a small pointed stick. During dull weather, or the late afternoon, is the best time for transplanting.

During the growing period, or young stages, of the various crops, beneficial results will accrue from forking the beds from time to time. The depth to fork will depend on the crop. The deep rooted plants, such as carrots and beet, will stand fairly deep forking, whilst onions, radish, and beans require only light forking. Conserving moisture.

The effects of forking or hoeing during dry periods is to conserve moisture by breaking the capillarity of the soil, whilst during wet periods it prevents souring and excessive moisture by means of aeration. These results are perhaps not fully appreciated. Aerating the Soil.

The removal of the shade will in some cases become unnecessary after a time. Cauliflower, beet, parsnip, cabbage, etc., will benefit by being fully exposed once they are established. They will become less "leafy."

The rotation of the crops is important, as by this means only will it be possible to get full benefit of the soil contents. Shallow rooted crops should follow the deep rooted ones, and *vice-versâ*; for instance, cauliflower, cabbage, khol-rabi, beet, etc., to follow beans, peas, lettuce, with the addition of manure. Rotation.

The following information, dealing only with those vegetables which are worth growing here, is given, and arranged alphabetically for easy reference :—

ASPARAGUS.

Sow in beds and transplant to 1 foot apart, when large enough trench similar to that for celery. Mulch with dead leaves or old manure 6 inches deep.

ARTICHOKE.

Plant tubers 3 feet by 3 feet apart in open beds of rich soil.

BEANS (FRENCH OR KIDNEY).

Sow in open beds $1\frac{1}{2}$ foot between rows and 9 inches in the rows. Sow every month. Only dwarf kinds succeed well.

BEET (RED).

Sow in rows 18 inches apart, and thin out to 6 inches, then later to 1 foot. Remove shade early.

BEET (SILVER OR WHITE).

See note on red beet. The midribs of this plant are abnormally developed, and are cooked and eaten as asparagus for which it is a good substitute.

BUSH LIMA (RUNNER BEAN).

Sow in beds 3 feet apart. Put in stout branches for stakes.

CABBAGE.

Of easy culture. Transplant to $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 feet apart. Propagate from off-shoots. Remove shade early.

CAULIFLOWER.

See cabbage. Grows exceedingly well on ordinary rich soil. Propagate from off-shoots. Preferably from seed.

CARROT.

Sow in deep rich friable soil in rows 1 foot apart. Thin out gradually.

CELERY.

Sow first in beds, then transplant to trench 18 inches to 2 feet wide which has first been well manured. The plants in the trenches should be 1 foot apart each way. Give copious supplies of water in dry weather. Earth up the plants in the usual way for blanching.

CRESS.

Sow in shallow boxes or sheltered place in beds. Do not cover the seeds, but press lightly with smooth flat board. Keep moist.

CUCUMBER.

Only the coarser kinds succeed, *i.e.*, English prickly. Grow on small mounds of rich soil. Train on trellis work or branches. Water freely in dry weather and spray foliage frequently with "stomachic" spray for leaf-eating insects.

ENDIVE.

See note on lettuce. To bleach the leaves cover with a small box or flower-pot.

EGG PLANT.

A useful vegetable and grows well with ordinary care. Grow in beds of rich soil $1\frac{1}{2}$ foot apart. When the fruits have set, manure with weak liquid cow-manure.

KOHLE RABI.

Sow in beds as for turnips $1\frac{1}{2}$ foot apart. Thin out. Where turnips do not succeed this will be found a good substitute. Remove shade early.

KALE OR BORECOLE.

Treat as for cabbage or cauliflower. Propagate from side-shoots or tops.

LEEKs.

Transplant from seed beds when plants are 4 to 5 inches high into trenches as for celery, or into ordinary beds of rich free soil. Earth up to blanch as the plants grow.

LETTUCE.

Transplant from seed beds when easy to handle, 9 to 12 inches apart will suffice. Water freely.

MELON.

Grow on mound of rich soil with some old cow-manure added. Allow to trail or grow over a horizontal trellis work. Give copious supplies of water during dry weather. Cover the fruits when partly grown with paper or muslin bags to prevent injury from insects.

ONION.

Transplant from seed beds when about 4 to 5 inches high to ordinary good soil 9 to 12 inches apart. Manure with liquid cow-manure when they show signs of bulbing.

OCHRO (LADIES FINGER).

Sow seeds singly about 1 inch deep in good rich soil, and 2 feet apart. Pick the "pod" when young and tender for boiling.

PARSLEY.

Transplant from seed beds to 1 foot apart in shady position, or sow in rows and thin out. Water freely during dry periods.

PARSNIP.

See beet.

PEA.

Sow seed singly or in twos 1 foot apart in rich soil without shade. Dwarf varieties do best. Put in small branches for stakes. To follow a well manured crop.

RADISH.

Sow sparingly in ordinary good soil. For successful crops sow fortnightly. Water freely.

RHUBARB.

Grows well in the colder and drier parts. Raise from seed, and plant 2 to 3 feet apart on rich friable soil. Manure when established.

SEA KALE.

Raise from seed, and plant out as in the case of celery and earth up for blanching. Requires good rich soil.

TOMATO.

Sow in boxes or seed beds and transplant to 1 to 1½ feet apart. Pinch out lateral shoots, stake, and water freely during dry weather. Propagate from laterals or preferably from seed.

VEGETABLE MARROW.

Grow singly on mounds of rich soil 8 to 10 feet apart. Allow to trail. Give copious supplies of water during dry periods.

(2) FLOWERS.

The climate of the Protectorate is so equable and English flowers succeed so well that one has an indefinite choice, especially among the annuals which do best, and also among the perennials which are more or less successful. Indeed the range of plants is so wide as to provide a gay garden at all times of the year.

For mass-beds and borders, and where a blaze of colour is desired, the following are eminently suited :—*Zinnia*, *Cosmea*, *Coreopsis*, *Dianthus*, *Petunia*, *Phlox Drummondii*, *Helianthus*, *Celosia*, *Calendula*, *Godetia*, "Candy tuft," *Vinca rosea*, *V. alba*, *Lavatera*, *Nigella*, *Tagetes*, *Lupins*, *Gomphrena*, "Balsam," *Gaillardia* *Aster*, *Browallia*, "Cornflower," etc., etc. Annuals

The following perennials are also suited for mass-beds and borders :—*Salvia splendens*, *S. farnesia*, *Helianthus*, *Chrysanthemum*, *Carnation*, *Begonia semperflorens*, *Lantana hybrida*, *Geraniums*, and *Pelargoniums*, *Dahlias*, *Canna*, *Poinsettia* *Aster* (*Marguerite*), *Verbena*, etc. Perennials.

Most types of roses can be grown on any ordinary soil, with the exception perhaps of the "Rambler" type, which thrives best in the cooler parts. They provide an abundance of cut flowers practically throughout the year, and no garden is complete without them. Roses.

The "Bush" forms are best such as *Maman Cochet* (pink and white), "Sunrise," and the *Noisettes*. The "La France" type is less profuse and requires to be pruned severely, leaving two or three buds at the base from which strong shoots will grow up and flower. With the "Bush Roses," thinning out of weak and dead wood from time to time will suffice with occasional stumpings.

Coloured shrubs are a useful adjunct to the garden. Their varied colours add considerably to the general effect either in groups or individually. *Crotons* (*Codiaeum*) for example, *Acalypha macrophylla*, *A. marginata*, *A. Wilkesiana*, *Justicia*, *Eranthemum*, *Iresene*, *Sanchezia*, *Strobilanthus* and *Panax*. Coloured Shrubs.

There are also a number of flowering shrubs which are indispensable, such as *Hibiscus rosasinensis*, *Clerodendron fallax*, *C. Bakerii*, *C. poiniculata*, *Plumbago*, *Randia*, *Gardenia*, *Lantana*, *Oleander*, *Allamanda*, *Thunbergia*, etc., all of which are of comparatively easy culture. Flowering Shrubs.

For trellis work and pergolas, the following climbing and rambling plants do well :—*Solanum jasminoides*, *S. Wendlandii*, *S. Seaforthianum*, *Antigonon*, *Clitoria ternatea*, *Ipomea*, *Beaumontia grandiflora*, *Aristolochia* Climbing and Rambling Plants.

elegans, *A. Schweinfurthii*, *Allamanda Hendersonii*, *Bignonia incarnatum* and *Bougainvillea spectabilis* growing over a tree on the outskirts of the garden is very effective.

Plant for Hedges.

A good hedge will make all the difference to a garden and especially so if it forms the background of mass-beds and borders :—*Hibiscus rosasinensis*, *Duranta Ellisia*, *Bixa orellana*, and *Cassia* are good. Fancy hedges can be formed of *Acalypha spp.*, *Bougainvillea*, *Plumbago*, and *Justicia*. All require to be carefully trimmed into shape while they are young.

Propagation.

The majority of these shrubs and climbing plants and the roses can be propagated from cuttings. The best plants are got from the young branches with six or seven inches of the tops cut off. The cutting itself should be nine inches long allowing for two or more "nodes" (joints) to be inserted into the soil. Both ends should be cut clean at one-eighth of an inch from the joints. Plant under shade in nursery beds.

(3) FRUITS.

The success which attends the cultivation of English vegetables and flowers does not, unfortunately, extend to the cultivation of English fruits.

This is explained by the fact that English fruits are temperate plants, whereas many of the English vegetables and flowers are not really indigenous to England, but are ultra-tropical, and also by the fact that they, speaking of the annuals, pass through their vegetative, flowering and seeding stages during the warm months, and thus escape the winter.

The cultivation of English fruits, therefore, can only be experimental unless undertaken at the greater elevations where the climate approaches that of their native habitat.

There is a wide selection, however, among the tropical fruits, some of which are considered to be unsurpassed in excellence, others are only of minor importance.

The following list of fruits, together with cultural notes and their economic uses, is given, and deals only with those which can be successfully cultivated in the Protectorate, or which are worth attempting :—

" Avocado Pear "	..	A much esteemed dessert, but rather an acquired taste. Plant 15 feet apart in good soil in sheltered position.
(<i>Persea gratissima</i>)		
" Blimbing "	..	A useful fruit for dessert or preserve.
(<i>Averrhoa bilimbi</i>)	..	Grow in good soil eight to ten feet apart.

<p>" Blackberry " or " Raspberry " (<i>Rubus mollucanus</i>)</p>	<p>An excellent dessert or preserve. Grows well on ordinary soil. Suitable for vegetable garden in beds. Give light shade.</p>
<p>" Carambola " .. (<i>Averrhoa carambola</i>)</p>	<p>See " Blimbing." Possesses an apple flavour.</p>
<p>" Custard Apple " .. (<i>Anona reticulata</i>)</p>	<p>A dessert of fair qualities. Give good soil and sheltered position. Gather when fully ripe. Plant ten feet apart.</p>
<p>" Cape Gooseberry " .. (<i>Physalis edulis</i>)</p>	<p>An excellent dessert and preserve. A small plant two to three feet high. Grow in beds in vegetable garden two feet apart.</p>
<p>" Citron " .. (<i>Citrus medica</i>)</p>	<p>For candied-peel. An excellent grower and of easy culture. Plant eight to ten feet apart.</p>
<p>" Durian " .. (<i>Durio zibethinus</i>)</p>	<p>A very fine dessert to the acquired taste. A large tree requiring free development. Plant thirty feet apart.</p>
<p>"Guava " .. (<i>Psidium guaiava</i>)</p>	<p>A dessert and excellent preserve. (The ordinary Guava). Grow in ordinary soil eight to ten feet apart.</p>
<p>" Guava " (Chinese or black) (<i>Psidium cattleianum</i>)</p>	<p>An excellent preserve and dessert. A smaller and daintier fruit than the ordinary Guava. Succeeds in ordinary good soil. Plant ten feet apart.</p>
<p>" Granadilla " .. (<i>Passiflora quadrangularis</i>)</p>	<p>A dessert of more or less appreciable qualities. A climber and grows well over pergola or tree. Flowers fragrant and striking.</p>
<p>" Loquat " .. (<i>Photinia japonica</i>)</p>	<p>A dessert of fair quality. A good grower under ordinary conditions. Plant ten to fifteen feet apart.</p>
<p>" Litchi " .. (<i>Lephelium litchi</i>)</p>	<p>A most highly esteemed fruit. A small tree. Succeeds well in ordinary good soil in sheltered situations. Plant ten feet apart.</p>
<p>" Mulberry " .. (<i>Morus nigra</i>)</p>	<p>An excellent dessert. Grows well and is easily propagated from cuttings. Plant in ordinary soil (large and small fruited varieties) ten feet apart.</p>

"Mabola" .. (<i>Diospyros discolor</i>)	..	A dessert of agreeable flavour. Grows well and makes a fine garden tree. Plant fifteen feet apart.
"Passion Fruit" (<i>Passiflora edulis</i>)	..	An excellent dessert and more highly prized than the "Granadilla." A climber. Grows over trellis or pergola, or over fence to form a hedge. Plant in ordinary soil.
"Paw-paw" .. (<i>Carica papaya</i>)	..	A well-known dessert. (Also boiled green as a vegetable.) Ceylon and West Indian varieties are available in the country, and are of easy culture. Plant ten to fifteen feet apart.
"Sapodilla Plum" (<i>Achras sapota</i>)	..	An excellent dessert, but its success is variable here. Plant in good soil in sheltered position fifteen feet apart.
"Strawberry" .. (<i>Fragaria vesca</i>)	..	Though an English fruit, can be grown very successfully in some parts, and is thus an exception to the rule. Grow in the usual way in beds one to one-and-a-half foot apart in good soil.
"Sour-sop" .. (<i>Anona muricata</i>)	..	A useful dessert and from the sub-acid juice a cooling drink is made. Grows well under ordinary treatment ten to fifteen feet apart.
"Shaddock" .. (<i>Citrus decumana</i>)	..	A dessert of which various opinions are held. The large varieties are known as "Pomelo." They possess a sub-acid juice (somewhat bitter) and grow successfully under ordinary treatment.
"Tree Tomato" ..	..	An excellent dessert. It produces fine, plump fruit in a rich, damp soil. Plant eight feet apart.
"Pines" (<i>Ananas sativus</i>)	..	The well-known dessert and preserve. The "Queen," "Ripley," "Smooth Cayenne" and "Catherine Rothschild" are some of the best varieties. They appreciate a good stiff rich soil.
"Orange" .. (<i>Citrus aurantium</i>)	..	Three well-known and indispensable fruits, and which succeed well in every garden. The "Washington Navel" orange and the "Lisbon" lemon are now available in the country. Grow from seed or graft special varieties on to the common "Lemon" stock. Plant fifteen feet apart.
"Lime" (<i>Citrus medica, var. acida</i>)		
"Lemon" (<i>Citrus medica, var. limonum</i>)		



Photo by Brown.

CACAO, FIVE YEARS OLD, KIVUVU ESTATE.

CHAPTER XIII.

LIVE STOCK.

The following table shows the estimated number of live stock in the Protectorate for the Year 1918-19.

Province and District.	Cattle.	Sheep.	Goats.	Horses.	Mules.	Donkeys.
BUGANDA—						
Mengo ..	35,000	7,500	70,000	..	6	6
Entebbe ..	4,000	3,600	15,000	..	2	5
Masaka ..	50,000	3,000	12,000	..	..	8
Mubendi ..	16,000	6,000	30,000	..	1	..
Total ..	105,000	20,100	127,000	..	9	19
EASTERN—						
Busoga ..	30,000	18,000	45,000	..	3	10
Bukedi ..	50,000	*	*	..	3	50
Teso ..	157,500	42,000	92,000	..	2	40
Lango ..	15,000	64,000	141,000	..	4	21
Karamoja Lobor	No basis for an estimate.					
Total ..	252,500	124,000	278,000	..	12	121
NORTHERN—						
Masindi ..	1,000	1,800	10,350	..	..	..
Hoima ..	3,700	1,740	8,750	..	..	..
Gulu ..	*	*	*	..	..	12
Kitgum ..	9,000	7,000	30,000	..	6	150
West Nile ..	31,500	22,000	50,000	..	3	3
Total ..	45,200	32,600	99,100	..	9	165
WESTERN—						
Toro ..	42,500	11,500	31,000	..	3	11
Ankole ..	100,000	50,000	250,000	..	..	5
Kigezi ..	30,000	50,000	20,000	..	..	1
Total ..	172,500	111,500	301,000	..	3	17
RUDOLF—						
Turkwel Turkana Dabossa	No basis for an estimate.					
GRAND TOTAL..	575,200	288,200	805,100	..	33	322

* Number unknown.

In Rudolf Province there are said to be nearly 500,000 head of cattle and about 3,000,000 sheep and goats. The Turkana possess herds of camels and a considerable number of donkeys.

Ostriches are occasionally kept by the Teso and Karamojan tribes.

Over the greater part of the Protectorate the dominant type of cattle belongs to the humped, short-horned breeds, and of these, those bred in the northern counties of Teso District approximate somewhat closely to the Indian zebu breed. The Karamojan is the same type, and is a far better class of animal than that of any other district. The small hill cattle of Mount Elgon are probably of a different origin.

In Toro and Ankole the cattle are of the Nsagalla breed. They are large beasts, and are characterised by their great length of horn, dark red colour, and show only a slight vestige of a hump.

In the Buganda Province cattle are of a type intermediate between the humped cattle of the Eastern Province and the long-horned cattle of Ankole, and are evidently derived from many crossings between them.

Sheep are of all the fat-tailed species, and the breeds vary but little throughout the Protectorate. Goats are of the usual small African type. A distinct breed of long-haired goats, which is now practically extinct, formerly existed in Busoga. These appear to have been introduced from the country lying to the north-west of the Albert Nyanza. Occasional attempts to grade up the animals of the country by the introduction of new blood have been made, and it is hoped to work systematically on these lines in the near future by the aid of a live-stock farm.

The number of horned cattle, which was estimated at 843,600 in March, 1915, has now been reduced to 575,200 (1919). This wastage is due mainly to the ravages of rinderpest, which swept the Protectorate from north to south during 1918, and is still prevailing within certain limits in the Western Province, where it has reached a vast reservoir of cattle for infection (1920). Trypanosomiasis appeared simultaneously in certain areas and added to the heavy mortality.

The live-stock of the Protectorate is responsible for a very large trade, as the following tables of the exports under the different headings clearly show :—

HIDES.

Year.	Unit.	Value.
	Cwts.	£
1911-12 ..	9,032	26,191
1912-13 ..	12,878	45,854
1913-14 ..	13,837	52,926
1914-15 ..	38,138	54,917
1915-16 ..	18,130	63,467
1916-17 ..	19,070	52,420
1917-18 ..	22,634	76,707
1918-19 ..	15,053	64,125

GOAT SKINS.

Year.	Unit.	Value.
	lbs.	£
1911-12 ..	581,615	22,249
1912-13 ..	573,852	28,543
1913-14 ..	464,987	29,037
1914-15 ..	364,384	19,091
1915-16 ..	391,290	18,260
1916-17 ..	398,448	16,095
1917-18 ..	254,576	6,789
1918-19 ..	218,176	8,162

SHEEP SKINS.

Year.	Unit.	Value.
	No.	£
1911-12 ..	77,964	1,559
1912-13 ..	83,989	1,940
1913-14 ..	59,644	1,615
1914-15 ..	22,178	506
1915-16 ..	10,144	169
1916-17 ..	9,380	126
1917-18 ..	5,152	41
1918-19 ..	2,128	15

CALF SKINS.

Year.	Unit.	Value.
	Cwts.	£
1911-12 ..	225	705
1912-13 ..	847	2,941
1913-14 ..	1,052	4,204
1914-15 ..	732	2,710
1915-16 ..	612	2,227
1916-17 ..	127	345
1917-18 ..	Nil.	Nil.
1918-19 ..	Nil.	Nil.

MISCELLANEOUS SKINS.

Year.			Value.
			£
1911-12	..	..	4,979
1912-13	..	..	7,994
1913-14	..	..	582
1914-15	..	..	558
1915-16	..	..	261
1916-17	..	..	443
1917-18	..	..	10
1918-19	..	..	29

GHEE OR CLARIFIED BUTTER.

Year.		Unit.	Value.
		Cwts.	£
1911-12	..	2,911	5,819
1912-13	..	4,737	11,439
1913-14	..	4,851	12,507
1914-15	..	4,693	12,264
1915-16	..	4,591	11,999
1916-17	..	7,007	18,310
1917-18	..	7,090	23,270
1918-19	..	6,443	26,122

CATTLE.

Year.		Unit.	Value.
		No.	£
1911-12	..	382	1,144
1912-13	..	1,516	6,205
1913-14	..	246	1,006
1914-15	..	266	789
1915-16	..	836	3,025
1916-17	..	1,625	5,909
1917-18	..	41	118
1918-19	..	417	1,085

The general decrease for 1917-18 was due to the lack of ocean transport caused by the war.



Photo by Lea Wilson.

ANKOLE OX.



Photo by Postlethwaite.

THE COTTON MARKET, KUMI.

CHAPTER XIV.

WOODS AND FORESTS.

The forests of Uganda are evenly distributed throughout the Protectorate; they are well stocked with trees of



Mæsoopsis berchemoides.

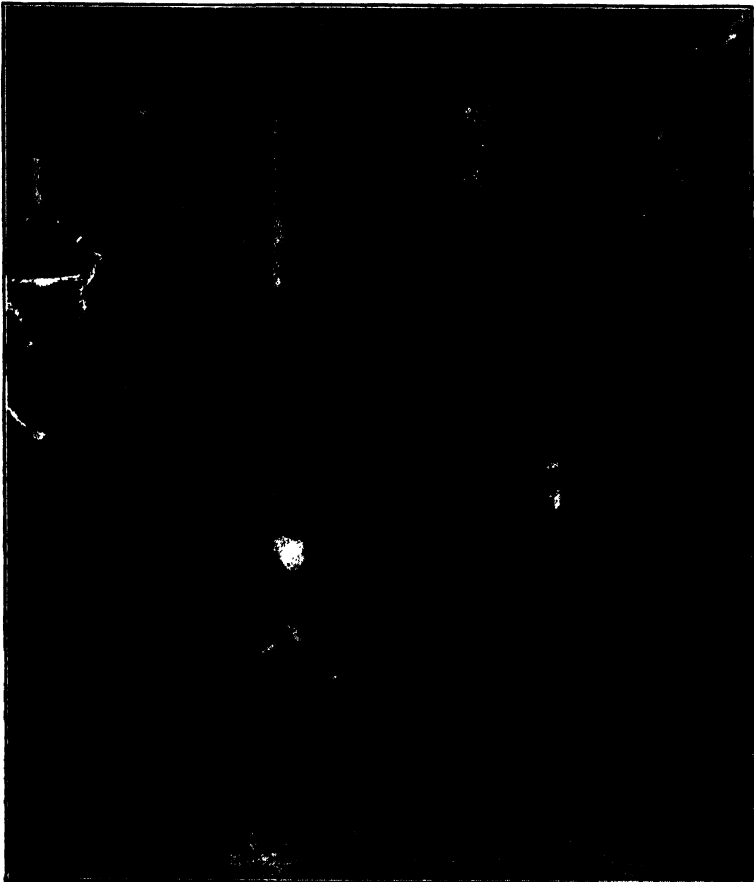
constructional and ornamental value, also many contain valuable rubber-yielding species of trees and vines. One of the most interesting features of the forests of this country is their ever-changing composition or character in relation to altitude and climate and nature of land. This is particularly noticeable in Buganda, especially in the region

of the Victoria Nyanza, where each belt or block of forest usually has a marked character of its own given to it by the predominance of certain species ; for instance, the irregular blocks of forests lying within a few miles of the Lake Victoria shore, where the predominant species of large trees are :—*Piptadenia africana*, *Mæsopsis berchemoides*, *Pycnanthus schweinfurthii*, *Pseudospondias microcarpa*, *Parkia filicoidea*, *Canarium schweinfurthii* and *Antiaris toxicaria*. In South Buddu these species are more rare and others take their place. In this district, which is about 3,720 feet above mean sea level and which lies very low, just a few feet above the level of the lake, and is under water for the greater part of the year, a conifer *Podocarpus milanjanus* var. *arborescens* gives a special feature to the forests, and a little further south in proximity to the frontier this species of *Podocarpus* ceases and *Podocarpus glacilior* takes its place, the latter being in every respect a much finer and bigger tree. Other prominent species are *Baikoea Eminii*, a new species of *Baikoea*, *Mimusops ugandensis*, *Alstonia congensis*, *Carapa* sp. and *Klaineodoxia* sp., also in small isolated patches of forests in the same district the predominating species is *Eugenia owarensis*.

On the north-east side of the Nile, in the district of Busoga, the predominating species are Mvule, Muzeru and Mwafu, but these species only predominate in close proximity to the lake ; further inland flat-topped Acacias occupy most of the flat country and Mvule, *Chlorophora excelsa*, predominates on most of the ridges. The range of species limited by altitude is, as a rule, very marked, with one exception, *Podocarpus milanjanus*. This species, as previously stated, is found in South Buddu at an altitude of about 3,720 feet above mean sea level, while on Ruwenzori Range it is found at 9,000 feet altitude. As far as is known, this tree does not exist in the intervening country between South Buddu and the Ruwenzori mountain. It is strange that this species has confined itself to practically one small area of the South Buddu forests and at such a low altitude. The moist conditions of this low-lying land and the existence of shade from large trees, it must be presumed, compensate it in a measure for the lower temperature prevailing within its range on Ruwenzori. The fact that this species does not exist in the intervening country between South Buddu and the Ruwenzori mountain makes its isolated position in Buddu all the more interesting. *Podocarpus glacilior* has not yet been reported to have been found on Ruwenzori. This tree has established itself on the border and it is thought that it is to be found right through the German portion of the South Buddu forests.

Another striking feature in the flora of Uganda is the West African element present, several important trees found in Uganda having spread across from West Africa ; for example, the Mvule of Uganda and Sroko or Odum of West Africa—*Chlorophora excelsa* ; the West African Mahogany—*Khaya senegalensis*, *Parkia filicoidea* ; the " Sassy Bark " of West Africa—*Erythrophloeum guineense*, *Spathodea campanulata*, *Parinarium excelsum*, *Funtumia elastica*, the Lagos silk rubber tree, and many others.

The six principal and best known forests are Mabira, **Forests.** Budongo, Bugoma, Tero, Kibale and Luambabye. The first four have been systematically surveyed and their contents



Khaya senegalensis ringed for seasoning.

reported upon. Kibale has been cursorily surveyed and Luambabye has been surveyed for rattan canes only.

As space does not permit of a lengthy description of these forests, it is only possible to delineate their areas and the principal trees they contain, together with a few passing remarks on smaller forests of interest situated in the same districts as the large forests previously mentioned.

It is in the District of Kiagwe in the Buganda Province, some 40 miles distant from Kampala, and about 17 miles from the port of Jinja, that the Mabira forest has its source. This forest is one of the wealthiest in the Protectorate. Its area is computed to be 140 square miles, and on completion of a forest survey it was found to be well stocked with the well-known rubber tree, *Funtumia elastica*, or Lagos silk rubber tree. It is interesting to note here that it was



TRANSPORTING TIMBER IN THE MABIRA FOREST.

in the year 1904 that *Funtumia* rubber was first discovered to be indigenous to this country. Previous to the discovery, seeds and seedlings of this tree were imported, at much expense and trouble, for cultivation in this country. This forest is leased to the Mabira Forest (Uganda) Rubber

Company, Limited, for the purpose of cultivating, collecting, felling and removing timber, rubber and other forest produce. The forest being situated within close proximity to Victoria Nyanza, Port Jinja, and only separated from Kampala by some 40 miles, with both of which towns it is linked up by roads, enables the Mabira Forest Co., at very little expense, to place their products on the local markets at reasonable prices. The Company have introduced into the forest up-to-date timber machinery, with which they turn out good constructional timber and handsome furniture. Below is appended a list of some of the most valuable trees found in the Mabira Forest and Kiagwe District :—

Botanical Name.	Native Name.
Linociera ?	Sesambya.
Dolichandrone platycalyx	Lusambya.
Dombeya Mukole	Mukole.
Cynometra Alexandri, C. H. Wright	Muhindi.
Celtis Soyauxii, Engl.	Mpewere.
Albizzia coriaria,* Welw.	Mugavu or Mutampindi.
Croton macrostachys, Hochst.	Musogasoga
Aleurites ?	Mukebu.
Chlorophora excelsa, Bth.	Mvule.
Celtis sp.	Kasisa.
Olacinae ?	Mwojolo.
Maba sp., near M. abyssinica	Mpimbya.
Croton zambesicus, Muell.	Bamuegira.
Zanthoxylon sp.	Mubanjangabo.
Rauwalfia sp.	Mubajangalabi.
Albizzia sp.	Joge.
Khaya anthotheca, C. Dc.	Munyana.
Mæsopsis berchemoides, Engl.	Musise.
Pygeum africanum	Gwabuzito.
—	Lufu.

This forest is situated in the Bunyoro District, **The Budongo Forest.** between the Masindi-Fajao road and Lake Albert. It lies at an average altitude of about 4,000 feet, and its area is estimated as being 160 square miles. This includes the forest known as Nyamaganga, which lies to the east of the Fajao road, and extends into the borders of the Chopi country, but this area does not include other isolated patches of forest lying outside the main body of Budongo. The most important rubber-yielding species found in this forest are : *Funtumia elastica*, *Landolphia Dawei* and *Clitandra orientalis*, the last two being vine rubber. Nearly all the rubber trees and vines in this forest have been tapped at some time, but no systematic tapping has been done for some considerable time. Not only is this forest well stocked with rubber-producing species, but it is the most valuable known timber forest in the Protectorate, there

being numbers of trees with clear, erect boles 80 to 90 feet in height, and from 6 to 7 feet in diameter. Such trees are generally of the mahogany class, the predominating species being the Muhindi tree, *Cynometra Alexandri*. The following is a list of the more important timber trees found in this forest :—

Botanical Name.	Native Name.
<i>Albizzia</i> sp.	Joge.
<i>Alstonia congensis</i>	Musoga.
<i>Chlorophora excelsa</i> , Bth.	Mvule.
<i>Cordia unyorensis</i> , Stapf.	—
<i>Cynometra Alexandri</i> , C. H. Wright	Muhindi.
<i>Erythrophloeum guineense</i> , Don.	Omuwumu.
<i>Khaya anthotheca</i> , C. Dc.	Munyama.
<i>Mæsopsis berchemoides</i> , Engl.	Musise.
<i>Pseudocedrella utilis</i> , Dawe et Sprague, nov. sp.	Miovu.

The Bugoma Forest.

The Bunyoro District may be said to be well wooded, as, besides Budongo and many other smaller forests, the Bugoma forest is situated in this District, the area of which is estimated as being 80 square miles. The Nkussi River, which is the boundary between Buyaga and Bugoma, is one of the largest in Bunyoro. It has a clear, deep channel interrupted at intervals by huge rocks. A very fine waterfall occurs on this river in the heart of the forest. Rattan canes are to be found in groups all along the river bank and a species of *Pandanus* grows rampant by the falls. The scenery on the river is tropical and very fascinating. It is along this river at an altitude of 2,640 feet that this forest commences, and although much scattered and branched it may be considered as one continuous whole. The following species of vine rubber are found distributed throughout: *Clitandra orientalis*, *Landolphia Dawei*, *L. Ugandensis*, *L. Florida* and *L. subturbinata*. The two first mentioned are of the most economic interest. *Funtumia elastica*, though found more or less scattered throughout the forest, is more abundant in the central parts; but the trees are not so abundant, and in most cases not so large as the trees in the Mabira Forest. The same in this forest as in Budongo, the predominating species is *Cynometra* (ironwood) which in the future may prove useful for railway sleepers. The most important and valuable timber is mahogany (*Entandrophragma*, sp.)

Bamboos are plentiful and should prove useful for building purposes locally. Besides the rubber-producing species, timber, rattan canes and bamboos, with which this forest is stocked, *Coffea robusta* is found, but not in sufficient quantities to make the collection of berries for market profitable.

Below is a list of the more important trees which abound in this forest :—

Botanical Name.	Native Name.
<i>Celtis Soyauxii</i> , Engl.	Mpewere.
<i>Chrysophyllum albidum</i> , Don.	Mululu.
<i>Entandrophragma angolense</i>	—
<i>utile</i> , Sprague	Miovu.
<i>Ficus</i> sp.	—
<i>Irvingia</i> sp.	—
<i>Klainedoxa oblingifolia</i> , Stapf.	—
<i>Khaya anthotheca</i> , C. Dc.	Munyama
<i>Parinarium excelsum</i> , Sab.	Mubula.
<i>Phoenix reclinata</i> , Jacq.	—
<i>Raphia munbuttorum</i>	—
Orticaceæ	—
<i>Zanthoxylon</i> sp.	Mubajangabo.

In the Western Province on the Mpanga River, about ten miles down its course from Fort Portal, the Kibale Forest has its source. The area of this forest is estimated as being approximately 230 square miles. The principal trees found are : *Maba abyssinica*, *Chrysophyllum albidum*, *Carapa*, *Dawea ugandensis*, *Balanites Wilsoniana*, *Mimusops torænsis*, *Dactylopetalum ugandense*, *Toddalia nobilis*, *Also-deia ilicifolia*, *Symphonia globulifera*, *Parinarium excelsum*, *Sterculia cordifolia*, *Monodora myristica*, *Funtumia latifolia*, *Kigelia Moosa*, *Spathodea nilotica*, *Mellitita ferruginia*, *Cordia abyssinica*, *Mitragyne rubrostipulacea* and *Panax fulvum*. The Kibale Forest.

Western Ankole is thickly wooded, and a large forest occurs east of Lake Edward, which is 40 to 50 miles from Mbarara, and supplies that station with timber. This forest does not appear to be known locally by any definite name ; the main body, however, which stretches southward from Kibazi Hill towards several small lakes, and clothes the escarpment and crowns the Kusunja Hill, is known near Nyakabongo as Lwankoba and the dense part as Lumbaligambo. The latter is rather a vulgar name given to many large forests, meaning to imply that porters soon weary of walking when passing through. The principal species of trees found in this forest are : *Carapa grandiflora*, *Symphonia globulifera* and *Parinarium excelsum*, an immense tree known as Mubula. The two latter are the trees mainly used locally for building purposes. The Ankole Forests.

Leaving Western Ankole in the easterly direction South Buddu is reached. In this district, and bordering Lake Victoria, Tero Forest has its source. Its area is estimated as being 150-200 square miles, and it lies at the elevation of about 3,730 feet above mean sea level. This The Tero Forest.

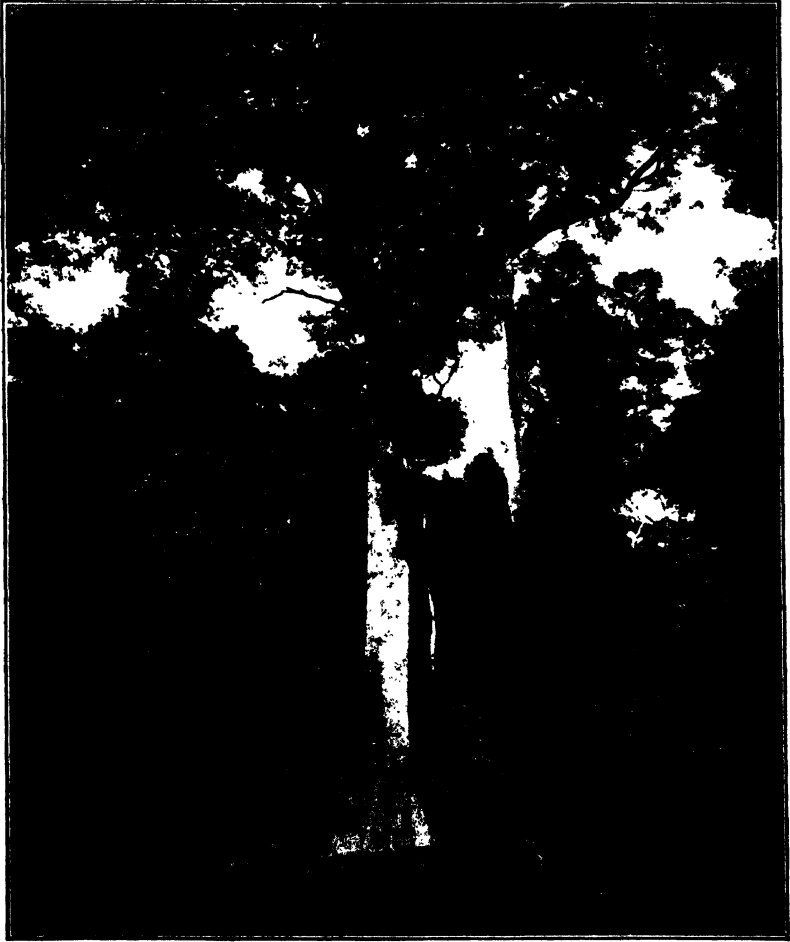
forest has been surveyed and found to have immense possibilities and will be more systematically exploited at no distant date. It is very swampy on account of its being only a few feet above the level of the lake. During the rainy season, which extends from April to end of July,



Khaya anthotheca, C. Dc.

the forest, owing to its water-logged condition, is impassable. It is here that the previously mentioned conifers, *Podocarpus milanjanus*, and *Podocarpus glacilior*, known more commonly as the yellow wood of South Africa, are found.

For the purpose of supplying the Public Works Department with constructional timber, especially for interior house-work, the Government have erected a sawmill on Busungwe Island at the mouth of the Kagera River. The



Cynometra Alexandri.

timber of the Podocarpus tree is used for similar purposes as spruce and pine, but the former is better adapted to the conditions prevailing in this country, and it is less subject to the attacks of white ants. With a view to increasing the present stocking of this valuable timber tree and other

species of useful timber trees found in this forest, nurseries have been established for raising young seedlings with a view to future afforestation.

Other trees of value found in this forest are: *Baïkeæ Eminii*, *Mimusops cuneifolia*, *Parinarium excelsum*, *Mæsoptis berchemoides*, *Sideroxylon*, *Eugenia owarensis* and *Euphorbiaceæ*.

**The Luam-
babye
Forest.**

This is a comparatively small forest and finds its source along the banks of the Luambabye River in Bunyoro. There are numerous good trees found here but at present the greatest value lies in the wealth of rattan canes which clothe its banks.

Afforestation.

Up to the present very little re-afforestation has been undertaken, but, owing to the rapid development of the larger towns, and in consequence the increasing demand for fuel for both domestic and machinery purposes, the Forestry Department has found it necessary to raise large quantities of quick-growing trees, both of indigenous and exotic species, in order to provide an adequate supply of fuel for the future. Also trees are being raised for planting close to those camps, situated along the main roads, which are at present devoid of fuel, as well as timber trees for those out-stations which lack timber of constructional value. Wherever possible, the indigenous trees of the district or locality required to be planted are utilised for forming plantations.

Useful Trees.

The following is a description of some of the most useful trees of Uganda :—

Linociera ? (native name, "Sesambya").—A tall, straight tree, height 60-70 feet, girth 6-9 feet, timber white or light-brown, very even and close-grained, takes good polish, hard and durable; trees plentiful in Mabira or Kiagwe. It takes nails well, but they are hard to drive; is tough, hard to saw, planes fairly easily, but the wood rips out in places. It turns indifferently.

Dolichandrone platycalyx (native name, "Lusambya").—Tree of dimensions similar to above, timber white or whitish-yellow, very tough and durable, useful and used largely for house-building; trees very plentiful in Mabira Forest. It is of no value for export. Its hardness equals that of English birch, and its weight per cubic foot is 42½ lbs. The wood cleaves easily without being too fissile to take nails. A sapwood tree.

Dombeya Mukole (native name, "Mukole").—Much branched tree, clear bole 15-20 feet, girth 6-8 feet, timber hard heartwood, walnut colour, good grain, takes good

polish. Its hardness equals that of maple, and its weight per cubic foot is $48\frac{1}{2}$ lb. The wood rends raggedly, and does not take nails well as it easily splits. A heartwood tree, having sapwood about two inches thick.

Cynometra Alexandri, C. H. Wright (native name, "Muhindi").—Tall, straight tree, 70-80 feet high, clear trunk 40-50 feet, girth 8-14 feet, wood even grained, light yellow, said to be subject to insect attacks. It resists nails and splits, saws very hard, and gives off a smell like burning fat. It is hard to plane, and the grain rips out. It turns fairly well, and takes a good polish. Weight per cubic foot, 65 lb.

Celtis Soyauxii, Eng. (native name, "Mpewere").—This is not the Mpewere of Western Uganda, which is *Piptadenia africana*. A tall tree of similar dimensions to "Muhindi" wood, very light and white in colour. It is tough and hard to saw, planes rather hard, the wood rips out badly, and it is almost impossible to get it smooth. It takes nails badly, being fissile, and turns indifferently. Weight per cubic foot, $49\frac{1}{2}$ lb.

Albizia coriaria, Welw. (native name, "Mugavu" or "Mutampindi").—Wide-spreading tree, with short trunk and large branches, wood mahogany colour, extremely hard, heavy and durable, resembling the Lebbek wood of India and might pass for walnut. It absorbs a large amount of polish, and its hardness equals that of maple. Its weight per cubic foot is $45\frac{1}{2}$ lb. The wood rends cleanly and takes nails well.

Croton macrostachys, Hochst. (native name, "Musogasoga").—Tree 50 feet high, clear trunk 20-25 feet, wood very light; it appears to be rather tough. The weight per cubic foot is $34\frac{1}{2}$ lb.

Aleurites? (native name, "Mukebu").—Tall, straight tree, 50-60 feet, trunk 30-35 feet, wood brown and mottled, said to be fairly durable. The weight per cubic foot is 21 lb. The structure of this wood is interesting, the medullary rays are very prominent, and the wood possesses a striking silver grain.

Chlorophora excelsa, Bth. (native name, "Mvule").—Tall, straight tree, 70-80 feet, bole 40-50 feet, girth 8-18 feet. A rather coarse-grained wood of uniform, yellowish colour with pretty zig-zag markings on a tangential section. It can scarcely be said to be ornamental, and is of little, if any, value for export. The heartwood is irregular in shape, and the sapwood from $1\frac{3}{4}$ to $2\frac{1}{4}$ inches thick. It is a useful wood for building purposes. It will not take nails, being fissile, is

hard to saw, planes fairly easily, but the grain rips out, turns easily, but finishes badly. Weight per cubic foot, 46 lb.

Celtis sp. (native name, "Kasisa").—Tall tree, 60-70 feet, bole 20-35 feet, girth 8-12 feet, wood whitish, fairly heavy but liable to split. Its weight per cubic foot is 43½ lb.

Olacinae ? (native name, "Mwojolo").—Straight tree, about 60 feet high, bole 20-30 feet, girth 6-10 feet, wood very light in colour, hard, even-grained, and very useful. It works easily with all tools, but is brittle and difficult to smooth. Its hardness equals that of ash, and weight per cubic foot is 45½ lb. The wood is fissile, rending easily and cleanly; it offers great resistance to nails. A sapwood tree.

Maba sp. (native name, "Mpimbya").—Erect tree, 70-80 feet, bole 30-40 feet, girth 6-9 feet, wood fairly hard, light in colour, with peculiar dark markings. It is hard to saw, resists nails, planes fairly easily, but the grain rips out. It turns indifferently. Weight per cubic foot, 52 lb.

Croton zambesicus, Muell. (native name, "Bamuegira").—Tall tree, 70-80 feet, trunk 40-50 feet, girth 6-12 feet, wood light in colour, heartwood brown, fairly hard when freshly cut, and has very offensive odour. It takes nails easily but splits; is tough, hard to saw, fairly easy to plane, but difficult to smooth. It turns badly. Weight per cubic foot, 44 lb.

Zanthoxylon sp. (native name, "Mubajangabo").—Tall, straight tree, bark studded with brittle corky protuberances which have a thorn at the end. Branches all covered with thorns. Height 50-70 feet, trunk 30-40 feet, girth 5-7 feet, wood, very even grained, yellow, hard and durable, useful for panels, etc. It takes nails well and saws firmly. It planes easily, but badly, as the grain rips out. It turns easily, but does not finish well. Weight per cubic foot, 39 lb.

Rauwolfia sp. (native name, "Mubajangalabi").—Tree 50-60 feet, with bole 20-30 feet, girth 6-10 feet, wood soft, light, white in colour, bark contains latex. It works very easily, something like American white pine, and has a little natural lustre. Its hardness equals that of white pine in Sequoia. The wood is fissile, rends very easily and straight, takes nails well, but does not hold them very tenaciously.

Albizia sp. (native name, "Nongo").—Erect tree, 70-90 feet, bole 30-45 feet, girth 6-10 feet, wood dark, hard,

heavy and durable. It has rather more natural lustre, but otherwise all the remarks made regarding *A. coriaria* apply to this also. The weight per cubic foot is $41\frac{1}{2}$ lb.

Khaya anthotheca, C.Dc. (native name, "Munyama").—A very large tree, very common in Budongo, but singularly rare in Bugoma. Wood mahogany-like of light colour and weight; would probably pass under the name of "Cedar" or "Baywood," and would probably find a market in England. Weight per cubic foot, $36\frac{1}{2}$ lb.

Mæsopsis berchemoides, Engl. (native name, "Musizi").—A tall tree with uniform round bole, tapering but very little, and branches of symmetrical growth; bark ash grey and channelled. It affects usually the outskirts of the forests, and when found in the interior it is generally of very large size. Trees have been measured with clear boles 76-79 feet, with girth up to $12\frac{1}{2}$ feet. This wood was largely used at one time for building canoes on the shores of Lake Victoria Nyanza, and is also largely used for house building. The wood varies somewhat in colour according to age, but is generally brownish-yellow with a metallic lustre. The wood is durable, and may be useful for sleepers if injected. Weight about 33 lbs. per cubic foot.

"Gwabuzito."—This is the well-known red stinkwood (*Pygeum africanum*) extending from the eastern forests of Cape Colony, through Natal and Transvaal to British East Africa, where it is a large and valuable timber tree. At Mabira it is often a medium-sized tree and crooked, but large trees are met with, and the crookedness would not be against its use for sleepers. It is not an abundant tree at Mabira Forest. The name "Gwabuzito" refers to the heaviness of the timber. This was first met within the "Dog Fly" forest, 12 miles north of Jinja. It is perhaps the finest tree there, but unfortunately not common. This tree measured 32 inches diameter by 26 feet bole by 50 feet total height.

"Lufugo."—"Speckle bark." This is perhaps the most important tree economically in the Mabira Forest. It is important on account of its abundance and tall, very straight, stems. It forms about 45 per cent. of all the timber in the forest. No tests have been made, but the timber appears to be one of medium density, but very hard; not durable without impregnation, but porous and probably easy of injection. The natives rank it as a good, useful timber.

Alstonia congensis (native name, "Musoga").—One of the largest and most conspicuous trees of the forest in

Budongo; total height often exceeds 100 feet; trees have been measured with clear boles to 85 feet, and it forms about 9·43 per cent. of the species found in the forest. The wood is white and rather soft, but may be useful for some purposes to which deal is put, *i.e.*, packing cases, etc.

Cordia unyorensis (native name, "Mutumba").—A large, spreading tree with large cordate leaves and rather conspicuous white flowers. Grows to a very large size. Native drums are made from this species. Wood yellow, with a slight metallic lustre, open and coarse-grained. Useful only for local purposes. Weight per cubic foot, 30½ lb.

Erythrophleum guineense.—The sassy bark of West Africa, a large, spreading tree, girth often up to 15 feet, fairly common, wood very coarse, open-grained, and brown in colour. May be useful for railway sleepers. Weight per cubic foot, 65 lb.

Pseudocedrella utilis (native name, "Miovu").—A tree attaining very large dimensions, affording the most valuable timber of the forest. Trees have been noted up to 22 feet in girth, and with useful bole up to 80 feet and over, and logs of large size are obtainable. Wood mahogany-like, open-grain, and fairly deep colour. It may find a market as inferior mahogany. It will not take nails, being very fissile; is firm, but saws easily. Planes easily, but the grain rips out badly in places, turns well and takes a good polish.

Chrysophyllum albidum, G. Don.—A tall tree, bark contains latex. Wood dirty brown colour, and very coarse open-grain. Would be generally useful for construction. Weight per cubic foot, 44½ lb.

Entandrophragma angolense, Sprague.—A very large tree, affords the most valuable timber of the Bugoma forest.

Entandrophragma utile, Sprague (native name, "Miovu").—A very large tree, not so valuable as the preceding species. It affords a very valuable timber. The tree is closely allied to the true mahogany; it is of medium open-grain and fairly deep colour.

Ficus sp.—There are several species of ficus which are undetermined; some of them attain giant dimensions; they are most of them of very little timber value.

Irvingia, sp.—A medium-size tree with astringent fruits resembling a mango. Wood should be useful for general purposes.

Klainedoxa oblingifolia, Stapf.—A tree attaining large dimensions, easily distinguished from the other trees of the forest by its bronze-coloured foliage when coming into fresh leaf ; has extraordinary long deciduous stipules.

Parinarium excelsum.—A large tree not common in Bugoma, but plentiful in West Ankole. One of the principal timbers used at Mbarara station. Wood light brown in colour, coarse. Useful for furniture. Weight per cubic foot, 56 lb.

Phoenix reclinata, Jacq.—The Makindu palm, the poles of which are very tall and straight, and are useful for temporary buildings.

Raphia munbuttorum.—Not common and afford "raffia" fibre.

Orticaceæ.—A tall tree, undetermined.

CHAPTER XV.

BOTANY.

To deal fully with the botany of the Protectorate is beyond the scope and is not the purpose of these notes which are simply to give a general outline of and to deal with some of the more important members of the flora.

Needless to say the nature of a flora depends largely on the climatic conditions, *i.e.*, speaking generally, a tropical condition does not necessarily mean an abundance of luxuriant vegetation. An arid or semi-arid condition may prevail and this will be exemplified in the vegetation. Unequal distribution of rainfall, proximity to the sea or lakes and altitude will each go to provide a diversity in the nature of a country.

This is well illustrated in the botany of the Protectorate, for one can pass, in some directions, from one type of vegetation to an entirely different one in the course of a day's safari.

The flora may be divided into three main divisions—that representing the humid, the arid and the alpine regions, with transitionary forms merging into these.

The humid region embraces roughly the country lying between and including Busoga in the north-east to Buddu in the south and involving Toro in the south-west. A subdivision may be said to exist in what may be called the Victoria Nyanza region with a flora akin to that of the Congo, Cameroons and Southern Nigeria. This flora is again evident in the forests of West Toro and Bunyoro where the "Oil-palm," *Alaëis guinensis*, Jacq., is sparsely distributed, and the "Screw-pine," *Pandanus sp.*, so common in the estuaries of the West African rivers.

The arid region includes the Rudolf Province where generally the vegetation consists of scrub and short grass merging into an almost desert country. It also includes parts of the Nile Province.

The alpine regions are represented by Ruwenzori and Mount Elgon.

The general character of the country is undulating, resulting in the humid regions in numerous swamps, in which an aquatic or semi-aquatic vegetation prevails, consisting mainly in the lake regions of "papyrus,"

P. antiquorum, Willd., forming an almost impenetrable grassy forest, whilst in other instances consisting of luxuriant forests rising from the swampy beds to cover in some cases the hill-tops, or are given over to numberless wild "date-palms," *Phoenix reclinata*, which, with their waving fronds and deep yellow inflorescences, are very striking, accompanied with fields of *Amomum*, *A. granum-paradisi*, Rosc. This makes a fine contrast to the grass-covered hills, which in general aspect appear as downs, but in reality consist of the tall "Elephant" grass, *Pennisetum setosum*, or knee-deep "Lusenke," *Imperata arundinacea*, Cyr., *Cymbopogon* spp., and *Panicum*, dotted throughout with trees, mainly *Ficus* spp. and *Dolichandrone platcalyx*; these, owing to their economic value, are propagated by the natives; also *Cynometra* sp., *Acacia* sp., *Chlorophora excelsa* and the Incense tree, *Canarium Schweinfurthii*, a handsome tree of the *Burseraceae* family, which, by virtue of its massiveness, is a landmark; and banana fields.

There is no lack of colour in this region, but it is for the most part diffused, green predominating, an eternal green of varied hues.

There are several trees of fairly common occurrence and notable from their floral beauty, chiefly the "Kifabakazi," *Spathodea nilotica*, Seem., and the "Kirikiti," *Erythrina tomentosa*. The former is spoken of generally as the "Flame of the Forest," and indeed it is as worthy of the name as the "Flamboyant" *Poinciana regia*, of the West Indies. It is a tree possessing large tulip-like vivid scarlet flowers, fringed with gold, and small silvery-winged seeds which are scattered by the wind on the dehiscence of the long erect "pod-like" seed vessels. The latter is no less a "Flame of the Forest" with its bright scarlet "spidery" flowers (due to the *vexillum* being divided into five filaments for half its length) growing along the forest edges in swampy places and throughout the pastoral country, generally flowering in a deciduous state but well set off amongst the varied green of the forest trees, or peeping up amongst the waving fields of grass. It is a tree of the Bean family, *Leguminosae*, possessing seeds larger but very similar to the "prayer-beads," *Abrus precatorius*, L.

Of the many families of plants, *Compositae* probably provides the greatest quota of colour, having a wide distribution and a wide range of colour. The *Vernonias* provide large clumps of blues and violet, *V. macrocyanus*, O. Hoffn., *V. asterifolia*, Baker, *V. cinerea*, Lees, and in others, and in *Conyza* spp.; the *Coreopsis* and *Senecios*, various hues of yellow, the latter turning into white in their

downy heads of *pappus*. These vie with the *Leguminosae*, also widely distributed, and display a variety of colour in blue and yellow, *Crotalaria spp.*, *Cassia spp.*, *Eriosema spp.*, *Desmodium spp.*, and *Tephrosia spp.*, all contributing: the last, *T. vogellii*, is a striking plant in both the blue and white varieties.

This by no means exhausts the plants of floral note. Other families have their showy members, for example, *Rubiaceae* in *Pentas quartiniana*, Hook., f. in *P. carnea* in *Mussaenda splendens*, and in *M. erythrophylla*, Sch., et Thonn: this latter is a slender shrub with bold blood red bracts inhabiting the outskirts of the forests: the *Acanthaceae* in *Acanthus arboreus*, Forst., widely distributed in grass lands and bounding the edge of swampy forests producing profusely among its acanthus-shaped thistle-like leaves pinkish-mauve flowers, and in the *Justicia*, *Rungia*, *Eranthemum*, *Brillantaisia* and odd *Phayloopsis* inhabiting and beautifying the open glades of the forests; and the *Nymphaceae*, in *Nympha stellata*, Willd., their blue, star-like flowers under the overhanging mop-like heads of *Papyrus* giving life and colour to the pools and swamps.

Then there is that interesting family of plants, the *Orchidaceae*, with that notable Pseudobulbous swamp orchid, *Lissochilus Horsfallae*, Brown, with long, plicate leaves and tall flowering spikes six to eight feet high, and *L. ugandae*, also a swamp lover. *Lissochilus arenarius* and *L. purpuratus*, *Bonatia ugandae* and *B. ugandus* are only four of a number of delightful boggy and pastoral orchids. There are a considerable number of tree orchids among which *Angraecum infundibulare* and *Dendrobium sp.*, are notable, and the pretty *Listrostachys Whytei* and *L. cf. Pellucida*.

It is further represented in *Eulophia*, *Polystachya*, *Habenaria*, etc., etc., some of which are pretty orchids but many are of purely botanical interest.

Iridaceae is represented in the pretty *Gladiolus quartinianus*, A. Reek, and several others; *Amaryllidaceae* notably in *Crinum gigantum* and *Crinum sp.*; *Lilificeae* in *Aloe sp.*; the unique *Gloriosa superba*, L., and *G. virescen*, Lindl., and *Dracaena fragrans*, Gawl., and *D. reflexa*, and other species, with their close allies in *Haemodoraceae* *Sansevieria spp.*, the most notable of which is *S. Dawei* with a large, well-furnished white flowering spike.

In addition to *Phoenix reclinata*, Jacq., already mentioned, the *Palmae* is further represented in this region in *Raphia Mombutorum*, Drude, a fine majestic palm inhabiting the forests of the Victoria Nyanza, Lake Albert and Lake Edward regions.

It is also worthy of remark that the flora of this region possesses one member of that ancient and interesting order of plants, the *Cycadaceae*, which flourished during the coal or carboniferous age in *Ensephalartos sp.*, a palm-like plant producing large cones, and in this showing an affinity to the *Coniferae* of the present day.

Of equal if not of more interest is the flora of the alpine regions, and especially so in this part for the vegetation passes from one essentially tropical through transitional stages to another essentially temperate, from luxuriant tropical forests, palms, *Papyrus*, wild bananas (*Musa ensete*, Gomel.), and draceanas, to conifera, daisies and heaths up to barren ice-clad regions.

This alpine region is remarkable for its giant *Sencecios*, *S. Johnstonii* (?), a member of the groundsel family, *Compositae*, and a group of plants usually herbs, but here approaching the nature of a tree, and also for its tall *Lobelias*, *L. Stuhlmanii*, *L. Deckenii*, Hemsl., and others, giant relatives of *Lobelia erinus*, the dwarf blue border plant of the English gardens.

Blackberries, *Rubus Doggetii*, *Podocarpus sp.* (a member of the yew family, *Taxaceae*), and *Juniperus* (on Mount Elgon), butter-cups, *Rumunculus pubescens*, Thunb., *Hypericum lanceolatum*, Lam., one of the St. John's Wort, the homely forget-me-not, *Myosotis sp.*, and *Heather*, *Erica arborea*, L., are also indigenous to this region, a flora representative more of the northern hemisphere than of the tropics.

The arid region is of less interest botanically, for the vegetation is sparse, mainly an apparent lifeless grass and stunted scrub. The presence of the palmyra palm, *Borassus Flabellifer*, var. *aethiopum*, Warb., *Euphorbia*, *E. antiquorum*, L., and the aborted thorny *Acacias* in passing from the humid zone is an indication of the approach of the more arid condition.

The flora of Uganda undoubtedly presents a wide and interesting field to both the phanerogamic and cryptogamic Botanist. Many parts are still unexplored, and it has proved to be very rich in new species.

CHAPTER XVI.

LAND.

Crown Lands. The regulations governing the sale and lease of Crown lands are contained in The Crown Lands Ordinance, 1903, and rules thereunder. For the time being the grant of freehold has been discontinued.

Agricultural Land Leases. No Crown land may be leased for a longer period than 99 years. Rent is fixed at the time of lease for the first 33 years of the lease. For agricultural land of average quality it is now (1919) from 40 to 50 cents. per acre per annum. Rent is revisable at the end of 33 years and again at the end of 66 years. The general principles for fixing the amount of the new rent on revision have not yet been worked out, but these will be embodied in a new Crown Lands Ordinance, now under consideration. During each of the first three years of the lease a lessee must place one-tenth of his total holding under cultivation. Lease is usually by personal selection and private treaty, *i.e.*, the land is not put up for sale by auction.

Building Leases.

Township leases are granted for periods of either 49 or 99 years. All leases of township plots carry with them an obligation to erect on the plot leased within a specified period, varying from one to three years, a building of a definite value. The standard size of a township plot for European trading purposes is 10,000 square feet; for non-European trading purposes 5,000 square feet. According to the importance of the township and the length of the lease the rent for this area varies from £3 to £9; the building covenant from £80 to £350. The standard size of a residential plot is one acre, and rent and building covenants for this area are the same as those for a standard size trading plot.

Temporary Occupation Licences.

Temporary occupation licences are granted for areas not exceeding five acres. Such licences are for one year and thenceforward until the expiration of any three months' notice to quit. They carry with them no conditions as to cultivation or erection of buildings. Rents vary from 6s. 8d. per annum for agricultural allotments to 3s. 6d. to 6s. 8d. per month for township plots.

As the result of various agreements concluded in the early days of the history of the Protectorate, very large areas of land have been granted as freehold property to natives of the Protectorate, more particularly in the Buganda Province. Subject to the consent of the Governor, and with the approval of the Lukiko, natives are allowed to lease portions of their allotments to non-natives. The rent is a matter for arrangement between lessor and lessee. Native Land leased to Non-Natives

All land leased, except land leased under temporary occupation licences, must be surveyed and fees paid by the lessee. The average cost of survey is about 8d. per acre for agricultural land. A fixed fee of £2 is charged for township plots. Survey.

MINING.

Prospecting licences, giving permission to prospect for minerals on Crown lands, are issued for a sum of Rs. 5 for a period of six months. They are obtainable from the Commissioner of Mines, Entebbe, from all Provincial Commissioners, and from certain District Commissioners. Personal application is necessary. Prospecting Licences.

The holder of a prospecting licence may beacon off for himself a prospecting area. If, on such prospecting area, he finds any gold, silver, or precious stones he may, on abandoning his prospecting area, and provided that such find is not within three miles of any previous discovery, select five alluvial or seven quartz claims at the place where such gold, silver, or precious stones have been found; such claims shall be marked off and registered as prospectors' claims. The extent of an alluvial claim is 150 feet by 150 feet; the extent of a quartz reef claim 150 feet by 400 feet.

The area of land which may be leased under any mining lease shall not exceed 25 acres; and under any mineral lease shall not exceed 506 acres. Rent is for mining leases 20 Rupees per acre per annum; for mineral leases 5 Rupees per acre per annum. Royalties payable are 2 Rupees per ounce on gold, 12 cents per ounce on silver, 2½ per cent. on diamonds, 50 cents per ton on coal, and on other precious stones, ores, metals, or minerals such royalties as the Governor may fix. Mining Lease.

Full details are contained in the Mining Ordinances Nos. 5, 6 and 7 of 1902, obtainable from the Commissioner of Mines, Entebbe. The Mining Regulations are at present (1919) under revision and a new Mining Ordinance is contemplated at an early date.

CHAPTER XVII.

TRADE.

Statements are annexed showing the value of the total imports and exports for the thirteen years ended 31st March, 1917. The Customs Departments of the Uganda and East Africa Protectorate were amalgamated after that date and separate statistics for the two territories are not available in consequence, except with regard to the exports of domestic produce. The ultimate destination of this produce is unknown, as the bulk is consigned for shipment to agents at Mombasa and is thus classified with East African exports.

The chief articles imported for home consumption in 1916-1917 with their values are as under :—

Yarns and textile fabrics :—					£
Bleached calico	..	..	£	32,212	
Unbleached calico	..	..		127,090	
Other kinds	..	..		173,220	
					332,522
Chemicals and drugs	..	..	..	..	5,303
Specie and bullion	..	..	..	..	181,065
Hardware	..	..	..	..	5,568
Machinery and parts thereof	..	..	..	..	15,556
Provisions	..	..	..	..	24,350
Bags and sacks	..	..	..	..	24,508
Metals, all kinds	..	..	..	..	14,001
Apparel	..	..	..	..	10,348
Kerosene oil	..	..	..	..	14,517
Soap	..	..	..	..	24,221
Spirits	..	..	..	..	19,640
Sugar	..	..	..	..	10,804
Stationery	..	..	..	..	7,690
Tobacco	..	..	..	..	19,675
Wheeled vehicles, all kinds	..	..	..	..	32,039
Agricultural implements	..	..	..	..	14,936
Flour	..	..	..	..	9,451
Cement	..	..	..	..	5,940
Salt	..	..	..	..	17,265
Blankets	..	..	..	..	31,880

A statement showing the quantities and values of the principal articles of domestic produce exported for the last fifteen years is annexed.

In the early days of the Protectorate the bulk of the imports came by porters from the east coast ports through German East Africa to Mwanza, at the south end of Lake Victoria, and were transported thence by dhows or canoes.

The dhows, which were owned by German firms and Arab traders, were brought up in pieces from the coast and put together at Mwanza. The canoes were Uganda canoes and proceeded in convoys of 40 or 50 at a time with a chief in charge. The carrying trade on the Lake was a profitable one, 10s. being the average freight for a load of 60 lbs. In those days the exports consisted entirely of ivory, which found its outlet to the sea over the same route through German East Africa.

The construction of the railway transformed the whole trade of the Protectorate. The imports and exports now pass almost entirely through British East Africa.

The success of the cotton industry, the extent of which will be seen from the statement of exports, is one of the remarkable features of the trade of the Protectorate. This product is grown entirely by the natives, under the supervision and guidance of the Government, and has very largely increased the worldly prosperity of the natives—and is thus a most important factor in the progress of the country.

The ginneries are owned by European Companies, and, besides those at the larger towns of Kampala, Entebbe and Jinja, subsidiary factories are now being erected in the principal outlying cotton-producing districts.

Another important factor is the large number of estates recently acquired by European planters. Most of these estates have been purchased from the natives, who have benefited financially by this means also. The chief articles of produce grown are coffee, Para rubber and cocoa, all of which show every sign of success.

The trade in ox hides and goat skins is of a steady nature, and other articles which promise well are sim-sim and ground nuts. The trade in ivory is a diminishing one but should still for some years be of importance. There is a fluctuating export of small red chillies. These are not cultivated in the ordinary sense of the word but grow wild, and the trade should be maintained as long as prices hold good. A considerable quantity of ghee is manufactured in the Protectorate, which is consumed chiefly in British East Africa. By improvement in the preparation of this article the exports might be considerably increased.

The import trade has increased rapidly owing to the influx of Europeans and the enrichment of the natives. Stores with good stocks of European goods have been opened in the larger towns, and, chiefly owing to the enterprise of the Indian trader, small stores for the sale of cloths, hardware, etc., are found in most of the outlying districts.

The cloth goods imported are bleached and unbleached calico and fancy cloths of the cheaper kinds, locally known as vitambi, kangas, vikoi, etc. There is also a large trade in cheap cotton blankets. The articles of apparel imported are chiefly fez caps, undervests, shirts, second-hand coats and waistcoats.

There is an increasing demand for imported provisions, bicycles, stationery, sewing machines, hoes, lamps (chiefly hurricane lamps), and other articles of hardware.

The bulk of the import trade is from the United Kingdom. In most cases the better classes of all goods come from the United Kingdom, and the cheaper qualities from foreign countries; the chief exception being unbleached calico, locally known as "americani," which is manufactured in the United States of America.

An important branch of the trade of the Protectorate is the transit trade to the Congo Free State, which brings a return from its transport.

The construction of the Busoga Railway, which was completed in 1912, and the placing of steamers and lighters on Lake Kioga, provide very necessary means of transport to Lake Victoria for the cotton, sim-sim, and other produce grown so largely in the Eastern Province of the Protectorate. A short line of railway has been completed between Kampala and Lake Victoria, and has placed the native capital of Buganda, through which a large portion of the trade of the Protectorate passes, in through railway and steamer communication with the coast.

**STATEMENT OF THE TOTAL VALUE OF IMPORTS FOR THE
THIRTEEN YEARS, 1904-1905 TO 1916-1917.**

Year.	Private Merchan- dise.	Govern- ment Stores.	Specie.	Goods in Transit.	Total.
	£	£	£	£	£
1904-1905 ..	143,297	19,320	21,900	6,294	190,811
1905-1906 ..	165,618	9,224	19,438	21,125	215,405
1906-1907 ..	222,588	19,922	12,064	41,638	296,212
1907-1908 ..	267,967	14,888	28,508	60,204 (a)	371,567
1908-1909 ..	281,254	41,740	13,694	82,615 (b)	419,303
1909-1910 ..	288,876	34,228	36,901	43,395	403,400
1910-1911 ..	347,823	32,428 (c)	123,383	51,724	555,358
1911-1912 ..	428,199	51,753 (d)	96,374	48,211	624,537
1912-1913 ..	535,891	54,424 (e)	120,397	69,234	779,946
1913-1914 ..	754,754	61,414 (f)	123,993	81,094	1,021,255
1914-1915 ..	483,144	63,227 (g)	1,767	40,820 (h)	588,958
1915-1916 ..	525,689	38,599 (i)	83,560	45,535	693,383
1916-1917 ..	744,346	24,484	181,065	346,205 (j)	1,296,100

(a) Includes £28,000 bullion from Congo Free State in transit to Europe.

(b) Includes £33,333 bullion from Congo Free State in transit to Europe.

(c) Includes £6,007 railway material for construction of the Busoga railway.

(d) Includes £14,806 railway material for construction of the Busoga railway.

(e) Includes £21,807 railway material for construction of the Busoga railway, and £12,347 ships and boats for Lake Kioga.

(f) Includes £2,516 railway material for the Busoga railway and £5,934 railway material for construction of Kampala-Port Bell railway.

(g) Includes £13,988 railway material for the construction of Kampala-Port Bell railway.

(h) Includes specie, £2,000. Also bullion, £4,860, in transit from Congo Belge to Europe.

(i) Includes £1,238 railway material for upkeep of Kampala-Port Bell and Busoga railways.

(j) Includes £248,508 gold bullion in transit from Congo Belge to Europe. £252,673 gold bullion was also passed in transit from Congo Belge to Europe in 1915-1916 which was not included in that year's figures.

STATEMENT OF THE TOTAL VALUE OF EXPORTS FOR THE
THIRTEEN YEARS, 1904-1905 TO 1916-1917.

Year.	Domestic Produce.	Re-Exports (a)		Goods in Transit.	Total.
		Merchandise.	Specie.		
	£	£	£	£	£
1904-1905	60,378	Statistics	—	—	60,378
1905-1906	89,826	not kept in	—	—	89,826
1906-1907	116,001	these years.	—	—	116,001
1907-1908	147,028	29,077	2,503	—	178,608
1908-1909	127,275	36,598	10,640	—	174,513
1909-1910	175,934	43,910	5,427	—	225,271
1910-1911	306,609	30,847	2,870	—	340,326
1911-1912	367,575	17,125	7,891	—	392,591
1912-1913	436,902	15,408	4,700	—	457,010
1913-1914	511,679	12,581	1,899	—	526,159
1914-1915	523,173	14,190	79,163	—	616,526
1915-1916	503,681	30,681	17,520	41,873 (b)	593,755
1916-1917	637,793	64,255	52,013	322,843 (c)	1,076,904

(a) Exclusive of goods in transit. For value of goods in transit see statement of imports above.

(b) Not shown separately in previous years.

(c) Includes £248,508 gold bullion.

COMPARATIVE STATEMENT OF DOMESTIC EXPORTS FOR FIFTEEN YEARS ENDED 31ST MARCH, 1919.

	Cotton Ginned.		Cotton Unginned (a)		Hides.		Goat Skins.		Ivory.		Sesame Seed.	
	Quantity.	Value.	Quantity.	Value.	Quantity.	Value.	Quantity.	Value.	Quantity.	Value.	Quantity.	Value.
	Tons.	£	Tons.	£	Tons.	£	100 Skins	£	Tons.	£	Tons.	£
1904-1905 ..	10	235	—	—	15	3,046	5,713	23,006	27	18,037	57	239
1905-1906 ..	43	1,089	—	—	153	5,128	5,591	30,825	22	15,628	90	354
1906-1907 ..	175	11,411	—	—	180	9,682	6,609	33,974	29	24,331	415	1,763
1907-1908 ..	645	47,114	213	4,480	197	10,699	5,076	24,033	30	29,532	662	6,071
1908-1909 ..	512	30,003	640	11,229	298	12,436	6,071	21,486	29	27,072	332	2,717
1909-1910 ..	620	37,416	1,496	22,180	394	17,974	7,273	27,482	30	28,180	708	5,431
1910-1911 ..	1,634	120,664	2,514	44,748	378	20,544	6,644	24,920	38	35,674	529	4,477
1911-1912 ..	2,963	184,639	2,283	46,211	451	26,191	5,816	22,249	31	27,620	692	7,048
1912-1913 ..	3,886	214,170	2,427	40,209	644	45,854	5,738	28,543	19	18,842	1,570	16,812
1913-1914 ..	4,261	272,366	2,207	45,321	692	52,926	4,650	29,037	20	23,678	896	10,449
1914-1915 ..	5,357	320,486	1,509	30,660	807	54,917	3,644	19,091	5	6,283	426	4,764
1915-1916 ..	4,562	239,483	406	5,943	911	64,480	3,913	18,260	13	11,091	1,963	21,986
1916-1917 ..	3,898	348,880	2	34	988	52,693	3,985	16,095	10	8,778	1,905	21,318
1917-1918 ..	4,970	537,083	14	548	1,142	76,707	2,546	6,789	49	43,770	867	13,048
1918-1919 ..	4,909	965,951	Nil.	Nil.	753	64,125	2,182	8,162	42	37,918	47	1,008

(a) This cotton is ginned in the East Africa Protectorate before being shipped from Mombasa.

COMPARATIVE STATEMENT OF DOMESTIC EXPORTS FOR FIFTEEN YEARS ENDED 31ST MARCH, 1919.—*continued.*

	Chillies.		Cotton Seed. (b)		Ghee. (Clarified Butter).		Coffee.		Ground Nuts.		Jaggree. (Unrefined sugar)	
	Quantity.	Value.	Quantity.	Value.	Quantity.	Value.	Quantity.	Value.	Quantity.	Value.	Quantity.	Value.
	Tons.	£	Tons.	£	Tons.	£	Tons.	£	Tons.	£	Tons.	£
1904-1905 ..	384½	4,384	—	—	35	1,374	—	—	69	281	—	—
1905-1906 ..	1,513	19,036	—	—	54	2,169	—	—	11½	44	—	—
1906-1907 ..	1,468	10,736	½	1	73	3,107	—	—	121	483	—	—
1907-1908 ..	167	845	90	263	135	7,502	—	—	118	1,117	—	—
1908-1909 ..	125	725	1,134	1,910	108	5,356	—	—	24	208	—	—
1909-1910 ..	482	7,417	429	849	143	6,379	—	—	154	1,160	—	—
1910-1911 ..	873	20,492	1,604	3,208	150	6,109	13	383	353	3,180	—	—
1911-1912 ..	682	16,658	2,927	5,909	145	5,819	85	2,563	457	4,279	—	—
1912-1913 ..	530	12,408	5,614	1,335	237	11,439	167	8,940	589	5,570	—	—
1913-1914 ..	360	8,247	6,706	13,499	243	12,507	613	23,169	384	3,740	11	193
1914-1915 ..	256	5,835	9,017	18,172	235	12,264	1,055	41,005	8	76	13	159
1915-1916 ..	417	16,850	5,225	9,760	230	11,999	2,162	87,202	85	822	28	329
1916-1917 ..	666	27,328	5,461	10,220	350	18,310	2,430	113,939	182	1,767	26	310
1917-1918 ..	464	18,586	2,201	7,402	355	23,270	992	39,561	48	464	43	668
1918-1919 ..	274	6,847	1,661	6,149	322	26,122	2,716	106,009	45	562	—	3

(b) Exclusive of seed exported in the unginmed cotton. Seed exported in the unginmed cotton is estimated to be two-thirds of the weight, or 1,618 tons in 1912-13, making the total export of cotton seed for that year 7,232 tons.

COMPARATIVE STATEMENT OF OTHER DOMESTIC EXPORTS FOR SIX YEARS ENDED 31ST MARCH, 1919.

	Hippo Teeth.		Rhino Horn.		Rubber— Wild.		Rubber— Plantation.		Skins— Sheep.		Skins— Calf.		Timber.	
	Quantity.	Value.	Quantity.	Value.	Quantity.	Value.	Quantity.	Value.	Quantity.	Value.	Quantity.	Value.	Quantity.	Value.
	lbs.	£	lbs.	£	Tons.	£	Tons.	£	No.	£	Tons.	£	Tons.	£
1913-1914 ..	11,486	766	84	23	5	1,107	9	2,934	59,644	1,615	50	4,204	109	766
1914-1915 ..	5,260	414	4	1	—	—	10	1,838	22,178	506	37	2,710	67	585
1915-1916 ..	2,818	251	12	4	3	554	23	4,362	10,144	169	31	2,227	21	154
1916-1917 ..	4,806	422	44	15	1	40	32	5,856	9,380	126	6	345	77	567
1917-1918 ..	2,336	156	Not stated.		4	923	62	9,965	5,152	41	Not stated.		39	411
1918-1919 ..	3,265	261			6	620	113	12,893	2,128	15			152	1,939

CURRENCY.

The standard coin of the Protectorate is the silver rupee of British India. The subsidiary coins are :—

Silver—

50 cent piece.

25 " "

Nickel Bronze—

10 cent piece.

5 " "

1 " "

$\frac{1}{2}$ " "

The rupee of the late Imperial British East Africa Company, and the half rupee and the quarter rupee of British India, and of the late Imperial British East Africa Company, are also legal tender.

Sovereigns are legal tender at the rate of Rs. 15 for one sovereign.

There is a Government Currency Note Issue. The notes in circulation are of the following denominations :—

Rs. 1, 2, 5, Rs. 10, Rs. 20, Rs. 50, Rs. 100 and Rs. 500.

BANKING.

There is a Government Savings Bank at Entebbe controlled by the Treasurer, with branches at Kampala, Jinja and Fort Portal.

The National Bank of India, Limited, has three branches in the Protectorate, viz., Entebbe, Kampala and Jinja, and the Standard Bank of South Africa, Ltd., has two branches in the Protectorate, viz., at Kampala and Jinja.

CHAPTER XVIII.

REVENUE AND EXPENDITURE.

The Revenue and Expenditure for each year from the 1st April, 1893, the date on which the administration of the country was first taken over by the Imperial Government, are shown in the accompanying table.

Until the completion of the Uganda Railway, the financial position was difficult owing to the distance from the coast and consequent heavy cost of transport. Progress was further retarded by the mutiny of the Sudanese troops in 1897, which involved an expenditure of £250,000. Another serious misfortune was the outbreak of sleeping sickness in 1901, which carried off over 200,000 people and brought a large tract of fertile and productive country into the infected zone, now uninhabited. A gradual recovery in the general financial position has, however, been made, and an increasing revenue consequent upon development, combined with careful expenditure, have permitted of the grant-in-aid being gradually reduced, until, in 1915-16, this was finally dispensed with as the country became self-supporting.

The native poll tax is the chief source of revenue. This is payable by each adult male native over the age of 18, old and infirm persons being exempted. Up to the 31st March, 1919, this tax was fixed at Rs. 5 per annum for administered areas with certain exceptions, the unadministered areas being exempt. Owing to the prosperity of the natives in the more progressive parts of the Protectorate, and, in particular, to the money which has been brought into the country by the cotton industry, a substantial increase in the rate has been approved by the Secretary of State for the Colonies with effect from the 1st April, 1919, and the tax has been raised to Rs. 7.50 in the Buganda Province, the Busoga, Teso and Bukedi Districts of the Eastern Province, with the exception of the Bugishu County, and the Bunyoro District of the Northern Province. A poll tax of Rs. 5 per annum is now levied on natives of Bugishu County and the Lango District of the Eastern Province, and of the Ankole and Toro Districts of the Western Province, except in the backward county of Bwamba, whilst poll tax contributions of Rs. 3 per annum prevail in all other administered areas. The collection is carried out by the chiefs who keep registers of all tax-payers, the work being supervised by the District Officers, a system, which, up to date, has worked well and with the minimum of friction. The proposals for the increased rate were made after full consideration and reference to the Native

Governments concerned, which were satisfied that the people could afford the increased taxation.

A non-native poll tax has also been imposed with effect from the same date, and this, together with the increased native poll tax, should materially assist in providing the much-needed funds for the post-war development of the Protectorate.

Other main heads of revenue are customs, obtained from an *ad valorem* import duty of 10 per cent., collected on all goods by the joint Customs Department of the East Africa and Uganda Protectorates, with the exception of spirits, which pay a duty averaging 50 per cent., and arms and ammunition which are subject to special imposts; an export duty on ivory and certain other commodities; game licences, land rents, telegraphs, motor transport, municipal receipts and market dues.

With a view to the further development of the cotton industry by improving communications, etc., and also in order to prevent any dislocation of cultivation which might occur through a fall in the price which could be paid, it has been decided to introduce a tax of 4 cents a pound on all cotton of the 1918-19 crop exported from Uganda. This tax came into force for one year on the 1st January, 1919, and, as the result of the experiment, it has been decided to continue the imposition at the rate of 3 cents. per pound for three years with effect from the 1st January, 1920. The imposition was duly considered by the Empire Cotton Growing Committee before the Secretary of State's approval was given, and it has been definitely laid down that the proceeds are to be devoted to the development of the cotton industry and to no other purpose.

Road and wharfage dues on imports, an unpopular custom impost peculiar to Uganda, were abolished in 1917.

The expenditure of the Protectorate in its early years was, as already stated, abnormally high owing chiefly to the heavy cost of transport (amounting to £300 a ton), and to the operations connected with the suppression of the mutiny of the Soudanese troops. In later years the annual expenditure has been kept, as far as possible, within the "half and half principle" as laid down by the Lords of the Treasury, *i.e.*, the expenditure is increased each year by half of the amount of the estimated increase in the revenue for the year. It has been found, however, that the possibilities of the country would not warrant such a restriction entirely, and loans have recently been

granted to provide for special capital expenditure as under :—

- (a) Construction of Busoga railway £170,000
 On which the Protectorate is now paying interest at $3\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. and 1 per cent. for a sinking fund.
- (b) Construction of a railway from Kampala to Port Bell, and for improvements on communications in the Eastern Province £125,000
 On which the Protectorate is now paying interest at the rate of $3\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. and sinking fund at the rate of $1\frac{1}{2}$ per cent.
- (c) Construction of a railway from Kampala to Mityana; Capital Works, Busoga railway and marine; new steamer and buildings Lake Albert, and for road construction £329,000
 An advance of £5,160 only has up to the 31st March, 1917, been received on account of this loan, and it is not anticipated that any further advance will be made by the Imperial Treasury for some considerable time on account of the War.

By instructions of the Colonial Office, only the net revenue of the Busoga Railway after deducting the expenditure is shown in the Protectorate estimates. The annually recurrent expenditure and the gross revenue are not included in the Uganda Estimates but are included in the Estimates of the Uganda Railway of which the Busoga Railway is a branch line. The Uganda Protectorate Estimates have, however, to bear the full charge for interest and sinking fund on the loan for the construction and are responsible for its repayment.

The proportions of the expenditure of the various branches of the Administration for the year 1916-1917 were approximately as under :—

	Per cent.
Administration	20
Military	14
Medical	10
Police and prisons	9
Transport	8
Public works	8
Headquarters' administration	7
Agricultural, forestry, etc.	4
Land and survey	4
Charges on account of public debt	3
Post office and telegraphs	3
Municipal expenditure	3
Customs	2
Legal	2
Miscellaneous	2
Pensions and gratuities	1

STATEMENT SHOWING THE FINANCIAL PROGRESS OF THE PROTECTORATE.

Year.	Grant-in-Aid.	Revenue	Expenditure.	Remarks.
1893-1894	£ —	£ —	£ 43,589	The administration of the Protectorate was taken over by the Government from the Imperial British East Africa Company from 1st April, 1893. The expenditure for the first year was charged to the Special Missions Head of the Foreign Office Vote for Diplomatic and Consular Services. It included a sum of £5,005 paid to the Imperial British East Africa Company as a grant-in-aid of expenditure for three months to 31st March, 1893.
1894-1895	95,000	7,577	63,937	This was the first year for which a separate grant-in-aid was voted for the Protectorate. The expenditure included a sum of £4,450 on account of vessels for Lake Victoria.
1895-1896	49,000	6,248	61,387	The revenue in this and the previous year was chiefly obtained from the sale of ivory captured in expeditions. The expenditure in this year included £7,416 on account of the transport of vessels for Lake Victoria, and £9,184 on account of arms and ammunition for the troops. The construction of the Uganda Railway was commenced during this year.
1896-1897	49,000	11,182	67,377	The chief head of revenue this year was customs duties.
1897-1898	89,000	10,116	100,972	The increase in expenditure in this year was caused partly by the measures taken to deal with the mutiny of three companies of Soudanese troops.
1898-1899	339,000	13,541	491,901	The large increase in the expenditure was caused chiefly by the measures taken to deal with the mutiny. A regiment was brought over from India to assist, and the pay of the local troops was increased from Rs. 5 a month to Rs. 20½. There was also a sum of £18,002 charged in this year on account of a road constructed from Naivasha to Lake Victoria, and a sum of £7,066 on account of the construction of a telegraph line from Kikuyu to the Eldoma Ravine.

STATEMENT SHOWING THE FINANCIAL PROGRESS OF THE PROTECTORATE—*continued.*

Year.	Grant-in-Aid.	Revenue.	Expenditure.	Remarks.
1899-1900	£ 397,000	£ 47,629	£ 296,226	The expenditure in connection with the mutiny still continued and amounted to £63,031 in this year. The increase in revenue arose chiefly from the introduction of a hut-tax Rs. 3. The mutiny expenditure still continued and amounted to £31,946 in this year. Provision was made for the inauguration of survey department this year. A regular police force was inaugurated this year and permanent public works commenced.
1900-1901	204,400	81,833	251,597	
1901-1902	172,000	73,998	228,680	From 1st April, 1902, the territory between Lake Victoria and Kikuyu (about 350 miles from the coast), which had hitherto been included in the Uganda Protectorate, was transferred to the East Africa Protectorate. This territory includes the thickly populated district of Kavirondo, and a large amount of revenue from the hut-tax was therefore lost to the Uganda Protectorate. The expenditure during this year was largely augmented by a payment of £13,294 for the final transport and construction of the "William Mackinnon," and another payment of £16,910 for the extension of the telegraph line from the Eldoma Ravine to Uganda.
1902-1903	135,000	41,158	203,733	
1903-1904	130,000	51,474	186,800	Through bookings between the Protectorate and the coast by the Uganda Railway and its steamer connections commenced from 1st April, 1903. From this year the Protectorate has made steady financial progress except during 1908-1909, the Busoga famine year.
1904-1905	139,850	59,707	173,038	A considerable saving was made this year in the military expenditure by a reduction of the Indian contingent from four companies to two companies and other economies. The expenditure on public works was considerably increased.

STATEMENT SHOWING THE FINANCIAL PROGRESS OF THE PROTECTORATE—continued.

Year.	Grant-in-Aid.	Revenue.	Expenditure.	Remarks.
1905-1906	£ 103,000	£ 77,814	£ 191,142	The administration of the Protectorate was transferred from the Foreign Office to the Colonial Office from 1st April, 1905. The heavy expenditure with which the Protectorate has been burdened for so many years in connection with measures for the suppression of sleeping sickness commenced in this year.
1906-1907	112,000	96,772	191,502	Provision was made for a separate agricultural department to control the cotton and other industries. Experiments in motor traction were commenced.
1907-1908	85,000	113,883	195,528	
1908-1909	95,000	102,572	256,337	There was a severe famine in Busoga during this year. The revenue had a serious set-back in consequence, and a sum of £10,062 was expended in measures for the relief of the sufferers. A grant of £30,000, to be spread over three years, was sanctioned for the encouragement of the cotton industry, and provision was made for a veterinary department. A stern-wheel tug and two lighters were placed on Lake Kioga and a paddle-wheel steamer was added to the flotilla on Lake Albert.
1909-1910	103,262	165,145	240,140	A poll-tax was substituted for the hut-tax during this year. The tax was raised from Rs. 3 to Rs. 5 in the Busoga district and the Buganda Kingdom. The Protectorate received a contribution from the East Africa Protectorate for the first time on account of customs duty on Uganda Protectorate imports through Mombasa.
1910-1911	96,000	191,094	252,374	A loan of £160,000 (afterwards increased to £170,000) from Imperial funds was made to the Protectorate this year for the construction of the Busoga railway, and the construction work was commenced.
	Expenditure from loan of £170,000 for Busoga railway construction :		23,782	

STATEMENT SHOWING THE FINANCIAL PROGRESS OF THE PROTECTORATE—continued.

Year.	Grant-in-Aid.	Revenue.	Expenditure.	Remarks.
1911-1912	£65,000 Expenditure on account of loan of £170,000 for Busoga Railway construction :	£203,492	£283,689	Capital expenditure to the amount of £16,288 (part of a total grant of £34,519) was made this year on account of steamers and lighters for Lake Kioga, and £3,626 (part of a grant of £5,000) on motor vans to meet urgent transport requirements in connection with the extraordinary growth of the cotton and other industries. A serious outbreak of rinderpest occurred in this year, and a sum of £5,850 was spent on measures for suppressing it.
1912-1913	45,000	238,655	292,147	Capital expenditure to the amount of £14,416 from the special grant for steamers and lighters for Lake Kioga and £1,244 for motor vans was made this year. The Busoga railway was opened for traffic from 1st April, 1912. A loan of £125,000 from Imperial funds was made to the Protectorate this year for the construction of a railway from Kampala to Port Bell, and for improvements in communications in the Eastern Province. The expenditure from loan funds during the year was : Busoga railway construction, £21,789 ; improvements in communications in the Eastern Province, £3,944 ; Kampala-Port Bell railway construction, £335. This is not included in the amounts shown in the expenditure column.
1913-1914	35,000	256,559	290,180	Capital expenditure to the amount of £977 from special grant for steamers and lighters for Lake Kioga was made this year. Owing to an outbreak of plague special measures were found necessary to cope with it at a cost of £933. The expenditure on account of loan funds during the year was : Busoga railway construction £12,013, Kampala-Port Bell railway construction £14,954, and improvements in communications in the Eastern Province £25,726. Loan expenditure is not included in the amount shown in the expenditure column.

STATEMENT SHOWING THE FINANCIAL PROGRESS OF THE PROTECTORATE—continued.

Year.	Grant-in-Aid.	Revenue.	Expenditure.	Remarks.
1914-1915	£ 10,000	£ 282,831	£ 289,213	<p>The Imperial Loans Ordinance (1915) was enacted during the year sanctioning the raising of a loan of £329,000 for capital works, Busoga railway and marine, Kampala-Mityana railway construction, Lake Albert marine—new steamers and buildings—and road construction. The expenditure on account of loan funds during the year was :—Busoga railway construction £5,120, Kampala-Port Bell railway construction £14,901, improvements in communications in the Eastern Province £28,412, and under the Imperial Loans Ordinance (1915) £2,995. Loan expenditure is not included in the amount shown in the expenditure column.</p> <p>This is the first year in which a grant-in-aid was <i>dispensed</i> with and also in which the actual revenue exceeded the actual expenditure. The Kampala-Port Bell railway was opened for all classes of traffic on the 1st June, 1915. The expenditure on account of loan funds during the year was :—Busoga railway construction £3,138, Kampala-Port Bell railway construction £1,874, improvements in communications in the Eastern Province £13,371, and under the Imperial Loans Ordinance (1915) £876. Loan expenditure is not included in the amount shown in the expenditure column.</p>
1915-1916	Nil.	287,026	285,072	
1916-1917	Nil.	315,458	289,308	<p>This is the second year in which no grant-in-aid was required and also in which the actual revenue exceeded the actual expenditure. The expenditure on account of loan funds during the year was :—Busoga railway construction £1,779, Kampala-Port Bell railway construction £2, improvements in communications in the Eastern Province £5,961 and under the Imperial Loans Ordinance (1915) £523. The expenditure on account of loan funds during the year was :—Busoga railway construction £1,441, Kampala-Port Bell railway construction £134, improvements in communications in the Eastern Province £4,520, and under the Imperial Loans Ordinance (1915) £1,430.</p>
1917-1918	Nil.	326,366	285,389	<p>The expenditure on account of loan funds during the year was :—Busoga railway construction £1,895, improvements in communications in the Eastern Province £2,607, and under the Imperial Loans Ordinance £3,319.</p>
1918-1919	Nil.	351,835	323,692	

CHAPTER XIX.

LEGAL.

THE LAW OF THE PROTECTORATE.

The bulk of the legislation is effected by or under Orders-in-Council made by His Majesty under the Foreign Jurisdiction Act, but certain Imperial Acts, such as the Copyright Act, 1911, apply directly to the Protectorate by virtue of Orders-in-Council made under the Acts themselves.

From time to time Orders-in-Council under the Foreign Jurisdiction Act are made, dealing with special subjects ; such orders may apply generally to British Protectorates, or groups of Protectorates, or specially to Uganda.

In 1889 the Africa Order-in-Council, 1889, was passed which *inter alia* dealt with Uganda, and provided it with an executive and legislative authority and with Courts of Justice. Although this Order is now repealed some of its provisions and the laws made under it, including the application of certain Indian Acts, *e.g.*, the Indian Contract Act, were kept in force and still have effect in Uganda.

In 1902 the Uganda Order-in-Council, 1902, was enacted, and may be said to form the charter and constitution of the Uganda Protectorate. Its provisions are, however, subject in Buganda, Ankole and Toro to the agreements or treaties with the Native Chiefs in those portions of the Protectorate.

After defining the boundaries of the Protectorate the Order proceeds to constitute the administrative, legislative and judicial branches of the Government, and applies certain bodies of law and special enactments to Uganda.

By Article 12 the Commissioner, now the Governor, is the legislative authority, and the Ordinances enacted by him, with the proclamations, rules, orders and notices made thereunder, form the local laws of Uganda.

Article 15 (2), as amended by the Uganda Order-in-Council, 1911, provides in effect and subject to other legislation that the criminal law of the Protectorate shall be the Indian Penal Code, and that the civil law shall be that generally in force in England on the 11th day of August, 1902.

It also provides that the procedure of the Courts in administering the civil and criminal law respectively shall,

subject to other legislation, be that of the Civil and Criminal Procedure Codes of India.

This application of law is further qualified by the proviso that the English law shall be in force in the Protectorate so far only as the circumstances of the Protectorate and its inhabitants and the limits of His Majesty's jurisdiction permit, and subject to such qualifications as local circumstances render necessary.

As regards natives, Article 20 provides that in all cases, civil and criminal, to which natives are parties, every Court (*a*) shall be guided by native law so far as it is applicable and is not repugnant to justice and morality or inconsistent with any Order-in-Council or Ordinance, or any regulation or rule made under any Order-in-Council or Ordinance ; and (*b*) shall decide all such cases according to substantial justice without undue regard to technicalities of procedure and without undue delay.

Certain Orders-in-Council affecting Uganda and all the laws enacted under the Africa Order-in-Council, 1889, and the Uganda Order-in-Council, 1902, and still in force on the 31st December, 1909, will be found in the laws of the Uganda Protectorate, 1910, published by Messrs. Stevens and Sons, Ltd., Chancery Lane, London.

The laws enacted in 1910 to 1917 (inclusive) have been collected in annual volumes with indices and tables showing the effect of the legislation of the years on previous legislation ; these volumes may be obtained from the Government Press, Uganda.

THE JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT.

Prior to October 15th, 1902, Uganda formed part of a local jurisdiction within the meaning of the Africa Order-in-Council, 1889. Under this Order-in-Council, Courts presided over by holders of Consular Commissions and Judicial Warrants were established for the various districts into which the Protectorate was divided. These Courts had jurisdiction over all British subjects (including persons enjoying Her Majesty's protection) within their respective districts, and also, by virtue of the Africa Order-in-Council, 1892, over all foreigners being and resident within the Protectorate who were subjects of powers signatory to the General Act of the Berlin Conference, 1885, or of any other power which had consented that its subjects should be justiciable under the Africa Order-in-Council, 1889.

All holders of Consular Commissions and Judicial Warrants had equal jurisdiction in their respective districts.

There was no local supreme judicial authority, and appeals lay to the High Court of Bombay.

In 1896 the post of Chief Judicial Officer and Legal Adviser was created; the officer holding the post had no wider jurisdiction than the other judicial officers and no appellate jurisdiction was vested in him.

The system of Courts above-mentioned was found to present various features of difficulty; among other matters the appeal to Bombay was felt to be inconvenient.

In order to remedy this and other matters requiring amendment, in 1902 the Uganda Order-in-Council, and the Eastern African Protectorates (Court of Appeal) Order-in-Council, 1902, were passed.

The Uganda Order-in-Council, 1902, created a High Court of Uganda and conferred on this Court full jurisdiction, civil and criminal, over all persons and all matters in the Protectorate. The Order-in-Council also authorized the creation of Courts subordinate to the High Court and Courts of special jurisdiction.

As stated above under the first part of this chapter, all Orders-in-Council are subject in Buganda, Ankole and Toro to the native agreements with these countries.

In accordance with the powers given a system of Courts subordinate to the High Court was constituted by the Courts Ordinance, 1903, whereunder Sessions Courts and three classes of Magistrates and Civil Courts were established. The powers of these latter Courts varied according to their class, and the local limits of their jurisdiction were conterminous with the administrative districts to which the officers holding them were appointed. The appeal from the Courts so established lay to the High Court.

In 1905 an Ordinance was enacted under which "British Native Courts" were constituted in each district, which gave the Judges of these Courts, who were the administrative officers of provinces and districts, full civil and criminal jurisdiction over natives of the district in which such Courts were held. All sentences of death passed by such Courts required the confirmation of the High Court as well as that of the Governor.

The Ordinance contained provisions saving the authority of tribal chiefs, and providing for the Courts so established to supervise, and where necessary enforce, the orders of such tribal authorities.

In 1909 the Native Courts Ordinance, 1909, was enacted, which provided for the creation of Native Courts by the Governor, with jurisdiction between natives of the district in which they were situate. Under the Ordinance Native Courts in Busoga and Ankole were constituted. The

decisions of these Courts were subject to appeal to the British Native Court of the district, and to revision by that Court and the High Court.

In 1909 the Eastern African Protectorate (Court of Appeal) Order-in-Council, 1909, was passed, which, with the rules thereunder and Part II. (c) of the Courts Ordinance, 1911, forms the present law relating to appeals from the High Court.

Appeals from the Court of Appeal from Eastern Africa to the Privy Council are regulated by the Eastern African Protectorates (Appeal to Privy Council) Order-in-Council, 1909.

In 1911 a consolidating and amending Ordinance, the Courts Ordinance, 1911, was enacted, which is the law under which the Courts subordinate to the High Court are now constituted.

The Ordinance provides for the constitution of Sessions Courts to which the more important criminal cases in which non-natives of the Protectorate are accused may be committed, where such cases cannot conveniently be tried by the High Court.

It provides for the division of the Protectorate into judicial districts (which correspond in the main with the administrative districts), in each of which is established a District Court which has, in criminal matters, the jurisdiction (with certain exceptions) enjoyed by District Courts under the Indian Criminal Procedure Code, and, in civil matters, jurisdiction which at present extends to cases in which a sum of Rs. 1,500 may be involved.

The British Native Courts are abolished, and in lieu thereof the District Courts sitting with assessors are invested with a similar extended jurisdiction over natives.

In addition to the District Courts in each district there may be additional District Courts, the powers of which vary according to the class of Magistrate or Subordinate Judge presiding over them.

In Entebbe, Kampala, Jinja and Mbale the District Magistrates are specially appointed, and the posts are filled by barristers; elsewhere the District Commissioner is the District Magistrate, and the other administrative officers are Additional District Magistrates.

The Ordinance also embodies the provisions (with modifications) of the Native Courts Ordinance, 1905, and provides for the establishment of Courts presided over by natives with jurisdiction over natives of a district or group of districts, which are supervised, as a rule, by the District Court, to which Court an appeal lies, and which, with the

High Court, has powers of revision over the Native Courts. These Courts are not empowered to try cases punishable with death or transportation for life.

Such Native Courts have been established in Bukedi, Teso, Lango, Bunyoro, Gulu, Chua, Ankole, Toro and Kigezi.

In Mbale, Special Native Courts have been constituted under the Courts (Amendment) Ordinance, 1913, with limited jurisdiction over natives of the Protectorate.

In Buganda, by virtue of the Uganda Agreement (Judicial), 1905, the Native Courts have full civil and criminal jurisdiction over natives of Buganda. They are subject to supervision of the Additional District Courts, and an appeal lies in more important cases to the High Court. Certain classes of cases among Baganda have been transferred from the Buganda Courts for hearing to the British Courts under the power given in that behalf in the Uganda Agreement (Judicial), 1905.

The Courts Ordinance, 1911, governs the procedure to be followed by the Courts which are subject to the Ordinance, and effects certain modifications in the application of the Civil and Criminal Procedure Codes.

ADVOCATES OF THE HIGH COURT.

The admission of legal practitioners to practise before the High Court and the Courts subordinate thereto, other than Native Courts, is governed by the Rules of Court, No. 1 of 1911, the Legal Practitioners Rules, 1911, as modified by the Legal Practitioners Rules, 1913.

COURT FEES.

See the Court Fees Rules, 1908 (the Laws of the Uganda Protectorate, page 8). These Rules are added to and modified by—

No. 1 of 1912, the Mbale Native Courts Rules, 1912.

No. 3 of 1912, the Court Fees Rules, 1912.

No. 4 of 1912, the Attachment and Sale Rules, 1912.

No. 5 of 1912, the Payment of Fees and Deposits Rules, 1912.

For fees in the Court of Appeal for Eastern Africa, see Rules, 13th January, 1910, Rule 37 (Laws of the Uganda Protectorate, page 940).

ATTORNEY-GENERAL'S DEPARTMENT.

The duties of the Attorney-General were carried out until 1906, in so far as they related to non-contentious business, at first by the Chief Judicial Officer and Legal Adviser, and afterwards by the Judges of the High Court, and in so far as they related to contentious business by a private firm of solicitors in Mombasa.

In 1906 a Crown Advocate was appointed, and the title was changed to Attorney-General in 1912.

ADMINISTRATION OF ESTATES OF DECEASED PERSONS.

The Administrator-General, which office is held by the Town Magistrate, Entebbe, is responsible for the administration of estates of deceased persons where there is no will and where no other administrator is appointed by the High Court. The subject is governed by the Uganda Succession Ordinance, 1906, which is not at present applied to natives of the Protectorate. The fees charged on probate and administration are to be found under Court Fees.

REGISTRATION OF DOCUMENTS.

Any document may be registered in order to provide for certified copies in case of loss, and certain documents relating to land must be registered under the Registration of Documents Ordinance, 1904. The Protectorate is divided into districts for this purpose, with a Principal Registry at Entebbe; the District Magistrate, Entebbe, is at present the Principal Registrar of Documents.

REGISTRATION OF PATENTS, DESIGNS AND TRADE MARKS.

This matter is governed by the Patents, Designs and Trade Marks Ordinance, 1912. The Registry is at Entebbe, at present in the office of the District Magistrate.

COMPANIES.

The Uganda Companies Ordinance, 1905, applies certain Indian Acts which form the law in this connection. The District Magistrate, Entebbe, has been appointed Registrar of Companies.

BANKRUPTCY.

The substance of the English Bankruptcy Laws is applied to the Protectorate by the Bankruptcy and Lunacy Ordinance, 1906. The District Magistrate, Kampala, is the Official Receiver in Bankruptcy.

CHAPTER XX.

THE GREAT WAR IN UGANDA,
1914-1918.

THE FIRST STAGE, 1914-15.

The outbreak of war in 1914 found the Protectorate singularly unprepared as arrangements were in hand at the time for a large punitive expedition against the Turkana, a predatory tribe ranging from the Abyssinian frontier to the south of Lake Rudolf. For this purpose two companies of the 4th Battalion, The King's African Rifles, the sole regular military force in the Protectorate, had been sent to East Africa, two were concentrated in the Rudolf Province, one was en route therefor, leaving two companies only for garrison duty and general defensive requirements.

Lieut.-Colonel Ward, Officer Commanding 4th Battalion, King's African Rifles, who as the senior military officer then available, was appointed temporarily to command the troops in both Protectorates under the Defence Scheme, decided to withdraw the two garrison companies for the defence of the Uganda Railway. At the same time the two companies in East Africa were taken for the defence of that Protectorate, and, as the companies in Rudolf and the company en route to reinforce them were withdrawn later, Uganda was left to do the best it could with such material as was available within its borders.

The situation during the first three months of the war may be described as somewhat critical. The southern frontier of some 180 miles marches with the northern frontier of German East Africa. The Uganda northern frontier, which marches with the Sudan, was in a state of unrest, while the Turkana in the north-eastern part of the Protectorate were openly hostile. To meet the troubles in the north and north-east the co-operation of the Sudan Government was requested and, thanks to the Sirdar's prompt assistance, the evacuated Uganda military posts in the Northern and Rudolf Provinces were garrisoned in a very short time by Sudan troops, whose arrival kept in check the Dodinga, Dodosi, and other predatory tribes, and also gave the necessary time for organisation of an

expedition against the Turkana, which was subsequently arranged by the two Protectorates in co-operation with the Sudan Government. This relieved the Uganda Government of the immediate necessity for providing for the safety of its northern territories and permitted of all resources being concentrated for the defence of the southern frontier, where large bodies of German troops were reported, and where, also, along the section south of the Kigezi District, there was considerable native unrest.

The intimation of the outbreak of war arrived early on the morning of the 5th August, and the various officers who had received prior warning, took immediate action in respect to their duties under the Defence Scheme. The kings of Buganda, Toro, Ankole and Bunyoro and the leading chiefs were taken into confidence and their cordial co-operation and loyalty have since shown this was well-bestowed. The more important chiefs in the Eastern Province were similarly acquainted. Proclamations placing the Volunteer Reserve, Police and Military on a war footing were published; a Supplies Board was appointed; whilst Captain E. H. T. Lawrence, the Acting Commissioner of Police, assumed responsibility for defence measures. Martial Law was declared subsequently.

Owing to the withdrawal of the 4th (Uganda) King's African Rifles, the only defence forces which could be counted on were the Uganda Volunteer Reserve, consisting of Europeans and Indians, the Civil Police, which were in scattered out-stations, and the King's African Rifles' Reserve, consisting of veterans long since retired and distributed about the Protectorate. Armed police were promptly concentrated at Masaka, Mbarara and Kampala to form the nucleus for a defence force at each place, and to support these a force of Baganda spearmen was raised by the chiefs, 3,000 being mobilized with some 15,000 in reserve. Practically every European in the Protectorate put himself in training in the Uganda Volunteer Reserve, as also did a number of British Indians. Patrols of civil police supported by the native levies took up their positions along the southern frontier, whilst the old reservists of the King's African Rifles were formed into two companies for defence at Entebbe.

In the meantime the Germans had massed considerable bodies of troops with levies on the southern border and had established and fortified three posts close to Lake Victoria. These troops remained ready for invasion until late in August when the main body was withdrawn. Whether their offensive was deferred owing to the mobilization of the Uganda native levies, reports regarding which must have

reached them, is not known, but whatever the cause, no offensive action was undertaken by the enemy at this stage. Had any such movement taken place the situation would have been extremely grave for the few police and mobs of still undisciplined spearmen could have done little against a properly armed force equipped with machine guns. Fortunately this hesitation or delay gave the breathing time required, and Captain Lawrence, who, at this difficult juncture, showed great energy and decision and made the fullest use of the meagre resources at his command, was able to report substantial progress. The command was subsequently taken over by an officer of the 4th Battalion, King's African Rifles. The police on the southern frontier were placed on a military footing as the Uganda Police Service Battalion, and the Uganda armed levies were similarly organised as the Baganda Rifles. Even these dispositions proved insufficient to provide for the defence of the long stretch of territory, extending from Lake Victoria to Lake Edward, and General Tighe, who had in the meantime taken over command of military operations in both Protectorates, responded to an appeal for further assistance in November by returning a company of the 4th Battalion, King's African Rifles, with a battalion of the 13th Rajputs and a section of a mountain battery. The southern frontier command was transferred subsequently to various senior officers terminating with the appointment of Colonel Adye in December, 1915. In November, 1914, the first of a series of outpost actions commenced by an attack on the British posts on the Kagera River and continued with varying success on both sides until the Anglo-Belgian advance in 1916 compelled the enemy to fall back on their whole front.

The position on the southern border of the Kigezi District became extremely grave shortly after the outbreak of hostilities owing to the rise of the Batusi, a truculent tribe resident partly in German East Africa and partly in Uganda, at the instigation of their paramount chief, the Sultan of Ruanda, who was under German control and influence. As no forces could be detached to support the Assistant District Commissioner in charge, orders were given for the evacuation of the district, with the result that for a long time the friendly natives were subjected to looting and predatory raids on the part of their disloyal neighbours. The timely assistance rendered by the Belgian Congo Government, however, enabled the re-establishment of our authority, and the Batusi, having lost faith in the assurances of German assistance, have since settled down after the arrest and deportation of their

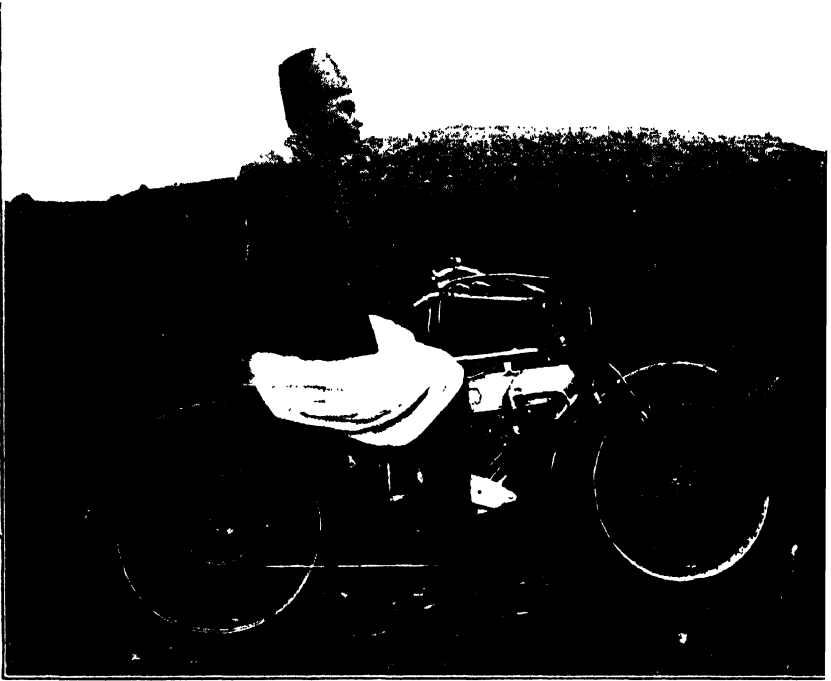


Photo by Lea Wilson.

THE SEKIBOBO AND HIS MOTOR BICYCLE

recalcitrant leaders. Mr. Sullivan, the District Officer, throughout this troublous time showed great resource and coolness, and it is largely due to his personal influence that a serious native rising was averted.

The organization of the Uganda Police Service Battalion and the Baganda Rifles has already been referred to. The composition of these forces will be set forth in detail later. The necessary auxiliary services—Medical, Transport, Intelligence, Pioneer, Telegraph and Veterinary—were also organized and details of their work and composition will be found in subsequent sections.

The attitude of the native population throughout this period was most loyal and thoroughly justified the confidence placed in their leaders. The success with which they seconded the efforts of the European community and met the heavy demands made upon them, more especially for carriers and supplies, is described in the following pages.

The enthusiasm displayed by the European population is also deserving of record. Practically every able-bodied man in the Protectorate enrolled in the Uganda Volunteer Reserve, which supplied despatch riders, scouts, intelligence and transport officers as required, besides fulfilling guard and routine duties. The part played by the Uganda Volunteer Reserve is described later.

THE SECOND STAGE, 1916.

The first stage, dealt with above, may be regarded as the period from the outbreak of war to the commencement of the Anglo-Belgian operations, which cleared the Uganda southern frontier of the enemy. The second stage deals with subsequent operations to the taking of Mwanza when the enemy retired from Lake Victoria.

Up to January, 1916, the position along the southern frontier may be described as strictly defensive as the regular troops with the Uganda irregular forces were barely sufficient to do more than protect the frontier. This position was manifestly unsatisfactory as it locked up the British regular troops and kept the Protectorate in a state of unrest, hence it was considered advisable to confer with the Belgian Commander-in-Chief and endeavour to arrange for an offensive movement which would clear the German forces from the area between Lake Victoria on the east and Lakes Edward and Kivu on the west. A conference was arranged at Lutobo, on the 6th February, 1916, between General Tombeur, Commandant of the Belgian forces, the Governor of Uganda, and the officer then commanding the Lake Detachment, when it was decided that, subject to

the approval of the British Commander-in-Chief, General Tombeur would undertake an immediate advance into Ruanda through British territory, provided the Uganda Government would supply the necessary carriers and a convoy of ox wagons, and that the British posts in Kigezi, then occupied by the Belgian forces, should be taken over by the British. 5,000 carriers were asked for and promised with 100 ox wagons and equipment. These arrangements were finally approved by the British Commander-in-Chief, and on the 14th March, 1916, the preliminary arrangements which had been put in hand were confirmed and preparations begun for the advance. By the end of April the Congo Carrier Section of the East Africa Transport Corps, a force of 5,000 men, with 1,250 reserves to allow for wastage, officered by officials and residents of the Protectorate, was raised, equipped and ready to start. Ox transport sections were also organised between Bukakata and Mbarara and Mbarara and Lutobo; at the same time the telegraph line was extended from Kabale to the Belgian Congo Headquarters at Rutshuru, medical depôts and clearing stations were established and the Belgian forces started from Kamwezi on the 25th April.

The Uganda force moved forward simultaneously from the Kagera River and the combined operations expelled the German forces from the Lake Victoria area and culminated in the occupation of Mwanza by the British troops under Sir Charles Crewe, K.C.M.G.; C.B., on the 24th July, and of Tabora by the Belgian columns on the 20th September. The headquarters of the Lake Force was transferred from Entebbe to Mwanza in October, and the succeeding months saw the disbandment of the Uganda Police Service Battalion, the Baganda Rifles, and the Uganda Transport Corps, which had served continuously since August, 1914.

THE THIRD STAGE, 1917-18.

Consequent upon the clearing of the Uganda southern frontier the part taken by the Protectorate was confined to the provision of European and native personnel for the German East Africa operations. Carriers were supplied for the East Africa Transport Corps, the Native Stretcher-Bearer Contingent was enlarged and re-organised as the Uganda unit of the African Native Medical Corps, men were selected and trained for the East Africa Native Motor Transport Corps, and recruits obtained for the King's African Rifles, the Uganda share of which had been increased to 6,970 men.

MILITARY NATIVE FOOD SUPPLIES.

The chief difficulty in the employment of Uganda natives is the proper supply of food to which they are accustomed. Grain-eating natives are to be found only in the Teso, Lango and Bukedi Districts of the Eastern Province and in the outlying parts of the Northern Province. The staple food of the very large majority of the native population consists of bananas and sweet potatoes with a variety of beans, grain of any kind forming only a very small portion of their diet.

In dealing with large bodies of men it was found almost impossible to provide the diet to which they were used and flour made from maize and millet had to be substituted with a small ration of meat from time to time. So long as the men were officered by Europeans acquainted with their language and customs, who saw that bananas and sweet potatoes were bought wherever possible, the mortality from intestinal disease during the local operations was comparatively small. When, as occasionally happened, strict military rations of flour alone were provided, the percentage of sickness and mortality increased in spite of every care being taken. Fortunately, the local chiefs on the southern frontier were able to supply considerable quantities of green food which in most cases they gave free, otherwise the death rate would have been much greater.

Owing to their food peculiarities Uganda natives, unless carefully dieted and accustomed to rice or flour for a considerable period beforehand, cannot be successfully employed away from their own country. The men are willing enough, but experience has shown that when so taken a terrible mortality has resulted from intestinal diseases. Once they become accustomed to strange foods they render excellent service, but the proportion which can be so used is very small.

CARRIER AND TRANSPORT CORPS.

Orders for native mobilization, the preliminary arrangements for which had been already put in hand, were issued on the 5th August, 1914, and the following day the Provincial Commissioner, Kampala, was able to report that 8,500 men were standing by in Buganda, whilst 15,000 more could be called up at six days' notice.

It was decided that Buganda and the Western Province should supply the men for local operations, those from the

Uganda
Transport
Corps.
1914-16.

Northern and Eastern Provinces being reserved for calls from East Africa. These arrangements were modified later as porters had to be requisitioned for the southern frontier from all parts of the Protectorate.

By the 7th August, 1,000 native levies, armed with spears and supplied with food for immediate use, had been concentrated at Masaka, Mubendi and Kampala, respectively. The Buganda Native Government responded splendidly to the call and the organization was carried out by the chiefs under the supervision of the District Officers concerned. Progress was similarly reported from the other Provinces.

Arrangements were put in hand by the Commissioner of Police for training a number of picked men from the levies, who were later divided into armed levies—subsequently the Baganda Rifles—and military carriers, 6,000 being organized for transport under European officers with responsible native headmen. The majority of the men employed for the first four months were supplied by the Buganda Government, reliefs being provided from time to time. The final constitution of the force was subsequently arranged as follows :—

Buganda	3,000	} 6,000
Western Province	..	2,000	
Northern Province	..	500	
Eastern Province	..	500	

In addition to maintaining military carrier contingents, the Buganda and Western Provinces supplied many thousands of job porters for the Belgian Congo Transport, whilst the Eastern and Northern Provinces were also called upon to provide men for the East Africa operations. Food supplies and reliefs also employed many more.

In March, 1915, it became evident that further re-organization was called for, and Mr. E. L. Scott, Assistant District Commissioner, who was serving temporarily in East Africa with the Carrier Corps there, was recalled for the purpose.

The Uganda Transport Corps, Carrier Section, was finally organized in April, 1915, under a Commandant with a proper European and clerical establishment, and native personnel of 4,500, the men being divided into first and second line carriers and dépôt staff. As the work was very arduous and food conditions unsatisfactory, three-monthly reliefs were arranged as far as possible, with exception of the first line porters who received extra pay and were found medically fit for extra service.

The total number registered as carriers for military employment, exclusive of job porters, was 38,310. Of these 1,267 died, chiefly from dysentery and pneumonia, whilst 434 were reported missing.

The Corps was disbanded on the 31st December, 1916, when the officers and men received the thanks of the General Officer Commanding.

Requisitions for natives as carriers to be employed with the expeditionary force in East Africa was received in August, 1914, and the first instalment of 1,000 men, with native headmen, was despatched on the 16th August under Captain E. B. Place, District Commissioner, with Mr. E. L. Scott, Assistant District Commissioner, as second in command. The number was subsequently increased to 3,576 by request of the military authorities, subsequent detachments being sent down in charge of Government officials and members of the European community.

**The East
Africa
Transport
Corps.**

The men were, with the East Africa carriers, chiefly employed in the coast area, and during the Gaza-Umba operations received the thanks of the General Officer Commanding the forces who placed on record that their work was beyond praise.

Subsequently, owing to the difficulty of obtaining foodstuffs to which they had been accustomed and the consequent outbreaks of dysentery and other intestinal diseases, the Uganda natives were withdrawn from East Africa with the consent of the Military authorities, and replaced by local natives more accustomed to the climate and conditions.

Only 2,050 returned out of 3,576 sent down, the remainder having died or been invalided. The Banyoro, who supplied 1,450 out of the whole, were the greatest sufferers, as only 600 remained for muster on return in March, 1915.

As previously stated, it was decided to form a special Transport Corps for service with the Belgian forces on their advance through Ruanda into German East Africa, and the Buganda Native Government was again called upon for the native personnel, whilst European officers were supplied from the Government Staff and local residents. A further increase of the native establishment was supplied from Ankole.

**The Congo
Carrier
Corps,
1914-15.**

Preliminary arrangements were put in hand in January, 1916, and on receipt of confirmation by the General Officer Commanding in March the organization and equipment of the contingent was completed.

The corps served with the Belgian troops from April to October, 1916, during the operations from Kigali to Tabora, and was disbanded in December, 1916.

The total number of natives employed was 8,429, of whom 789 died and 402 were reported missing.

The officers and men received the thanks of the Belgian Commander-in-Chief.

Seventeen native headmen were also awarded the Belgian Order of the Lion, III. Class, for services rendered.

German
East Africa,
1917

In consequence of pressing requirements for carriers in connection with subsequent military operations in German East Africa, it was decided to recruit grain-eating porters from the Eastern Province, and arrangements were put in hand in March, 1917. 41,706 were called up for this service, but, owing to the medical standard, it was found possible to pass only 5,763 for service.

CARRIER SUMMARY, 1914-17.

The Uganda Transport Corps (Carrier Section)	Carriers	38,310
	Stretcher-bearers ..	844
	Medical details ..	149
	Headmen, etc. ..	161
	Ox Transport (Belgian)	152
	Ox Transport (U.T.C.)	149
	Maxim Gun Porters ..	114
	Syces	49
	Veterinary details ..	38
	Telegraphs	38
	Supply	25
	Pioneers	22
		<hr/>
		40,051
The East Africa Carrier Corps.—Porters		3,576
The Congo Carrier Corps.—Porters		8,429
Belgian Military Telegraph Construction.—Porters		500
Uganda Pioneers.—Porters		500
		<hr/>
		53,056
Job Porters for food supplies and transport of Belgian Congo munitions, not organized (approx.)		120,000
Carriers supplied for operations in German East Africa.. ..		5,763
		<hr/>
		178,819

In addition to the above, five battalions of the 4th King's African Rifles were raised and trained in the Protectorate. To provide for the full complement and make allowance for wastage over 10,000 men were required.

The Baganda
Rifles.

During the early stages of the war, detachments of armed levies under Mr. E. T. Bruce, District Agricultural Officer, performed valuable scouting and out-post work on the southern frontier, the men being led by their own chiefs

specially selected for the purpose. As soon as circumstances allowed the men were trained and, in 1915, were organized as a military unit—the Baganda Rifles—a proper establishment being laid down with a complement of 555 of all ranks. In 1916, as the value of the corps increased as a fighting unit, a senior military officer was appointed to take command and the Baganda Rifles took active part in the British and Belgian advance to Tabora.

The officers and men received the thanks of the General Officer Commanding the district and the corps, which had been raised for local defence only, was disbanded in November, 1916.

The Uganda Police units which were sent down to the southern frontier on the outbreak of war rendered valuable service, for it was the mobilization and prompt despatch of this force at a time when no other defence was available which provided the margin of safety and enabled the line to be held until fuller defensive arrangements could be made.

**The Uganda
Police Service
Battalion.**

The force subsequently became the Uganda Police Service Battalion with a complement of 516 of all ranks.

The battalion served throughout the operations to the withdrawal of the enemy from the southern frontier. It was demobilized in January, 1917, when the men returned to their civil duties.

An Intelligence Department, under a military officer, consisting of administrative and other officers with picked native intelligence agents and cyclist messengers, was appointed and an establishment laid down. Both officers and men were chosen for their knowledge of local conditions and rendered excellent service until December, 1917, when the department was closed down.

**Intelligence
Department.**

Prior to the war, the Uganda Volunteer Reserve consisted of 129 enrolled European members who were required to be familiar with the use of a rifle and to pass an annual efficiency test in musketry.

**The Uganda
Volunteer
Reserve.**

On the 11th August, 1914, an Ordinance was enacted making provision for calling out the members of the Reserve for active service within the Protectorate and for the appointment of officers. On the 13th, the Uganda Volunteer Reserve was called out for military service and made subject to the military law. Practically all able-bodied Europeans enrolled and were formed into three companies. An Indian company was also formed. Active training followed.

In December, 1914, the strength was as follows :—

EUROPEANS.

10 Officers.

185 Non-Commissioned Officers and Men.

INDIANS.

3 Officers.

75 Non-Commissioned Officers and Men.

The Uganda Volunteer Reserve, as constituted, formed a body of trained men accustomed to the country and in whom the natives had confidence, who could be called upon at any time, and were ready to support the very thin line of police and native levies by which the frontier was held. In fact, with the police and levies, it formed the only defence as, during the earlier months of the war, all the companies of the 4th Battalion, King's African Rifles, were withdrawn for service in East Africa. Most of the members were expert shots.

As a unit, the Uganda Volunteer Reserve took no active part in the local operations, but, at a later period, when the irregular forces in Uganda became merged in the East Africa Military Command, many of the members, both officials and non-officials, were drafted to local units operating on the frontier ; and that a greater number did not take part was due to the fact that a large proportion of the members consisted of Government officials who could not be spared from their duties. The Government staff was, however, reduced to a minimum in order to allow of as many as possible being released for military service, and business firms retained only a skeleton of their former staffs.

The period for which the members were called out was terminated on the 24th August, 1916, when the officers and men received the thanks of the General Officer Commanding for their services.

**Uganda
Medical
Service.**

The Uganda Medical Service, military unit, was formed at the outbreak of war to support the local forces, there being no military medical organization for this purpose. It was evolved from the Protectorate civil medical establishment, from which its personnel was mainly derived, with the addition of two native corps locally raised and trained by U.M.S. Officers.

Its mobilization commenced immediately on the outbreak of war, and the Principal Medical Officer's office at Entebbe, with its civil staff and the headquarter medical store, became at once the administrative base, while the civil hospitals at Entebbe and Kampala with their staffs became the base hospitals for Uganda.

At the same time steps were taken for the formation and training of a company of native stretcher-bearers, for

the establishment of a military hospital at **Masaka**, the original point of concentration, and for the evacuation of casualties from there, through a clearing station at **Bukakata**, to **Kampala** and **Entebbe**.

Almost immediately the use of the Church Missionary Society's Hospital at **Kampala**, with its staff, was offered by the Mission. This, the largest hospital in **Uganda**, was taken over and formed the principal Base Hospital during the war, and alone treated 18,472 day cases in 1914-1915 and 44,015 in 1916.

A reorganization of the civil medical service was undertaken in order to release staff as quickly as possible to meet military requirements. In order to effect this the personnel at out-stations was reduced to skeleton proportions, all members of the staff being required to perform both civil and military duties.

The Stretcher Bearer Company, which included what trained native staff could be spared from civil duties, was, after a few weeks instruction at **Bombo** and **Entebbe**, sent to the front, where it eventually developed, under special training by the officers in the field, into the **Uganda Native Medical Corps**, which furnished hospital dressers, sanitation orderlies and ambulance personnel to the **Uganda Medical Service**.

What little medical mobilization equipment existed was absent, at the outbreak of war, with the **Jubaland** expedition. With the assistance of the Public Works Department substitutes were made and issued from the medical store to the front.

A Field Ambulance of three sections was formed and equipped and later two additional bearer sub-sections.

The hospital at **Masaka** was soon advanced to **Simba**, with a clearing hospital at **Sango Bay**, and evacuation from there by lake to **Kampala** and **Entebbe**.

The hospital at **Simba**, with the ambulance, supported numerous medical aid-posts along the **Kagera** in the eastern section of the line, while hospitals at **Mbarara** and **Kabale** similarly supported the central and western sections.

In the middle of 1915 a fresh corps of stretcher bearers, the **Uganda Bearer Corps**, was raised and trained, and before the end of that year the establishment numbered over 1,000.

From January, 1915, ambulance support was given by the **Uganda Medical Service** to the **Belgian** troops defending the western section of the southern front, and two sections of ambulance, with four medical officers, accompanied the **Belgian** forces in their advance to **Tabora**.

Immediately before and during the general advance from the Kagera front the Uganda Medical Service, to which a half section of motor ambulance had been attached, supported nearly 5,000 troops with more than 12,000 followers.

For the advance to Tabora the hospitals at Simba, 150 beds, and Mbarara, 400 beds, were advanced to Mwanza, where a hospital for 30 Europeans and 1,000 natives was established. A hospital of about 200 beds was also established at Shinyanga, half-way to Tabora, and various medical aid-posts were maintained along the route followed.

Soon after the conclusion of local hostilities in the Mwanza-Tabora area in December, 1916, the attached ambulance and details were released. The Uganda Field Ambulance, except one section, was demobilised, and Uganda Native Medical Corps and Uganda Bearer Corps, except for the personnel required for the section of ambulance retained, were disbanded in accordance with their agreement for service. At the same time as many of the Uganda Native Medical Corps as were willing were re-engaged and recruits were enlisted for further service in the eastern area of hostilities.

During the war twenty-one medical officers and one European assistant of the Protectorate Medical Department served in the Uganda Medical Service, in addition to eleven locally engaged or temporarily attached, five of the former having been obtained from the Church Missionary Society.

In March, 1917, arrangements were made to raise an African Native Medical Corps, and the co-operation of the Missions was invited in order to obtain educated natives of a higher standard than those required for ordinary military purposes.

The appeal received a wonderful response as practically all the high schools sent their boys over 16, and the establishment which had been laid down was completed in record time, due largely to the influence of Hon. Lieut. Sir Apolo Kagwa, K.C.M.G., the Prime Minister of Buganda, who rendered great assistance.

Major Keane, D.S.O., R.A.M.C., who raised the original Stretcher Bearer Corps, was appointed Commandant, and Prince Joseph Musange Walugembi, the Kabaka's brother, applied for and was given a commission as Jemadar.

Strength 1,000 with European personnel.

The 4th (Uganda) King's African Rifles on the outbreak of war consisted of one battalion of seven companies. The regiment has since been increased to five battalions for war purposes, all the men being raised and trained in Uganda.

**African
Native
Medical
Corps.**

**The 4th King's
African
Rifles.**

CHAPTER XXI.

MISSIONS.

The history of European intercourse with Uganda dates **History.** from quite recent times, and has from the first been inextricably bound up with the history of Christian Missions, more particularly that of the Church Missionary Society.

In 1843, Krapf, the earliest Missionary of the Church Missionary Society on the east coast of Africa, heard rumours of the existence of a great inland lake in the country of Unyamwezi.

This rumour was confirmed, and twelve years later, in 1855, two other German missionaries of the Society, Rebmann and Erhardt, sent home from Mombasa a remarkable map, known as the "Slug" map, showing a vast inland sea, stretching from the Equator to the 13th degree S. latitude.

The publication of this map, in 1856, by the Royal Geographical Society, was the first incentive to the discovery first of the Victoria Nyanza, by Speke, in 1858, and then of Uganda, by the same traveller, in 1861. His statement, when reporting his own great discovery of the source of the Nile, was as strictly true as it was generous : "The missionaries are the prime and first promoters of this discovery." (Nile Source, p. 364).

If missionaries were thus concerned in the discovery of Uganda they were far more closely concerned in its first occupation. In response to an appeal from Sir Henry M. Stanley, a party of eight missionaries, under the leadership of Lieut. Shergold Smith, R.N., left for Uganda in 1876, and in June, 1877, the first two Europeans to settle in Uganda, Lieut. S. Smith and the Rev. C. T. Wilson, arrived at Rubaga, the court of the then king of Uganda, Mutesa. Two years later, in 1879, the first Roman Catholic missionaries arrived ; thirteen years later, in 1890, the Imperial British East Africa Company concluded its Treaty with Uganda ; and in 1894, seventeen years after the arrival of the first missionaries in Uganda, the British Government proclaimed a Protectorate.

During these early years, in which the Missions stood alone in Uganda, a change to which it would be difficult to find any exact parallel in any other country within so short a time passed over the people.

In 1878, Mr. Wilson was alone in Uganda, his two companions, Smith and O'Neill, having been murdered at the south end of the lake.

At the close of that year he was joined by the great Scottish missionary, Alexander Mackay, and the first industrial mission work was begun.

In 1882, the first five converts of the mission were baptised, and the Native Anglican Church, destined to grow in a short time to very large proportions, came into being.

In 1884, the Rev. James Hannington was consecrated as the first Anglican Bishop of Uganda. The same year Mutesa died and his son, Mwanga, succeeded.

The following year, 1885, at the instigation of the new king, a fierce persecution broke out against the "Readers," as the adherents of the missions were called, in the course of which at least 60 Roman Catholics and Protestants were killed. Bishop Hannington on his way to Uganda was murdered in Busoga, and the missionaries were expelled from the country.

The second Bishop consecrated for Uganda, Bishop Parker, died at Usambiro, in 1888, before reaching his diocese.

The same year Uganda passed through two momentous revolutions. In August the combined Christians and Mohammedans rose against Mwanga, who fled from the capital; Kiwewa, the eldest son of Mutesa, being placed on the throne. In October the Mohammedan party, dissatisfied with their share of chieftainships, rose against the Christians, who in turn fled to Ankole, and for a time, Islam was dominant.

Its reign, however, was short lived. Kiwewa was deposed after two months' reign, and another son of Mutesa, Kalema, placed on the throne. But his reign, too, was cut short, and in October, 1889, Mwanga was once more restored under the ægis of the Christian parties. From that time the influence of Christianity has been dominant, all the more important chieftainships in Buganda being divided between the Roman Catholic and Anglican adherents.

In 1890 Bishop Tucker, the third Bishop of Uganda, and the first actually to reach his diocese, was consecrated, and by him more than any other was laid the foundations of the present ecclesiastical system known as the Native Anglican Church of Uganda.

In the next year, 1891, was held the first confirmation, and the first six Baganda clergy were ordained. During the same year missionary work first began to extend beyond the limits of Buganda proper and work was opened up in Busoga.

In 1892, the unfortunate tension between the Roman Catholic and Protestant parties broke out in open civil war, partly religious, partly purely political. The storm which burst in January had subsided by March. Definite spheres were allotted to the adherents of the two missions and order was again restored.

The arrival of the I.B.E.A., in 1890, promised a stability to the country which it had not before possessed ; but its position was for some time precarious. After concluding a Treaty with the king and chiefs in 1890, it was seriously proposed, in September, 1891, to withdraw from the country, owing to financial difficulties. A sum of £16,000, however, raised by friends of the Church Missionary Society at a few days' notice, was largely instrumental in saving the situation, enabling as it did the Company to hold on for another year during which strong pressure was brought to bear on the home Government, with the result that it was decided to declare a British Protectorate.

In 1893 Sir Gerald Portal, as Special Commissioner, was sent out to report on the situation, and on his advice a Protectorate was declared in August, 1894. Under a firm administration civil wars, in which pagans and Mohammedans, Protestants and Roman Catholics had in succession held the political power ceased, and missionary work in the true sense has been free to develop along its proper lines without fear and without favour.

But, in the years preceding the British occupation, the missions had undoubtedly done signal service to the country. To them, indirectly, Uganda owed its discovery. To them it owed its first European occupation, the first industrial work, carpentering, brick making, printing, also the cultivation of coffee and other products. By them the language was first reduced to writing, and almost all available literature in Luganda is the result of missionary labours. To them, too, is due the earliest organised medical work. The entire work of education has been, and still is, in the hands of the missions. Through their influence slavery was abolished by the Protestant chiefs on the advice of Bishop Tucker in 1893. Many barbarous and superstitious practices have also been abandoned, and the social life of the nation has been appreciably raised. Of the spiritual results it is not the place here to speak, but that the moral atmosphere has changed within the past

forty years, and that this change has been in no small measure due to the influence of Christian missions, no one who studies the facts of the situation will deny.

Uganda is fast moving into the position of a nominally Christian country. Statistics are not available for the other provinces outside the kingdom of Buganda but included within the Uganda diocese. The following figures, however, for the kingdom of Buganda, indicate the growth of Christianity in recent years :—

		Anglican.	Roman Catholic.	Mohammedan.	Pagan.	Total.
1911	..	140,144	181,141	58,401	325,929	705,615
1915	..	186,672	187,592	55,262	252,267	681,793
1916	..	200,308	186,298	51,783	238,544	676,933

It will be observed that in spite of a steadily decreasing population the number of professed adherents of the different missions is increasing in this province and now exceeds the combined pagans and Mohammedans.

A similar movement is in progress from the Congo border to Kavirondo, and from Nimule, on the borders of the Soudan, to German territory south of Ankole. The baptized members of the Native Anglican Church now number close on 100,000 and include, besides the kings of Buganda, Bunyoro, Toro, and Ankole, the four Katikiros or native prime ministers and a large number of the most influential chiefs of the country. It is impossible to estimate with any accuracy the number of "Readers," or adherents, throughout the diocese.

THE CHURCH MISSIONARY SOCIETY.

THE NATIVE ANGLICAN CHURCH.

Organization. The organization of the Native Anglican Church is, broadly, as follows :—

The diocese is divided into four Archdeaconaries, Uganda, Busoga, Bukedi and Kavirondo, the latter being in the East Africa Protectorate.

These are sub-divided into twelve Rural deaneries, each with a senior missionary in charge.

These in turn are again divided into Pastorates, each with a native clergyman in charge.

The Pastorates are divided into sub-districts (Muluka) under the charge of senior catechists each responsible for some six or eight small village churches, under local teachers.

In each sub-district there is a Native Church Council, which manages the church affairs of that sub-district.

In each Pastorate there is a District Church Council under the Chairmanship of the native clergyman, and on this each sub-district in the Pastorate is represented.

Similarly, in each Rural deanery there is a Ruridecanal Church Council, representative of the combined pastorates of the deanery.

The whole Church is finally represented in the Synod, which meets once at least in every two years, and which, as representative of every part of the diocese, and including all the European missionaries, native clergy, and many of the great chiefs of Buganda and the surrounding provinces, is an important and influential body, numbering some 400 members.

The Executive of the Synod, known as the Diocesan Council, meets fortnightly and conducts all Church business of the diocese. Each rural deanery elects two representatives to sit with the Bishop and Archdeacons and other ex-officio members on the council.

Under this council there are a number of Advisory Boards for education, theology, finance, estates, etc., each responsible for its own department, and all reporting to the Diocesan Council.

The educational system follows in the main the **Education.** ecclesiastical organization.

As far as possible an elementary village school is established in each village where there is a Christian Church.

At the central Church of each sub-district is a Junior Day School. At the central Church of each pastorate is a Senior Day School.

In some central position within each rural deanery is a Central Day School, where the boys pay 12 rupees a year for tuition.

In each language area (of which there are eight at present occupied) is a High School, which is a boarding school primarily designed for sons of chiefs. The fees in these schools vary according to the country.

For the diocese as a whole there is a Secondary School, known as the King's School, Budo, where boys go for a final course of three years, admission being by examination.

The girls' schools follow as closely as possible the same system, but pay only half fees, and are in a more elementary stage.

The total number of boys in the Native Anglican Church Schools in 1918 was 24,348 ; of girls, 15,473 ; giving a total of 39,821 in all schools.

The Church is financially self-supporting in that it builds its own churches and (with a few exceptions) its own

schools, and pays its clergy and teachers. The total receipts under all heads in the year ending March, 1917, amounted to Rs. 70,306, the total expenditure to Rs. 67,897.

Staff.

The staff of the Native Anglican Church consists partly of European missionaries of the Church Missionary Society, partly and mainly of the native clergy and teachers. The following summary shows those at present on the roll :—

European Clergy	36	
Doctors	6	
Other Laymen	5	
Lady Missionaries	30	
Nurses	7	
	—	84
Native Priests	41	
Deacons	17	
	—	58
Lay Readers	72	
Senior Teachers	187	
Junior Teachers	410	
Senior Schoolmasters	35	
Women Teachers	214	
	—	918
Local Teachers and Junior Schoolmasters ..	2,750	
	—	2,750
Total ..		3,810

This staff is responsible for the conduct of regular services in 1,579 buildings, varying in size from St. Paul's Cathedral at Namirembe, Kampala, to the little mud and wattle building under the charge of a local teacher ; for the educational work in 410 organized schools ; and for the pastoral supervision of 95,947 baptized converts, of whom 26,747 are communicants.

The total number baptized in the year ending September, 1916, was 5,183 adults and 2,209 infants.

There are 21 stations of the Church Missionary Society in Uganda and 28 Native Pastorates in charge of native clergy.

The work extends over the whole of the Protectorate south of Kitgum, and into the Nyanza Province in British East Africa where there is a large and rapidly growing work among the Kavirondo. There is also a small work in Mboga, across the Belgian frontier, and in Kigezi.

Medical.

The medical work centres in Namirembe Hospital, with 208 beds, a European staff of three doctors, four nurses, and a dispenser, and a native staff of 25 male and six female assistants. In the year ending December 31st, 1916, a total of 4,395 in-patients were treated at this hospital, which includes European, Indian, and native wards.

In Toro there is a smaller hospital with 100 beds, a staff of one doctor, two nurses, and native assistants.

Branch dispensaries also exist in connection with many of the European mission stations. In all, 84,820 visits of out-patients were recorded in 1916. The figures for the succeeding years are not yet available.

A small class of selected boys from the schools is in training in connection with the hospital as medical students.

The third cathedral was destroyed by fire in 1910, and the fourth, a magnificent domed structure of brick with vast stone pillars, has just been completed and was consecrated on the 13th September, 1919, by the Bishop of the Diocese assisted by the Bishop of Mombasa. It contains a Memorial Chapel to James Hannington, the original and "martyr" Anglican Bishop of Uganda. Towards this £10,000 was given in England, in response to an appeal from Bishop Tucker, and a total of Rs. 172,625 (£11,500) has already been subscribed by the Native Anglican Church. Cathedral.

A Cathedral Chapter has been formed, with the Bishop as Dean and the Archdeacon of Uganda as Sub-dean of the cathedral. The four Archdeacons and four of the clergy are Honorary Canons of the cathedral. The Chapter.

The Society has an extensive list of educational and other publications in the vernacular, the more important being as follows :—

- LUGANDA.—Handbook of Luganda.
 English-Luganda and Luganda-English Vocabulary.
 Luganda Phrase Book.
 Medical Vocabulary.
 A Guide to Luganda Prose Composition.
 Ekitabo Ekitukuvu (Holy Bible).
 Endagano Empya, Engiri (New Testament Gospels).
- LUNYORO.—Lunyoro Grammar.
 Ebyomu Kirangano Ekyaira (Old Testament History).
 Ekitababu Ekirukwera (Holy Bible).
- GANG.—Marako Matar (St. Mark's Gospel).
 Outline Grammar of Gang Language.
- LUGISHU.—Bikulomba (Elementary Prayer Book).
 Tsinyiri Tsini ni Bikolewa bya Barume (New Testament translations).
- TESO.—Lukolosek (First Reader).
 Teso Prayer and Hymn Book.

A small monthly paper the "Ebifa mu Buganda" ("Buganda News") is also published.

THE WHITE FATHERS.

The White Fathers Mission, otherwise the Society of the Missionaries of Africa, was founded in 1868 by

Archbishop C. M. Lavigerie, of Algiers. The headquarters and residence of the Superior-General is near Maison-Carrée, in Algiers.

It is an institution of secular priests who live in common and are united by a vow to consecrate themselves to mission work in Africa in accordance with the constitution of the Society. In addition to the priests there are the Lay-Brothers for instruction in agricultural and technical work. Subjects of all nationalities are accepted as members without distinction.

**Constitution
and
Organization.**

The Society is attached to the Congregation of the Propaganda of Rome by whose decree, dated the 15th February, 1908, the constitution was definitely approved in perpetuity after an experience of 40 years.

It possesses colleges for literary, scientific and philosophic studies; a novitiate where postulants study their vocation and a scholasticate for theological studies which last for four years. The Society provides for the maintenance of its members, who serve without remuneration.

The chief power is the Chapter which meets every six years and is composed of members by right and by selection. The former are those exercising the more important functions in the Society, whilst the others are chosen by the missionary priests. The principal function of the Chapter is to provide for the ordinary government of the Society by the nomination of the Superior-General and the four assistants comprising the Council. The general government is vested in the Superior-General in Council.

**Spheres of
Work.
Medical
Work.**

The operations of the Society extend throughout the African Continent but are more particularly centred in Tunis, Algeria, the French Sudan and Equatorial Africa. Work in Uganda was commenced in 1879. Dispensaries are attached to all the more important stations where attendance is given gratis, and for this purpose all priests go through a practical medical course during their novitiate.

Schools.

Elementary schools are also attached to all branches of the mission where much useful work is done, whilst the high school and college at Villa Maria, Buddu, and the high school at Rubaga (Kampala) provide for higher education.

There is a normal school for the training of male teachers at Bikira, Buddu, and a similar school for native sisters at Villa Maria.

At Kisubi there is an industrial school where useful crafts are well taught. All boys at this school serve a thorough apprenticeship of four years.

In 1918 there were 10,492 boys and 7,611 girls attending primary schools, a decrease on previous years due to famine and epidemic diseases; 130 pupils were under tuition at St. Mary's High School at Rubaga, and 53 were undergoing technical instruction at Kisubi.

The White Sisters also form part of the Society and **White Sisters.** have under their supervision the Association of the Native Sisters at Villa Maria, where girls undergo a novitiate of two years. They also have charge of the girls' schools and women's dispensaries.

A community of Sisters of the Society of Marie **Sisters of Marie Réparatrice.** Réparatrice was established at Entebbe in 1913, which, in addition to keeping schools for Goanese and natives, has a dispensary where female ailments receive special attention.

The Gospels, the Acts of the Apostles and several books **Publications.** of the Bible have been translated and published in the vernacular, also a dictionary and various school books.

A small monthly paper "Munno" is also published.

THE MILL HILL MISSION.

The Upper Nile Vicariate was established in 1894. The Right Rev. Bishop Henry Hanlon, the first Vicar Apostolic, arrived in Uganda in 1895.

The Vicariate is served by Fathers of St. Joseph's **Organization.** Missionary Society, a congregation of secular priests, founded in 1866 by the late Cardinal Vaughan, with headquarters at St. Joseph's College, Mill Hill, London. The Sisters are of the Franciscan Order from St. Mary's Abbey, Mill Hill.

The convents at Nsambya, Nagalama and Kamuli have well-equipped hospitals attached where the more serious **Medical Work.** cases are undertaken. There are native dispensaries at all mission stations.

A High School is established at Nsambya, the head- **Education.** quarters, which does excellent work. There are also normal and central and elementary schools at all the more important stations where upwards of 13,000 boys and 5,000 girls receive tuition.

The mission has 16 stations in Uganda and eight in **Spheres of work.** the East Africa Protectorate.

CHAPTER XXII.

UGANDA VOLUNTEER RESERVE.

The Uganda Volunteer Reserve was established in 1903, when provision was made by Ordinance for the formation of rifle corps at approved centres, corps to consist of not less than fifteen members, each member being a British subject, over sixteen years of age and residing in Uganda. On being attested, members agree to appear for military service in Uganda when called upon. Europeans, other than British subjects and Indian residents, are allowed to join but they undertake to serve in Uganda for defence against natives of Africa only.

Members of a rifle corps are authorised to make rules for the election of members and the management generally of the affairs of the corps.

The Provincial Commissioner of the district in which the headquarters of any rifle corps is established is *ex-officio* president of the corps and a secretary is elected annually. The property of the corps is vested in the secretary who is the representative officer in all matters of correspondence with the Government and is empowered to maintain order and discipline among members of the corps when assembled.

The membership consists of registered members who must reside within the limits of the area prescribed for the corps and honorary members who may belong to different corps.

An annual capitation grant of Rs. 15 is made by the Government for each registered member who qualifies as efficient during the year.

Registered members are provided with a rifle and 100 rounds of ammunition which must be constantly in their possession. For practice purposes 200 rounds of ammunition are supplied annually free of cost and an additional 300 rounds may be purchased at cost price.

Each corps must hold an annual meeting for rifle practice at which registered members must attend and fire not less than twenty-one rounds.

The first corps was formed at Entebbe on the 28th April, 1903, and was known as "The Uganda Rifle Corps," the membership including practically all the Europeans of

British nationality in the Protectorate. As the European population grew at various centres the Kampala Rifle Corps was formed on the 25th June, 1914, and a corps was formed at Jinja on the 14th October of that year.

The rifle corps at Entebbe has constructed a well-equipped rifle range with four double targets at the butts and firing points each hundred yards from 100 yards to 1,000 yards. The general shooting rules are those of the National Rifle Association at Bisley and the test for efficiency is seven shots at 200, 500 and 600 yards with a score of not less than 50 points out of a highest possible score of 105. A score of 80 points or over qualifies as a "first-class shot," and carries the privilege of being grouped in that class for firing practice.

At the annual meeting the championship of the corps for the year is decided and a handsome silver cup presented to the winner.

The Kampala and Jinja Corps practise on the police ranges.

The Entebbe Corps possesses three Challenge Cups for competition amongst its members under various conditions known as :—

"The Coles Cup," presented in 1905 by Colonel A. H. Coles, C.M.G., D.S.O., then Officer Commanding the Troops, Uganda.

"The Governor's Cup," presented in 1909 by Sir H. Hesketh Bell, K.C.M.G., then Governor and Commander-in-Chief of the Uganda Protectorate.

"The Allen Cup," presented in 1913 by Raymond C. Allen, Esq., C.M.G., Land Officer and Director of Surveys, Uganda.

An important event on the Entebbe range is the Annual Inter-Protectorate Team Competition, for a Challenge Cup, presented in 1906 by Brigadier-General Sir W. H. Manning, K.C.M.G., C.B., the Inspector-General of the Forces of the African Protectorates, open to teams of eight in Uganda, British East Africa, Nyasaland and Somaliland. The Uganda Volunteer Reserve has won this cup in 1908, 1910, 1912, 1913 and 1914.

When war was declared the Uganda Volunteer Reserve became part of the armed forces of the Protectorate under military law and their record during the period of local hostilities is contained in Chapter XX.

CHAPTER XXIII.

COMMUNICATIONS.

External.

There are two ordinary routes by which Uganda may be reached from Europe :—(a) By sea, via the Suez Canal or Cape to Mombasa and thence by the Uganda Railway to Kisumu and Uganda Railway Marine Steamer Service to Entebbe, and (b) through Egypt and the Sudan, via the Nile.

Route (a) is generally used and can be made in comparative comfort from Mombasa to Kisumu on Lake Victoria, 584 miles. From Kisumu, the headquarters of the Uganda Railway Marine, steamers run to the principal lake ports, both direct to Entebbe and other Uganda ports, and also round the lake.

The through mail train leaves Mombasa on Friday at noon and arrives at Kisumu the following Sunday morning in time to connect with the steamer which sails at 10 a.m. for Entebbe, arriving there on Monday, 175 miles.

The Nile Route.

Route (b) is not in general use but provides an interesting alternative. The Sudan Government steamers sail from Khartoum for Rejaf, where navigation stops, twice monthly, the voyage occupying 12 days. From Rejaf carriers can be arranged to Nimule, 98 miles, taking from 9 to 10 days according to the daily distance travelled. The Sudan Government provides rest camps along the route where wood and water can be obtained together with, occasionally, a certain amount of produce. Huts for servants and porters are also available. The camps are in charge of caretakers and are well-kept. A limited amount of stores can be obtained at Rejaf or Nimule, but it is advisable to arrange supplies for the journey at Khartoum or, if the outward route is selected, at Jinja. For drinking purposes a chagul (canvas water bag) should be carried.

The following itinerary gives the Government camps with approximate marching time :—

1.	Rejaf to Shoka	..	..	..	3½ hours.
2.	Shoka to Leju	..	..	..	4½ "
3.	Leju to Gadein Morbi	..	..	..	4½ "
4.	Gadein Morbi to Tombi Musa	..	..	..	2½ "
5.	Tombi Musa to Uma	..	..	..	4½ "
6.	Uma to Muku	..	..	..	3½ "
7.	Muku to Murjau	..	..	..	2½ "
8.	Murjau to Tombi Boru	..	..	..	2 "
9.	Tombi Boru to Opari	..	..	..	2½ "
10.	Opari to Mondi	..	..	..	3½ "
11.	Mondi to Ajua	..	..	..	1½ "
12.	Ajua to Assua	..	..	..	2 "
13.	Assua to Nimule	..	..	..	3½ "

The Sudan Government make a charge of P.T. 70 or Rs. 10.50 for the use of these camps.

If tents are taken camping places can be arranged as desired as there is passable water every two hours. The heat is intense, however, and mosquitoes are bad throughout ; hence it is inadvisable to take more than ten days.

Porters for the journey can be arranged with the Inspector at Rejaf or the Mamur at Nimule and are charged for at the following rates :—

Headman, P.T. 3 per diem and food.

Porters, P.T. 2 per diem and food.

The recognised ration is 1½ lbs. flour daily. Half the above rates and food must be paid for the porters' return journey.

To avoid any possibility of delay food should be ordered in advance through the officers concerned at the time the requisition for porters is forwarded.

The Lake Albert marine steamer "Samuel Baker," sails from Nimule for Butiaba on Lake Albert every fortnight, arriving the following day.

There is no accommodation at Butiaba and arrangements for overland transport from there to Masindi and thence to Masindi Port connecting with the Kioga marine transport service for Namasagali (Railhead, Busoga Railway) should be made in advance from Rejaf, either through the Uganda Government Transport Officer at Masindi, the Agent of the British East Africa Corporation, or one of the transport firms concerned.

Catering on the Sudan Government steamers is usually by arrangement with the steamer officers, with whom it is advisable to make provision beforehand. Passengers on the Albert marine steamer can join the officers' mess at a charge of Rs. 6 per diem.

Railways.

The Busoga Railway connects the waterways of Lake Victoria with those of the Victoria Nile, including Lakes Kioga and Kwanja.

Busoga Railway.

It is 61 miles long from Jinja (Ripon Falls) to Namasagali, where the Nile broadens out into Lake Kioga, with its extension, Kwanja, and was opened for traffic in 1912. Connection beyond Namasagali is made by steamers of the Busoga Railway Marine. Both the railway and marine are under the direct administration of the General Manager, Uganda Railway.

Kampala Railway.

The Kampala Railway is a short line of seven miles, which connects Kampala with Port Bell, or Luzira, on Lake Victoria, and was opened for traffic in 1915. It is the first section of the projected line which has been surveyed to Tonia, the south-eastern arm of Lake Albert, via Mitiana and Mubendi, the construction of part of which has been authorized, but has been delayed in consequence of the war. It is also administered by the Uganda Railway.

Waterways.

Lakes Victoria, Kioga and Albert are navigable over the greater part of their area.

Lake Victoria.

Lake Victoria is served by steamers of the Uganda Railway Marine. There is a direct weekly mail service from Kisumu, the marine headquarters, to Entebbe, Port Bell and Jinja, with intermediate services to these and other Uganda ports and to the ports in the East Africa Protectorate and German conquered territory. There is also a number of dhows engaged in local coasting trade.

Lake Kioga.

Lake Kioga, with its extension, Lake Kwanja, is served by steamers of the Busoga Railway Marine. There is a direct weekly service between Namasagali (railhead) and Masindi Port, with intermediate services to the many small ports on Kioga and Kwanja, but these are liable to interruption owing to the masses of sudd which break loose from time to time.

The Victoria Nile.

The Victoria Nile, between Jinja and Namasagali, is unnavigable in consequence of rapids. Beyond the junction of the Kafu River, however, where the river narrows again into its ordinary channel, the Nile is navigable to Foweira (Atura Port), which is served by a fortnightly steamer service—62 miles. Fifty miles of rapids, rocks and gorges, culminating in the Murchison Falls, render its course unnavigable from Foweira to Fajao. From Fajao it again becomes navigable for the remaining 16 miles of its journey to the Albert Lake.

Lake Albert.

Lake Albert is served by the Albert Marine Transport Service. There are weekly steamer sailings for Kasenji and Mahagi on the Belgian Congo side, with a fortnightly service to Nimule in connection with the Sudan Government



Photo by Lobo, Entebbe.

A CUTTING ON BUSOGA RAILWAY.

steamers. The Nile proper—a continuation of the Victoria Nile—is navigable from Lake Albert to Nimule, 125 miles. From Nimule to Fort Berkeley its course is intersected by rapids, and from Nimule to Rejaf the journey has to be made by porters. The Albert Marine Service is a department of the Uganda Government and is not administered by the Uganda Railway.

The general system of internal communications may be roughly divided into (1) those forming direct routes to the Belgian Congo, and (2) administrative roads for the connection and development of trade areas.

Roads and Routes.

(1). There are two well-defined routes in actual use to the Belgian Congo, viz. :—

The Congo Routes.

(a) From Jinja by the Busoga Railway to Namasagali, Busoga Marine to Masindi Port, motor van to Masindi, and motor van, hamali cart and carriers to Butiaba; thence by the Albert Marine to Kasenji, the port for the Kilo Mines, or to Mahagi, the administrative centre. There is also part of the direct route to the Sudan.

(b) From Kampala, by motor service via Mitiana and Mubendi to Butiti, wagon road to Fort Portal and well-defined carrier track to the Semliki River, the international boundary. From the boundary there is a wagon road to Irumu via Ngiti which connects by road to Kilo.

Route (a) is chiefly used for the transport of heavy loads. Transshipment and breakage of bulk for road transport from Masindi Port to Butiaba, however, necessitates the employment of agents at Masindi Port and beyond, as the Uganda Railway will not book goods further west than Masindi Port. There are, moreover, possible delays to be faced through the breaking loose of huge masses of papyrus on Lake Kioga, which frequently block the steamer channels and hold up transport until the passages can be cleared.

Route (b) is more in general use as carrier loads are made up at Kampala and sent on by motor van, hamali cart or carriers to Butiti (184 miles), where the metalled road suitable for heavy transport ends for the time being, thence by hamali carts or carriers to Fort Portal (25 miles), and thence by carriers to the Semliki River (30 miles). The Belgian Congo Government close their road between the Semliki and Irumu from time to time for administrative reasons, but in spite of this many thousands of loads pass over this route every year for the Kilo gold mines and other trade centres of the Eastern Belgian Congo.

There is a third route which, with small extensions, would form a direct road to that part of the Belgian Congo

between Lakes Edward and Kivu and, in fact, is now in use for that purpose :—

(c) From Bukakata on Lake Victoria by metalled road to Masaka, wagon road from Masaka to Mbarara and thence to Kabale in the Kigezi District. From Kabale there is a well-defined carrier track to Rutshuru in the Belgian Congo and from thence to Ngoma and Kisenyi on Lake Kivu. A short connecting road from Lutobo, south to Ruanda, is all that is required to develop Northern Ruanda and adjacent territory, the high cattle country of Central Africa, from which there is an enormous potential trade in hides.

Roads.

(2). There is a network of administrative roads throughout the Protectorate which link up the administrative and trade centres. These vary from hard metalled roads, constructed to carry heavy motor transport, to ordinary cleared and formed earth tracks, and may be classed as follows :—

CLASS 1.—Motor roads, metalled throughout for heavy transport, constructed and maintained by the Public Works Department as a charge against Protectorate funds.

CLASS 2.—Gravelled roads for lighter transport, constructed and maintained as above.

CLASS 3.—Earth roads for light transport in dry weather; culverts and bridges constructed and kept in repair by the Public Works Department; labour and general maintenance being provided by the Provincial Native Governments and councils concerned.

CLASS 4.—District earth roads for light transport in dry weather, constructed and maintained by the Provincial Native Governments and councils concerned under the supervision of the District Commissioner.

There are upwards of 600 miles of main roads suitable for heavy traffic, classes 1 and 2. There are also over 2,000 miles of earth roads throughout the Protectorate, classes 3 and 4.

Main Roads.

The Main Roads may be divided into three sections :—

(a) Those connecting with the steamer service on Lake Victoria, viz. :—

Kampala to Entebbe Pier	..	..	..	25 miles.
Kampala—Fort Portal, open for—	..	..	..	184 "
Kampala to Kalule	..	..	..	28 "
Kampala to Jinja	..	..	..	54 "
Port Bell to the Kampala—Jinja Road	..	..	..	3 "
Bukakata to Masaka	..	..	..	23 "
Jinja to Iganga, and beyond	..	..	..	44 "
Mjanji (Sio River) to Mbale	..	..	..	62 "

(b) Those connecting with the Busoga Railway, viz. :—

Mbulamuti to Kamuli	..	..	..	..	8 miles.
Luzinga to Kaliro	..	..	..	..	26 ..

(c) Those connecting with the steamer services on Lakes Kioga, Kwania and Albert, viz. :—

Masindi Port to Butiaba (under construction for the last 3 miles)	..	..	..	..	76 miles.
Agu to Lake Salisbury, via Kumi	..	..	..	..	25 ..
Bugondo to Serere	..	..	..	..	14 ..
Lale to Soroti	..	..	..	..	11 ..
Sangai to Kalaki	..	..	..	..	8 ..
Kelle to Kabiramaido	..	..	..	..	8½ ..
Kachung to Lira (under construction)	..	..	..	..	26 ..
Palisa to Gogonia	..	..	..	..	13 ..

Mechanical transport was first introduced into the Protectorate in 1908 and has been developed in so far as financial conditions would allow, thereby effecting a considerable saving in human portorage. The Government Transport Department now has a section of ten motor vans and other vehicles, with headquarters at Kampala where a large garage has been erected. Additional lorries are on order in England

**Mechanical
Transport.**

There is a motor service for passengers and goods between Kampala and Entebbe, and a bi-weekly service between Kampala and mile 184 on the Toro Road, which is much patronised by travellers to the Congo. There is also a weekly service between Masindi Port and Masindi, beyond which the van is run by arrangement to the escarpment near Bukumi pending completion of the metalled road. In addition, intermediate services are run between Kampala and Bombo. Privately-owned vans and cars can also be arranged with several of the transport firms at Kampala and Jinja. There are government repairing shops at Kampala and Masindi.

For other road connections, *vide* District Itineraries.

Post offices and postal agencies are to be found at practically all district stations and trade centres throughout the Protectorate. Telegraph as well as postal business is dealt with at the following places :—

**Posts and
Telegraphs.**

Bombo, Bugondo, Entebbe, Fort Portal, Hoima, Iganga, Jinja, Kabale, Kamuli, Kampala, Luzira (Port Bell), Masaka, Masindi, Mbale (Elgon), Mubendi, Namasagali and Soroti.

Telegrams for Butiaba are sent on from Masindi by telephone.

There is a weekly mail service between Uganda and East Africa, with occasional intermediate services.

Mails for the Belgian Congo are despatched via Masindi, with an intermediate service via Fort Portal for Irumu.

Overseas mails are irregular, depending on the steamship companies, but there is a special fortnightly letter mail service for Europe via the Sudan and Egypt.

Overseas cables can be despatched from any post office, via Mombasa.

Telephones.

There are telephone exchanges for the use of the public at Kampala and Entebbe. Telephone conversations are also allowed between telegraph offices and Government Stations, most of which are connected up.

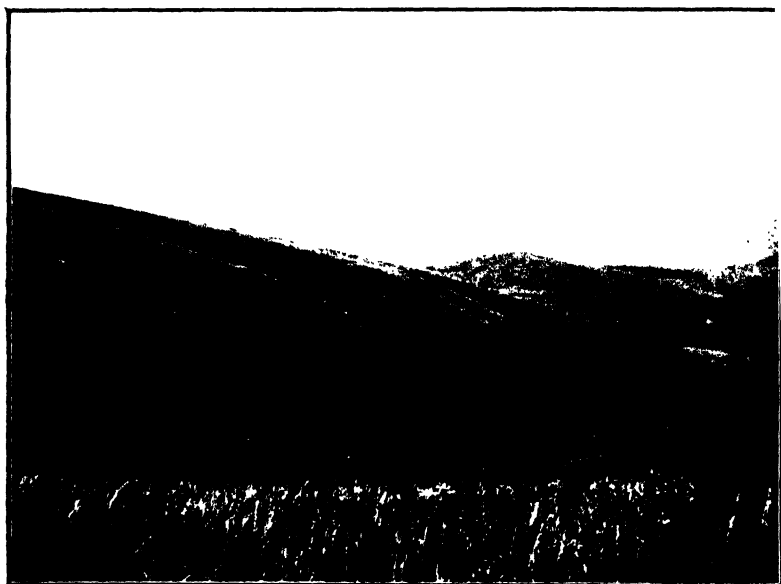


Photo by E. J. Wayland.

PART OF A FLUTED ARGILLITE DOME, ANKOLE.

CHAPTER XXIV.

METEOROLOGY.

It was in the year 1901 that special interest was aroused to secure an extensive knowledge of the meteorological conditions of Uganda, previous to which observations were taken at very few places; and these were mostly "Rainfall," which, in some cases, were rendered incomplete through lack of records during the mutiny.

Efforts were made by the Scientific Department from time to time to avail of every opportunity to open new recording stations, and in 1908 and 1909 it was considered advisable, in the interests of the cotton industry, to augment the number of Rainfall Recording Stations with a view to secure representative data of the Protectorate.

The importance of establishing stations for recording temperature also received attention, and instruments were supplied, when available, to such out-stations where it was deemed advisable to obtain such data.

Fifty-two recording stations have now been established, and, as most of these are connected by telegraph with the central station, Entebbe, it is possible to obtain information *re* meteorological conditions at out-stations at once when required. This achievement is important, especially in the case of Indian and Egyptian Governments which request rainfall data to be telegraphed to them from time to time.

The following statistics relate to the central recording station, Entebbe :—

The average rainfall for 19 years is 58·64 inches.

The mean daily sunshine for 15 years is 5 hours, 36 minutes.

The average temperature for 15 years is 78·5 maximum, and 62·8 minimum. See also under "Medical."

The following tables show :—Nos. 1 to 4, monthly computations of Entebbe for 1918. No. 5, average values of meteorological elements at Entebbe for 10 to 22 years. No. 6, average maximum and minimum temperatures for 5 years of seven stations. No. 7, comparative rainfall of the Protectorate for 1916. No. 8, latitudes, longitudes, and heights of the meteorological stations in the Uganda Protectorate.

TABLE No. 1.

ENTEBBE METEOROLOGICAL STATEMENT FOR THE YEAR 1918.

Lat. $0^{\circ} 4' 31''$ N. Long. $32^{\circ} 28' 30''$ E. Height of Barometer above M.S.L. 3,842 feet.

MONTH.	At 7 A.M.				At 2 P.M.				At 9 P.M.				Rainfall.	Sunshine	Maximum Temperature.	Minimum Temperature.	No. of days Rain fell.
	Barometer corrected to 32° F.	Attached Thermometer.	Dry Bulb.	Wet Bulb.	Barometer corrected to 32° F.	Attached Thermometer.	Dry Bulb.	Wet Bulb.	Barometer corrected to 32° F.	Attached Thermometer.	Dry Bulb.	Wet Bulb.					
1918.	In.	°	°	°	In.	°	°	°	In.	°	°	°	In.	h.mts.	°	°	10
January	26.183	70.1	68.5	64.1	26.149	79.0	77.7	72.9	26.167	70.6	69.0	64.9	2.07	5-44	80.3	64.5	10
February	26.192	71.0	68.9	65.8	26.162	79.6	78.1	71.7	26.159	72.2	70.5	67.3	1.07	6-33	81.6	62.6	7
March	26.217	71.9	70.2	67.1	26.177	81.7	79.5	73.5	26.176	73.9	72.4	68.3	5-29	5-29	82.1	66.5	15
April	26.182	68.9	67.1	65.0	26.145	80.4	76.0	72.3	26.148	69.3	68.1	65.6	3-04	3-04	78.6	62.9	23
May	26.207	73.7	68.1	65.6	26.176	80.6	76.1	68.4	26.182	69.5	69.6	65.9	9.05	9-05	78.1	63.0	11
June	26.226	71.6	67.4	64.5	26.203	77.9	73.7	67.0	26.201	69.6	67.3	64.5	5-41	5-41	75.8	62.0	18
July	26.243	69.4	66.9	63.7	26.224	79.0	74.8	67.9	26.232	68.8	68.7	65.1	1.89	7-47	76.4	61.6	7
August	26.255	69.3	65.3	64.0	26.232	79.0	75.1	71.4	26.229	67.9	68.2	66.7	1.75	6-03	77.3	61.5	10
September	26.230	69.3	65.1	63.1	26.189	81.3	77.1	69.3	26.184	69.6	69.7	65.8	3-21	5-31	80.3	62.0	9
October	26.199	71.7	66.3	64.1	26.169	82.1	77.4	70.7	26.182	72.1	71.3	65.9	6-09	3-05	81.3	61.9	7
November	26.173	69.7	67.0	65.3	26.140	81.7	77.5	72.6	26.156	70.0	69.9	67.3	4.84	5-08	79.5	62.3	15
December	26.176	70.5	66.4	64.2	26.134	83.9	79.3	71.6	26.148	71.3	71.3	67.6	2.41	7-11	81.3	63.8	13
Mean for Year	26.207	70.6	67.3	64.7	26.175	80.5	76.9	70.8	26.180	70.4	67.7	66.2	48.98	5-40	79.4	62.9	145
Total																	

TABLE 2.

STATEMENT OF EXTRA METEOROLOGICAL OBSERVATIONS TAKEN AT
ENTEBBE.

Month.	Solar Radiation Thermometer.		Terrestrial Radiation Minimum Thermometer
	Black.	Bright. 2 p.m.	
1918.	°	°	°
January	124.8	93.9	43.9
February	132.7	100.8	44.4
March	125.4	94.3	45.9
April	123.4	94.5	46.6
May	149.2	114.7	51.4
June	131.5	95.3	60.7
July	134.3	97.1	58.0
August	136.8	98.9	58.4
September	138.3	109.9	59.5
October	142.9	103.3	59.1
November	138.5	99.8	59.4
December	144.2	102.9	59.6
Mean for Year ..	139.3	100.1	53.9

TABLE 3.

STATEMENT OF EXTRA METEOROLOGICAL OBSERVATIONS TAKEN AT
ENTEBBE.

Month.	Earth Thermometer 1½ feet.			Earth Thermometer. 4 feet		
	7 a.m.	2 p.m.	9 p.m.	7 a.m.	2 p.m.	9 p.m.
1918.	°	°	°	°	°	°
January	73.7	73.7	73.7	74.2	74.3	74.2
February	75.8	76.1	76.0	75.5	75.7	75.6
March	77.2	77.1	77.0	77.0	77.0	76.9
April	75.8	75.8	75.6	75.5	75.7	75.8
May	71.2	71.6	71.3	74.5	74.7	74.4
June	70.3	70.4	70.2	73.8	73.9	73.9
July	70.1	70.1	70.1	73.1	73.1	73.1
August	71.4	71.3	71.8	73.6	73.6	73.4
September	74.0	74.2	74.8	74.6	74.5	74.5
October	75.9	75.8	75.8	75.9	75.9	75.8
November	76.3	76.1	76.4	76.5	76.5	76.3
December	76.6	76.5	77.4	76.2	76.3	76.3
Mean for Year	74.0	74.1	74.2	75.0	75.1	75.1

TABLE 4.

STATEMENT SHOWING AVERAGE HOURLY VELOCITY OF WIND FOR
1918 BETWEEN THE HOURS OF :—

Month.	9 p.m. to 7 a.m.	7 a.m. to 2 p.m.	2 p.m. to 9 p.m.
1918.			
January	2.7	2.4	2.0
February	3.1	3.1	2.2
March	4.2	3.5	3.6
April	2.2	3.1	2.6
May	1.8	3.7	2.8
June	1.7	3.0	2.6
July	1.7	4.5	3.3
August	1.4	3.9	3.1
September	3.0	5.7	5.4
October	2.1	3.3	2.9
November	3.3	5.5	3.9
December	2.8	6.8	5.8
Mean for Year..	2.5	4.0	3.4

TABLE 5.

AVERAGE VALUES OF METEOROLOGICAL ELEMENTS AT ENTEBBE.

	January.	February.	March.	April.	May.	June.	July.	August.	September.	October.	November.	December.
Mean Pressure, 17 years, 1902-1918 ..	26.130	26.122	26.124	26.129	26.152	26.167	26.182	26.177	26.152	26.144	26.129	26.133
Mean Maximum Temp. °F., 18 years, 1901-1918 ..	79.9	79.1	80.3	78.4	77.8	77.7	77.8	77.6	79.4	80.0	79.8	80.1
Mean Minimum Temp. °F., 18 years, 1901-1918..	63.6	63.1	64.9	63.8	63.3	63.0	62.6	61.8	62.2	62.4	62.5	62.9
Mean Temperature °F., 18 years, 1901-1918..	71.9	71.1	72.6	71.1	70.6	70.3	70.2	69.7	70.8	71.2	71.2	71.5
Rainfall, Inches, 18-23 years 1896-1918	2.12	4.65	4.38	10.06	7.79	5.64	2.00	2.74	3.98	3.80	4.11	3.21
Sunshine, Hours, 13 years, 1906-1918	6.28	6.18	5.50	3.39	4.06	4.53	6.25	5.39	5.23	5.59	5.29	6.16

TABLE 6.
AVERAGE MAXIMUM AND MINIMUM TEMPERATURES FOR SEVEN YEARS OF SEVEN STATIONS.

Year.	ENTEBBE.		JINJA.		MBARARA.		MASAKA.		FT. PORTAL.		KAMPALA.		GULU.	
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
1912 ..	79.1	62.9	81.8	63.5	78.5	61.7	80.4	60.0	82.2	62.1	82.0	63.0	85.7	70.0
1913 ..	79.7	62.7	82.8	61.8	80.1	63.6	78.0	56.2	77.9	56.3	82.7	62.6	83.3	63.2
1914 ..	78.6	63.4	81.4	62.8	80.6	53.4	77.0	58.2	78.6	54.3	81.0	65.8	84.3	62.4
1915 ..	79.5	63.3	82.2	62.6	80.6	48.3	77.0	60.4	77.7	58.4	80.3	64.6	84.6	60.7
1916 ..	78.8	63.0	80.4	61.6	79.4	47.8	76.4	61.3	76.1	58.4	80.1	63.4	86.0	62.1
1917 ..	79.7	63.2	81.9	61.4	79.4	55.7	76.3	58.9	75.9	57.0	79.6	62.0	86.7	59.1
1918 ..	79.4	62.9	85.8	63.1	79.3	58.1	79.3	60.0	76.0	52.6	81.1	65.3	86.1	64.7
Means ..	79.2	63.2	82.3	62.3	79.9	52.7	77.2	59.8	76.9	56.1	80.4	64.2	85.5	61.8

TABLE 7.

COMPARATIVE RAINFALL STATEMENT, SHOWING THE MONTHLY RAINFALL FOR THE YEAR 1918, OF FIFTY-TWO LOCALITIES OF THE UGANDA PROTECTORATE.

MONTH.	Entebbe.		Jinja.		Mbarara.		Masaka.		Fort Portal.		Butiaba.		Masindi.		Gulu.		Kampala.	
	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.
January	2.07	10	1.74	6	2.20	7	1.33	8	1.06	6	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	0.16	1	1.37	8
February	1.07	7	0.22	1	1.36	6	1.62	6	0.53	2	0.10	1	Nil	Nil	0.34	3	0.56	4
March	3.59	15	1.18	4	2.83	9	2.03	9	9.37	21	0.29	3	2.66	10	1.23	5	1.97	11
April	10.88	23	3.74	15	2.53	11	5.01	19	15.52	25	4.79	10	10.06	16	4.33	7	5.41	19
May	9.05	11	2.42	7	1.37	8	3.91	13	2.84	14	6.45	7	5.44	18	3.11	7	4.93	13
June	5.17	18	1.78	6	1.93	4	2.02	9	3.30	8	0.99	1	1.65	6	6.31	14	3.29	11
July	1.89	7	2.14	6	0.94	3	Nil	Nil	0.47	4	3.60	4	5.92	9	2.04	5	0.89	4
August	1.75	10	2.16	6	0.83	5	0.60	6	4.34	9	5.88	5	6.45	16	3.20	11	4.55	12
September	3.21	9	3.37	9	1.85	9	1.61	5	10.24	22	0.74	4	3.70	12	3.66	11	3.47	10
October	3.05	7	4.38	10	2.75	13	1.24	8	6.02	23	2.18	8	4.42	16	3.06	6	2.64	14
November	4.84	15	3.10	7	2.45	9	1.70	7	6.58	22	2.67	7	8.66	15	5.47	11	1.50	12
December	2.41	13	2.36	7	3.32	9	1.35	10	4.06	12	0.40	2	0.67	4	1.31	4	1.79	7
Total	48.98	145	28.59	84	24.36	94	22.42	100	65.23	168	28.09	52	49.63	122	34.22	85	32.37	125

TABLE 7—*continued*.
COMPARATIVE RAINFALL STATEMENT, SHOWING THE MONTHLY RAINFALL FOR THE YEAR 1918, OF FIFTY-TWO LOCALITIES OF THE UGANDA PROTECTORATE—*continued*.

Month.	Mbale.		Mubendi.		Budo.		Bukona.		Namenage.		Lira.		Soroti.		Hoima.		Namukera.	
	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.
January ..	0.24	2	1.14	5	1.90	5	0.70	5	0.10	1	0.14	1	0.26	2	0.80	1	0.64	3
February ..	0.84	3	1.20	2	0.94	2	0.53	4	1.27	2	1.02	4	0.27	3	0.73	3	0.19	3
March ..	0.46	3	2.40	3	2.50	..	1.42	8	4.08	7	1.51	3	1.46	4	2.79	15	2.08	5
April ..	4.75	5	8.05	12	7.29	13	6.90	16	8.70	17	4.91	18	9.05	14	9.59	15	6.43	17
May ..	8.36	14	6.65	11	4.25	13	7.16	16	6.29	12	3.66	8	4.93	11	6.22	10	2.44	9
June ..	5.67	6	2.17	9	3.57	8	1.10	10	1.50	2	7.05	18	3.55	13	5.96	13	4.99	13
July ..	4.91	5	0.95	3	2.14	7	2.67	11	1.89	5	2.50	4	2.14	10	1.20	6	1.26	7
August ..	5.54	6	5.95	14	3.12	7	2.71	17	4.10	10	3.79	11	8.80	16	7.47	17	3.25	12
September ..	1.54	10	4.11	11	2.45	9	4.54	20	6.75	11	3.41	8	1.33	7	4.12	15	2.59	12
October ..	2.21	11	6.20	15	1.91	8	3.44	11	4.81	8	2.70	5	3.00	9	8.61	20	3.90	14
November ..	..	..	3.21	17	1.77	7	4.89	11	1.35	3	5.39	8	5.14	6	3.13	14	2.63	12
December ..	..	..	2.00	8	1.47	3	2.41	11	1.16	2	0.30	1	0.11	2	1.19	7	1.63	7
Total	34.52	65	43.73	110	33.31	85	38.47	143	42.00	80	36.38	89	40.04	97	51.81	136	32.03	114

* Records for 17 days.

TABLE 7—continued.

COMPARATIVE RAINFALL STATEMENT, SHOWING THE MONTHLY RAINFALL FOR THE YEAR 1918, OF FIFTY-TWO LOCALITIES OF THE UGANDA PROTECTORATE—continued.

Month.	Iganga.		Batiti.		Bukumi.		Rubaga.		Ngora.		Kisubi.		Kivuvu.		Kawalon-gojo.	
	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.
January ..	0.40	1	0.80	3	0.12	5	1.60	4	0.06	1	2.00	7	2.24	6	1.39	3
February ..	0.35	1	1.65	5	0.04	3	1.03	2	1.01	3	1.23	3	1.66	5	2.07	7
March ..	..	..	6.82	15	2.12	20	1.70	4	0.43	2	5.94	10	2.30	7	3.59	10
April ..	..	..	4.17	20	2.79	20	5.32	8	5.02	15	11.45	19	7.01	17	8.93	25
May ..	..	..	5.21	8	3.63	18	5.10	8	6.40	16	7.76	8	5.41	12	4.55	16
June ..	..	..	1.67	6	2.18	12	2.40	2	6.96	12	6.68	10	6.35	12	2.56	13
July ..	..	..	2.23	7	1.03	8	1.18	1	2.16	9	1.55	2	2.88	8	0.29	6
August ..	..	..	2.16	10	4.97	19	2.60	4	8.87	14	1.19	5	6.35	11	3.45	15
September ..	4.41	8	3.34	12	4.02	12	3.54	4	1.52	7	1.43	5	4.50	11	7.19	14
October ..	3.98	6	9.61	21	6.04	18	1.50	3	2.50	7	3.68	5	3.44	11	4.07	14
November ..	4.25	7	6.04	15	4.45	10	2.00	2	3.52	6	4.91	8	1.31	6	3.07	14
December ..	..	..	6.38	14	1.33	5	1.61	3	0.30	2	1.69	7	0.95	6	4.25	12
Total ..	13.39	23	50.08	136	32.92	150	29.58	45	38.75	94	49.51	89	44.40	112	45.41	149

TABLE 7—*continued*.
COMPARATIVE RAINFALL STATEMENT, SHOWING THE MONTHLY RAINFALL FOR THE YEAR 1918, OF FIFTY-TWO LOCALITIES OF THE UGANDA PROTECTORATE—*continued*.

Month.	Magigye.		Nandere.		Moniko.		Bombo.		Bwavu.		Kakumiro.		Bunyara-guru.		Katigondo.	
	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.
January ..	0.25	1	0.99	3	1.57	4	2.10	5	2.07	9	3.01	6	0.56	3	3.08	7
February ..	1.61	3	0.99	3	0.53	2	1.59	5	0.85	3	1.44	2	2.84	4	1.91	5
March ..	2.92	6	4.98	11	4.96	7	1.83	6	1.80	7	2.80	10	6.87	25	3.64	11
April ..	11.16	19	6.86	14	4.64	10	8.18	12	4.28	15	6.42	18	6.31	18	4.54	14
May ..	5.91	9	2.97	9	4.90	15	4.95	6	0.32	13	5.33	11	3.73	12	4.63	13
June ..	2.22	6	2.01	10	4.86	8	4.06	10	2.55	11	0.86	7	2.06	6	2.67	7
July ..	2.11	7	0.35	5	5.86	12	2.47	11	2.72	9	2.47	4	0.35	2	<i>Nil</i>	
August ..	3.74	15	3.03	13	4.58	13	3.96	9	5.65	11	6.16	14	5.44	13	2.22	5
September ..	6.35	17	2.63	12	4.54	9	2.71	11	4.75	12	2.45	9	7.39	14	3.00	6
October ..	3.12	20	4.51	18	5.28	11	4.94	16	3.56	10	5.93	16	9.08	17	4.62	10
November ..	3.06	13	3.06	8	2.52	8	3.46	11	2.97	7	4.52	11	3.91	9	1.27	9
December ..	2.94	14	1.53	7	1.23	2	2.71	11	1.32	1	2.50	10	4.65	12	2.03	12
Total ..	45.39	130	33.85	113	45.47	101	42.96	113	38.84	108	43.89	118	53.19	135	33.61	99

TABLE 7—continued.

COMPARATIVE RAINFALL STATEMENT, SHOWING THE MONTHLY RAINFALL FOR THE YEAR 1918, OF FIFTY-TWO LOCALITIES OF THE UGANDA PROTECTORATE—continued.

Month.	Masindi Port.		Nambeya.		Kitgum.		Kilclooney.		Kadunguru.		Namasagali.		Hoima River Estate.		Nyondo.		Mutai.	
	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.
January ..	Nil	..	0.84	2	Nil	..	1.05	7	0.26	2	0.98	2	Nil	..	1.97	7	3.15	4
February ..	0.23	2	0.46	1	0.13	1	1.85	7	1.05	1	0.14	1	0.46	5	0.95	4	1.22	2
March ..	0.42	1	2.57	10	0.30	2	5.80	13	1.18	4	3.74	7	1.72	10	2.33	6	1.71	5
April ..	7.47	13	6.90	16	2.67	8	4.72	20	..	..	12.02	16	7.17	24	4.07	19	6.11	10
May ..	5.08	8	6.21	14	5.64	7	5.39	17	..	..	4.47	12	12.79	17	5.37	16	6.60	6
June ..	1.48	8	3.06	6	1.39	7	1.24	6	..	..	1.74	10	3.35	18	3.64	16	3.07	4
July ..	0.72	3	0.58	2	5.67	8	2.31	6	..	..	2.30	7	0.74	9	1.98	13	3.35	4
August ..	2.14	6	1.93	6	4.52	8	5.55	14	..	..	8.83	13	3.83	15	3.41	19	4.67	9
September ..	3.92	9	3.02	10	2.90	7	11.32	21	..	..	0.90	3	2.94	14	4.23	15	6.49	8
October ..	2.91	6	4.64	11	1.70	3	6.36	22	..	..	1.01	8	6.00	22	2.55	7	3.42	6
November ..	1.45	1	5.02	12	3.36	5	7.28	20	..	..	1.01	8	4.36	15	1.97	9	1.80	4
December ..	Nil	..	1.96	5	0.60	2	5.43	15	..	..	0.47	2	1.41	11	0.98	2	1.18	4
Total ..	25.82	57	37.19	95	28.88	58	58.31	168	2.49	7	39.30	86	44.77	160	33.46	133	42.77	66

TABLE 7—continued.

COMPARATIVE RAINFALL STATEMENT, SHOWING THE MONTHLY RAINFALL FOR THE YEAR 1918, OF FIFTY-TWO LOCALITIES OF THE UGANDA PROTECTORATE—continued.

Month.	Nsambya.		Bugondo.		Agu.		Lale.		Siza.		Ndibulungi Estate.		Kabale.		Kizigo Estate.		Buye Estate.	
	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.	In.	No. of days.
January ..	1.43	5	0.55	2	0.03	1	1.46	2	3.32	4	0.68	7	1.54	7	0.53	2	0.98	3
February ..	1.18	4	0.36	2	0.04	2	1.51	3	0.02	1	2.63	8	3.48	9	2.46	3	4.48	6
March ..	1.32	7	0.10	1	0.03	1	0.07	2	2.00	4	2.91	10	5.40	11	4.51	6	2.13	4
April ..	4.27	18	6.29	12	0.22	8	4.03	11	8.48	20	6.93	19	4.24	20	5.82	14	4.26	10
May ..	6.17	12	3.94	7	0.20	7	6.18	12	6.11	7	6.12	15	2.84	11	5.04	11	5.20	10
June ..	3.61	7	2.38	10	0.21	6	1.93	9	4.33	8	3.07	6	1.12	5	2.74	6	1.71	5
July ..	0.86	3	2.19	8	0.17	6	2.71	7	1.65	3	0.81	3	0.05	1	0.81	3	0.13	1
August ..	2.77	11	2.05	9	0.21	6	2.91	12	2.78	4	4.21	10	0.77	4	4.65	7	2.44	4
September	3.80	12	1.48	4	0.06	3	3.37	9	2.52	6	5.39	11	4.82	12	3.63	6	4.39	12
October ..	1.87	13	2.16	7	0.08	3	3.43	9	1.79	5	2.68	11	2.81	15	3.06	6	2.43	7
November	1.78	10	1.65	11	1.89	6	4.91	7	2.91	7	1.29	8	3.70	13	5.61	10	3.73	7
December	1.41	7	1.25	3	0.24	1	0.70	4	0.55	3	2.34	8	4.23	13	2.63	8	3.01	8
Total ..	30.47	109	24.40	76	3.38	50	33.21	87	36.46	72	39.06	116	35.00	121	41.49	82	34.89	77

TABLE 8.—STATEMENT SHOWING SITUATIONS AND LATITUDES, LONGITUDES AND HEIGHTS OF THE METEOROLOGICAL STATIONS IN THE UGANDA PROTECTORATE.

Station.	Situation.	Latitude.	Longitude.	Height in feet above Mean Sea Level.
Entebbe ..	Buganda Kingdom	0° 4' 31" N.	32° 28' 30" E.	3842
Butiaba ..	Northern Province	1° 50' N.	31° 26' E.	2025
Fort Portal ..	Western "	0° 43' N.	30° 8' E.	5299
Gondokoro †	Northern "	1° 51' N.	31° 12' E.	1500
Jinja ..	Eastern "	0° 26' N.	33° 11' E.	3722
Mubendi ..	Buganda Kingdom	0° 30' 22" N.	31° 22' 26" E.	5121
Kampala ..	"	0° 19' N.	32° 35' E.	3905
Koba †	Northern Province	2° 19' N.	31° 29' E.	*
Masaka ..	Buganda Kingdom	0° 21' S.	31° 47' E.	4150-4250
Masindi ..	Northern Province	1° 40' N.	31° 50' E.	3764
Mbare ..	Eastern "	1° 2' N.	34° 6' E.	*
Mbarara ..	Western "	0° 31' S.	30° 47' E.	4500
Namesage ..	Eastern "	0° 51' N.	33° 10' E.	3600-3800
Nimule .. †	Northern "	3° 39' N.	32° 10' E.	2034
Sunga †	Buganda Kingdom	0° 19' S.	31° 52' E.	3910
Budo ..	"	0° 16' N.	32° 29' E.	4200-4300
Bukona ..	Eastern Province	0° 30' N.	33° 37' E.	*
Buluhi †	"	1° 43' N.	33° 13' E.	3518
Kumi †	"	1° 29' N.	33° 58' E.	*
Palango †	"	1° 58' N.	32° 30' E.	*
Hoima ..	Northern Province	1° 30' N.	31° 30' E.	3801
Busubizi †	Buganda Kingdom	0° 22' N.	32° 5' E.	*
Nazigo ..	"	"	"	*
Namukekera ..	"	0° 41' N.	32° 14' E.	*
Nabumali †	Eastern Province	1° 36' N.	31° 12' E.	*
Iganga ..	"	0° 36' N.	32° 28' E.	*
Butiti ..	Western "	0° 39' N.	30° 32' E.	*
Kamuli †	Eastern "	0° 55' N.	33° 7' E.	3717
Bukumi ..	Buganda Kingdom	0° 49' N.	31° 22' E.	*
Mitala Mariva †	"	0° 5' N.	32° 7' E.	*
Rubaga ..	"	0° 18' N.	32° 33' E.	4135
Ngora ..	Eastern Province	1° 28' N.	33° 48' E.	*
Kisubi ..	Buganda Kingdom	0° 10' N.	32° 33' E.	*
Kivuvu ..	"	0° 43' N.	32° 47' E.	3600-3700
Kawalongojo ..	"	0° 24' N.	32° 11' E.	4263
Gulu ..	Northern Province	2° 45' N.	32° 25' E.	*
Nabieso †	Eastern "	1° 52' N.	32° 52' E.	*
Magiye ..	Buganda Kingdom	0° 29' N.	32° 16' E.	*
Nandere ..	"	0° 38' N.	32° 30' E.	3900 (approx.)
Moniko ..	"	0° 23' N.	32° 55' E.	*
Keritia ..	"	0° 21' N.	32° 51' E.	*
Bwayu ..	"	0° 21' N.	33° 1' E.	4200 (approx.)
Bombo ..	"	0° 35' N.	32° 32' E.	3967 (approx.)
Bugalla †	"	0° 19' S.	32° 14' E.	4070
Sango Bay ..	"	0° 52' N.	31° 13' E.	*
Kakumiro ..	"	0° 46' N.	31° 18' E.	4511
Bunyaruguru ..	"	"	"	*
Mvuba †	"	0° 24' N.	32° 17' E.	3800-3900
Kitumbuzi River ..	Eastern Province	*	*	*
Kabyaza ..	"	*	*	*
Kadoma ..	"	*	*	*
Masindi Port ..	Northern "	1° 42' N.	32° 05' E.	3360
Nambya ..	Buganda Kingdom	0° 38' N.	32° 20' E.	4000
Kitalya †	"	0° 26' N.	32° 14' E.	3800
Lugombe †	"	0° 26' N.	32° 14' E.	3800
Katigondo ..	"	0° 13' S.	31° 44' E.	4290
Kitgum ..	Eastern Province	3° 20' N.	32° 55' E.	*
Socoti ..	"	1° 13' N.	31° 17' E.	3690
Lira ..	"	2° 15' N.	32° 55' E.	*
Nyondo ..	"	*	*	*
Kilchooney ..	Western "	*	*	*
Hoima River ..	"	*	*	*
Estate ..	Northern "	*	*	*
Namasagali ..	Eastern "	*	*	*
Kadunguru ..	"	*	*	*
Nsambya ..	Buganda Kingdom	0° 17' 50" N.	32° 35' 15" E.	4020
Bugondo ..	Eastern Province	1° 17' 30" N.	33° 16' E.	3476 (approx.)
Agu ..	"	1° 28' 30" N.	33° 12' E.	3750
Sambwe ..	"	1° 21' 30" N.	33° 20' E.	3410
Lalle ..	"	1° 42' N.	33° 28' E.	3500
Kamyangari ..	"	1° 23' N.	33° 28' E.	3400
Mutai ..	"	0° 31' N.	33° 15' E.	3950

† These Stations have been abandoned.

* Information not available.

NOTE.—The above statement has been revised, as far as possible, by the Survey Department. There is no definite information available as to latitude and longitude of these points, except Entebbe and Kampala.

CHAPTER XXV.

GEOLOGY.

Introduction. Very little is known, as yet, of the geology of the Protectorate, but the subject is now being investigated on scientific lines with a view to the determination of the mineral wealth of the country. No attempt will be made in these pages to deal at all systematically with the geology of any area, but it is hoped that the following sketch will serve to acquaint the reader with the more general features of structure and composition of Uganda rocks, etc., as at present determined.

Lying as it does, between two of the most remarkable valley systems in the world—the eastern and western rifts—including within its boundaries the snow-capped mass of Ruwenzori and the largest of the equatorial lakes; and containing not only the major sources and reservoirs but also the uttermost trickles of the Nile,* Uganda can hardly fail to be attractive. To a geologist the rifts, the mountain mass, the great lakes, and the remarkable volcanic area from whence the Nile springs, present problems of the greatest interest. Nor is this all; for although main geographical features such as these are essentially the Uganda of the explorer and surveyor, it is otherwise in the geological view. To suppose that surface configuration makes the Protectorate what it is, is to put the cart before the horse, since in truth, this same configuration is the expression of the physical economy of the country.†

**General
Topography.**

More or less detailed accounts of the topography are given under the various sections dealing with Provinces and Districts. They need not be repeated here, but certain salient facts call for remark.

The Buganda Province is, for the most part, a much dissected tableland, the internal structure of which bears no relation to its surface; that is to say, although the country is structurally mountainous and composed of folded, twisted, and faulted rocks, geographically these

* In the Kigezi district.

† By "physical economy" is meant the sum total of effects of casual factors which have determined the geology of the country



Photo by E. J. Wayland.

ANCIENT GRANITE (GNEISS) COUNTRY.

features are not expressed, because in times past the irregularities of surface have been slowly planed down and finally obliterated by denudation acting on a land tectonically inactive.* The valleys, which have been carved out since this obliteration was completed, and which owe their origin to rejuvenation of rivers and streams consequent upon re-elevation of the land, are broad and tortuous; and although evidence enough exists to shew that in past times their floors were covered by flowing waters of considerable expanse, they are at the present almost all of them swamp-choked.

Westwards and northwards the country in general rises above the level of the plateau, and the mountainous features become more conspicuous. The rocks on the whole are more resistant to the weather and running streams are a good deal more common.

The oldest rocks in the Protectorate belong, almost certainly, to an exceedingly ancient and varied group of world-wide distribution known as the archæan complex. Representatives of this group form the basement, as it were, of the African continent. They consist, in this country, of granite-like rocks, often banded (gneisses), highly foliated, and commonly micaceous, rocks (schists), and several other types which, as a result of vicissitudes suffered in the course of a very lengthy existence, have undergone considerable structural, textural and mineral changes. Not only have they been twisted, bent and fractured by the stresses of crust and metamorphosed by the heat and pressure thereby engendered, but time and again they have suffered invasion by molten material and mineralising solutions from below. It would seem, but it is not yet certain, that these intrusions belong to two main periods; the first before certain sedimentary beds (the argillites, to be described presently) were deposited, and the second—and this is quite certain—after their deposition. Thick beds of crystalline limestone, which may be provisionally placed in the Archæan series, are known to occur in the Eastern Province, but as this part of the country has not yet been visited by the geologists, no further reference to geology of that area will be made in these pages. The ancient sediments are a series of argillites† (clay rocks) which vary considerably

General
Lithology.

* The planing down of this structurally mountainous area can only indicate a protracted period when earth movement was remarkably in abeyance—a long cycle of rest in fact. The tendency is for cycles of activity and cycles of rest to succeed each other with more or less regularity, and Uganda is no exception to the rule.

† L. argilla, a clay.

in appearance and texture. Some of the hardest are deep red indurated varieties forming the walls of quartz-hæmatite* reefs, which commonly run along lines of faulting. The softest varieties of argillite are usually light coloured and sometimes white. Very occasionally, as near Kigezi, they are black. Banded whites, creams, reds, buffis and browns, are not uncommon; but the commonest variety is moderately hard and of a reddish brown colour. Mottled varieties with mauve shades also occur, while the tilestones—so called slates—used by the White Fathers for roofing their church at Rakai, are well bedded argillites of a mottled silver grey.

The term argillite needs, perhaps, some explanation. It has been used by writers in at least three different ways. With American authors it is a synonym of slate; most British geologists use it as an alternative for Porcellanite—a clay rock altered by heat and pressure—while in Swaziland it is used to denote hard, not necessarily altered, clay rocks which occur there.

In this country we are faced with the difficulty of finding any term sufficiently descriptive and yet sufficiently limited to include the rather wide range of clay rocks which are so strongly developed in many areas. They vary from soft well-bedded shaly deposits to massive rather hard clay rocks and exhibit almost every conceivable gradation of structure, colour and hardness; thus the term argillite, or argillite series, seems the most applicable. This term, however, does not include the metamorphosed varieties, of which there are several.†

Clay-rocks, presumably belonging to the argillite series, may be seen at Entebbe near the pier underlying ancient pebble beds now high and dry above the lake. They crop out again in the botanical gardens near the spring; fragments of them also occur in surface detrital deposits but, on the whole, they do not appear to be of common occurrence in the Entebbe district. They become very conspicuous south of Masaka and may be traced over much of the southern part of Buganda, the Western Province, and the southern part of the Northern Province.‡

Though probably much younger than the archæan rocks the argillites are of considerable antiquity. Like the beds beneath them they have been folded, crumpled and fractured to a high degree, and have suffered in places considerable alteration, not only as a consequence of the

* Hæmatite is an iron ore corresponding to the formula $\text{Fe}_2 \text{O}_3$.

† The term must be regarded as provisional.

‡ Nothing is known of their occurrence in the Eastern Province as the geologists have not yet visited that part (1919).

metamorphosing effects of igneous intrusions, but also as a result of dynamic influences which have generally made themselves felt in the form of intense pressure and mechanically generated heat. Occasionally—near Kigezi for example—pressure has induced a true slaty cleavage in the argillites, that is to say cleavage inclined to the true bedding planes at a steep angle. In some parts, particularly in the south of Ankole, the argillites contain large numbers of cubical holes. These are either empty or contain a little oxide of iron. They appear to represent one-time salt crystals which have been dissolved away and their places taken by other substances during the course of ages. Where the tableland has been less strongly developed, and where denudation has allowed composition and texture to express themselves with some freedom, the argillites have given rise to some very striking scenery. They represent a clustered series of low-fluted domes which the traveller soon recognises as highly characteristic. They are, however, only domes to outward appearance, and must not be confused with the large structural domes to be described later. Interbedded with the argillites are sheets and lenticular beds of quartzite which may vary from more than 100 feet in thickness to mere laminae. They are fine-grained rocks for the most part, and usually grey or white in shade but occasionally contain pinkish or buff patches. Though, as a rule, exceedingly hard, they may pass into a white saccharoidal rock the grains of which may be detached by merely rubbing the surface with the finger. As the quartzite beds are more resistant to the rotting action of the weather than the argillites and as the whole series is generally tilted at a high angle, the quartzites tend to stand out in ridges which may run across the country for miles. The scarp or mountain wall which forms the eastern boundary of Ruampara is a huge imposing mass of quartzite, which owes its prominence as a geographical feature mainly to the differential action of the weather. The less homogeneous of the quartzites present a spongy appearance due to a similar cause. Quartz conglomerates resembling the banket of the Rand also occur and occasionally more or less normal sandstones may be seen. Many of the quartzites contain small cubes and other crystal forms of iron pyrites, but ferruginous pseudomorphs are as a rule more frequent than crystals of the original mineral.*

*A pseudomorph is a mineral assuming the form of another species. In those referred to above hydrous iron oxides, produced by the decomposition of pyrites (iron sulphide) retains the form of the original mineral.

The intrusions which cut the argillites vary from dykes and reefs of practically pure quartz to basic and ultra-basic rocks largely composed of ferro-magnesian silicates. A tourmaline quartz rock is common, while tourmalinization of some of the ancient sediments is locally conspicuous.* Acid intrusions, that is to say those with a high percentage of silica containing alkaline micas, are not infrequent, but ferro-magnesian micas are rarely seen. Certain granites containing felspar crystals an inch or more in length appear to be intrusive in the argillites. Much of the rock exposed at the surface in this country is usually regarded as volcanic owing to its cellular and sometimes cindery appearance. This, however, is deceptive, the rock in question being laterite, a decomposition product of other rocks. True volcanoes occur in the west and appear to be almost confined to the western rift valley. They are remarkably well-developed in the Kigezi district where they form the famous volcanoes of Mufumbiro. Volcanic rocks may be traced discontinuously along the rift as far as Fort Portal, after which they die out. Explosion craters blown through the superincumbent rocks and associated with very little lava are frequent; big lava flows are to be seen in the Mufumbiro area, and bedded tuffs, sometimes containing fossil leaf impressions, are to be found from the south of Ruwenzori to Toro.

Earth Movements.

There can be little doubt that the argillites are some thousands of feet thick, but their apparent thickness has been increased by repeated faulting.† These beds were deposited in the form of fine silt, for the most part in what were probably salt-saturated waters. The actual conditions attendant upon their deposition are, in our present state of knowledge of the country, a little uncertain; but it is probable that the Dead Sea may be taken as a parallel case. Thick accumulations such as these with so little change in their composition suggest a sinking bottom, such as one might expect in a rift for example (*e.g.*, the Dead Sea Valley). Rift valleys are, of course, one of the striking features of this country, and thus it seems probable that the argillites were deposited in a rift of remote antiquity. During the long periods which

* Tourmalinization signifies the formation of tourmaline (a borosilicate of aluminum and alkalis with iron and magnesium and some fluorine and hydroxyl) by the action of boron vapours on rocks (such as shales, argillites, granites, etc.) rich in alkaline aluminous silicates.

† A fault is a line of fracture which has produced an interruption in the continuity of the strata.



Photo by E. J. Wayland.

QUARTZITE OUTCROP NEAR MBARARA.

intervened between those far-off days and the present time the country has slowly yielded to the enormous pressures and stresses which we know to be transmitted, more often laterally than not, through the earth's crust, so that the beds have very generally lost their original horizontality and present enormous masses of folded, crumpled and fractured rocks. Although fractures have been produced on a very large scale, pressure has prevented the formation of gaping abysses and has caused the rocks to slide over each other, thus producing faults and thrust planes. It would be difficult to find an area elsewhere, comparable in size to Uganda, which is more faulted. Some of the fault (fracture) lines run for distances of over 100 miles. In some instances, as for example the Lake Albert escarpment,* the line is wonderfully straight; but sometimes the faults branch and sometimes they are curved. The latter case is explicable by torsional stresses. The main directions of pressure have been, (1) very approximately east to west, and (2) very approximately north to south. They have resulted in the formation of a large number of domes whose major axes are at right angles to the first-mentioned direction. It would seem, but is not yet certain, that the whole country may be regarded as part of an enormous fold whose apex was once situated above the summit of Ruwenzori and whose western limb descended into the Belgian Congo. It would appear, then, if this view is right, that the numerous other folds or domes above mentioned are crinkles, as it were, upon a much larger structure of a similar type.

Take a piece of foolscap and fold it many times in a transverse direction. Press out the creases as much as possible and then, laying the paper flat on a table, gently but steadily apply lateral pressure by placing the hands on the edges of the foolscap and bringing them slowly together. The sides begin to crinkle along the lines of creasing; next, almost unexpectedly, the whole centre of the paper bulges up. This forms a very crude and incomplete model of the great fold already alluded to. The lines of creasing are ancient lines of weakness. Under the centre of the major fold, upon which the creases produce crinkles, is the site of Ruwenzori, while north and south of it are the Albertine, and the Edward-George Rifts, which represent parts of the great arch which have

*A fault of much later date, probably, than many of those which run across the argillites, etc., but which do not, as a rule, except where denudation is largely responsible, make surface features.

dropped in. The **model** lacks one essential feature, however, and that is the effect of north and south pressure.

Denudation has so disguised the minor domes that geographically they are now the reverse of hills. They have been eaten away, as it were, till they are more like craters than domes. The lower flanks of the elevations, having suffered most of the pressure, were in consequence harder than the crowns which, no doubt, showed a tendency to crack and gape. While, therefore, denudation has attacked the apices of the hills and eaten them away to the very core, it has left the flanks still standing, and this has had a marked effect upon the physical geography of the country while it has produced what may be called "arenas." There are many of these to be seen, great areas of comparatively low elevation separated and surrounded by hills that were once the bottoms of valleys. Had the domes been simple the strata of the now intervening hills should always dip away from the arenas, but, in point of fact, they by no means always do this: the reason being that repeated faulting has complicated the issue. One of the lines of evidence which lead to the deduction of the true character of arenas is the occurrence in them of exposures of archæan rocks often geographically higher than the lowest exposed beds of the argillite hills which separate the arenas. The evidence of ancient lines of drainage, too, points to a similar conclusion.

It would appear, then, that the tectonic history of the country is very broadly as follows :—

1. The crumpling and faulting in rectilinear directions of the ancient rocks almost certainly prior to the deposition of the argillites, which were themselves, likely enough, deposited upon the slowly sinking bottom of an ancient rift.
2. Another great period of movement, subsequent to the deposition of the argillites when folding and faulting reasserted itself more or less on the ancient lines of weakness—*i.e.*, east and west approximately and north and south approximately—which culminated in the formation of a huge complex fold, the major axis of which ran more or less along, and extended both sides of, the present long axis of Ruwenzori.
3. A period of comparative rest during which most of the present topographical features, exclusive of the rifts, were developed by denudation.
4. The falling in of large stretches of country more or less along the major axis of the major fold, *i.e.*, the formation of the western rifts accompanied by a good deal of



Photo by E. J. Wayland.

FRACTURE PLANE (FAULT) BETWEEN KABALE AND KIGEZI.

volcanic outburst.* Tectonic movements such as these are always going on, more or less, but they are for the most part slow and gradual; none the less they commonly make themselves felt in the form of earthquakes. Earthquakes are of frequent occurrence in Uganda, but considering the highly shattered nature of the country the wonder is not that they are so frequent, but that they are not more frequent and more violent.

In addition to the deposits already described there are very extensive gravels, boulder beds and silts flanking the valleys and the lakes, with which are associated stone age remains. These indicate quite unmistakably a period, not very long ago as the geologist measures time, when the rainfall was very much heavier than at present. In addition to these there is another surface deposit of very wide occurrence which is probably best described as laterite. This is a red substance which may vary from a loam-like material to a hard cellular substance (murrum) rich in iron. Laterite is a product of rock decomposition which is exceedingly common in the tropics and is practically confined to them.

It is unnecessary in this chapter to go into the question of stone age remains, but it may be mentioned that representatives of the two great culture divisions of the prehistoric periods, that is to say the Palæolithic (older stone age) and the Neolithic (new stone age), as recognised in Europe have been found in Uganda. Moreover, some of those curious little implements, generally known as "pigmy," which appear to belong to the border-land of the two great culture phases mentioned above have also been discovered. Finally, it may be said that the occurrence of thick beds of made earth, full of pottery, at Kibero, buried slag heaps in places where iron smelting is an unknown art, the discovery of gaming boards carved on rocks now covered with turf and vegetation, the existence of "dew ponds" and stone cairns on certain hilltops, as well as some ancient ruins, all point to the conclusion that Uganda has been inhabited by comparatively civilised man for a considerable period.

*A comparison of the degree of denudation of the Uganda plateau with that of the arenas leaves little room for doubt that the destruction of the domes commenced before the dissection of the plateau; both are still slowly proceeding. While it is certain that the western rift was formed after the destruction of the domes was well advanced (for the Lake Albert rift cuts through some arenas) there is no evidence at present to shew the chronological relationship between the formation of the rift and the beginning of the destruction of the tableland. As already pointed out this destruction process is a consequence of relative elevation. Now since, all things considered, the surface of the tableland is remarkably level, the elevation must have been one of general uplift; and it is tempting to suggest that the falling in of long stretches of country which gave rise to the western rift was a consequence of this movement

APPENDIX

POPULATION AND

RETURN OF THE POPULATION AND

Province & District	Area in square miles.	Europeans.		Asiatics.		Natives.		Total.	
		Males.	Fem.	Males.	Fem.	Males.	Females.	Males.	Females.
Buganda Province :—									
Mengo	6,659	180	105	660	245	177,964	225,321	178,813	225,671
Entebbe	5,486	127	48	240	78	46,027	54,311	46,394	54,437
Masaka	4,602	48	16	131	71	62,213	77,342	62,392	77,429
Mubendi	5,623	26	7	34	7	63,044	82,064	63,104	82,978
Total ..	22,370	381	176	1,074	401	349,248	439,938	350,703	440,415
Eastern Province :—									
Busoga	10,771	50	36	500	100	106,959	140,000	107,509	140,136
Bukedi	3,354	20	4	501	157	192,469	240,742	192,990	240,903
Teso	4,738	25	5	230	60	130,976	155,917	131,231	155,982
Lango	5,099	6	—	100	25	157,000	205,000	157,106	205,025
Karamoja	6,520	—	—	—	—	50,000	50,000	50,000	50,000
Lobor	5,810	—	—	—	—	(approximate)	(approximate)	(approximate)	(approximate)
Total ..	36,292	101	45	1,331	342	587,404 50,000	741,659 50,000	588,836 50,000	742,046 50,000
Western Province :—									
Ankole	6,131	8	6	81	45	117,048	149,418	117,137	149,469
Toro	5,579	25	18	59	23	61,000	65,000	61,084	65,041
Kigezi	2,056	1	—	11	—	70,000	80,000	70,012	80,000
Total ..	13,766	34	24	151	68	248,048	294,418	248,233	294,510
Northern Province :—									
Bunyoro	5,619	38	13	68	32	41,966	50,543	42,072	50,588
Gulu (includes Eastern and Western Madi) ..	6,995	7	5	15	8	39,000	59,000	39,022	59,013
Chua	7,007	6	—	11	2	34,597	50,600	34,614	50,602
West Nile	4,113	12	4	9	4	104,994	122,493	105,015	122,501
Total ..	23,734	63	22	103	46	220,557	282,636	220,723	282,704
Rudolf Province :—									
Turkwel	1,428	1	—	—	—	100,000 (approximate only)	100,000 (approximate only)	100,000 (approximate only)	100,000 (approximate only)
Turkana	7,552								
Dabossa	5,158								
Total ..	14,138	1	—	—	—	100,000 (approximate only)	100,000 (approximate only)	100,000 (approximate only)	100,000 (approximate only)
GRAND TOTAL ..	110,300	580	267	2,659	857	1,405,257 150,000	1,738,651 150,000	1,408,495 150,000	1,739,695 150,000
		8	47	3,5	16	3,313,908		3,318,190	

* European Births= 12, or 42 per 1,000
 Asiatic Births= 17, or 18 per 1,000
 Native Births= 4,394, or 10.86 per 1,000

A.

VITAL STATISTICS.

OF THE MARRIAGES, BIRTHS AND DEATHS.

Popula- tion to the Square Mile	Persons Employed in			Births. No. and Rate.	Marriages.	Deaths. No. and Rate.	
	Agricul- ture.	Manu- factures.	Com- merce.				
40.16				per 1,000		per 1,000	
98.37	178,000	12,831	2,050	*4,423 = 10'93	No records.	† 7,229 = 17.86	
36.00	58,000	1,500	2,500	1,360 = 13'49	94 Mohammedans	1,991 = 19.75	
25.52	46,000	900	5,000	2,749 = 19.6	Records not complete	2,579 = 18.4	
	90,000	350	2,000	2,021 = 13.83		3,095 = 21.18	
	372,000	15,581	11,550				
25.70	120,000	600	5,000	Records not complete	Records not complete	Records not complete	
106.46	190,000	1,000	600				
69.25	120,000	1,000	1,000				
55.30	149,286	150	500				
8.95	No records	No records	No records				
9.10							
	579,286	2,750	7,100				
48.84	105,000	2,500	2,000	per 1,000	2,000 approx. No records Records not complete	per 1,000	
20.70	49,500	1,000	3,000	6,369 approx. 23.89		7,103 = 26.65	
84.66	65,000	1,000	100	3,623 approx. = 31.66		3,267 = 21.36	
				Records not complete		Records not complete	
	219,500	4,500	10,100				
16.49	35,000	10,000	2,000	per 1,000	Records not complete	per 1,000	
				1,501 = 16.19		6,576 = 70.96	
16.00	37,000	720	300	Records not complete		Records not complete	
9.98	34,000	1,000	No record				
49'93	100,000	500	30				
	206,000	12,220	2,330				
7.16	No records	No records	No records	No records		No records	
	1,376,786	35,051	31,080				

† European Deaths = 3, or 10'53 per 1,000

Asiatic Deaths = 60, or 66 per 1,000

Native Deaths = 7,166, or 17'7 per 1,000

APPENDIX B.

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

- ANSORGE, W. J., "Under the African Sun," 1899.
- ASHE, REV. R. P., "Two Kings of Uganda," 1899.
- ASHE, REV. R. P., "Life in Uganda," 1890.
- ASHE, REV. R. P., "Chronicles of Uganda," 1894.
- AUSTIN, MAJOR H. H., "With Macdonald in Uganda," 1903.
- BAKER, SIR S., "The Albert Nyanza," 1866.
- BAKER, SIR S., "Ismailia," 1878.
- BROWN, E. and HUNTER, H. H., "Planting in Uganda," 1913.
- CHURCHILL, RT. HON. W. S., "My African Journey," 1908.
- COLVILE, SIR H., "The Land of the Nile Springs," 1895.
- CUNNINGHAM, J. F., "Uganda and Its Peoples," 1905.
- HATTERSLEY, C. W., "Uganda by Pen and Camera," 1906.
- HATTERSLEY, C. W., "The Baganda at Home," 1908.
- JACK, MAJOR E. M., "On the Congo Frontier," 1914.
- JOHNSTON, SIR H. H., "The Uganda Protectorate," 1902.
- JOHNSTON, SIR H. H., Article, "Uganda," "Encyclopædia Britannica," 11th Edition.
- KAGWA, SIR A., "Basekabaka be Buganda (Kings of Buganda)," 1912.
- KITCHING, REV. A. L., "On the Backwaters of the Nile," 1912.
- LARDNER, Capt. E. G., "Soldiering and Sport in Uganda," 1912.
- LLOYD, A. B., "Uganda to Khartoum," 1906.
- LORIMER, N., "By the Waters of Africa," 1917.
- LUGARD, SIR F. D., "The Rise of Our East African Empire," 1893.
- LUGARD, SIR F. D., "The Story of the Uganda Protectorate," 1900.
- MACDONALD, J. R. L., "Soldiering and Surveying in British East Africa," 1897.
- PORTAL, SIR G., "The British Mission to Uganda, 1893," 1894.
- PURVIS, REV. J. B., "Through Uganda to Mount Elgon," 1909.
- ROSCOE, REV. J., "The Baganda," 1911.
- ROSCOE, REV. J., "The Northern Bantu," 1915.
- SPEKE, J. H., "Discovery of the Source of the Nile," 1863.
- STANLEY, SIR H. M., "Through the Dark Continent," 1878.
- THURSTON, A. B., "African Incidents," 1900.
- TREVES, SIR F. T., "Uganda for a Holiday," 1910.
- TUCKER, BISHOP A. R., "Eighteen Years in Uganda and East Africa," 1908.
- WILSON, C. T., and FELKIN, R. W., "Uganda and the Egyptian Sudan," 1882.

APPENDIX C.

THE GAME ORDINANCE, 1913.

I. This Ordinance may be cited as " The Game Ordinance, 1913." Short Title.
Interpretation.

II. In this Ordinance " The Protectorate " means the Uganda Protectorate.

" Hunt, kill or capture " means hunting, killing or capturing by any method, and includes every attempt to kill or capture, provided always that any animals which are killed or captured shall be counted on a licence and that any person duly licensed may hunt, kill or capture permitted animals, until the number of killed or captured animals shall amount to the number permitted by such licence.

" Hunting " includes molesting.

" Animals " save as herein expressly provided, means mammals, and birds other than domesticated, but does not include reptiles, amphibia, fishes and invertebrate animals.

" Game " means any animal included in any of the Schedules.

" Native " means any native of Africa, not being of American or European parentage.

" Resident " means a non-native who has satisfied the Provincial Commissioner or District Commissioner of the Province in which he resides that he is a *bona fide* resident in the Protectorate.

" Visitor " means a person who visits the Protectorate wholly or partly for sporting purposes not being a public officer or a resident or a native.

" District Commissioner " means the Principal Civil Officer in charge of a district in the Protectorate.

" Schedule " and " Schedules " refer to the Schedules annexed to this Ordinance.

GENERAL PROVISIONS.

III. (1) No person unless he is authorised by a special licence in that behalf, shall hunt, kill or capture any of the animals mentioned in the first Schedule. Animals not to
be hunted, etc.,
without Special
Licence.

(2) No person, unless he is authorised by a special licence under this Ordinance, shall hunt, kill, or capture any animal of the kinds mentioned in the second Schedule if the animal be (a) immature or (b) a female accompanied by its young.

IV. No person, unless he is authorised under this Ordinance, shall hunt, kill or capture any animal mentioned in the third Schedule. Animals not to
be hunted
without
a Licence.
Power to vary
Schedules.

V. (1) The Governor may if he thinks fit, by Proclamation, remove any animal from any of the Schedules, or declare that the name of any species, variety, or sex of animal, whether beast or bird, not mentioned in any Schedule hereto, shall be added to a

particular Schedule, or that the name of any species or variety of animal mentioned or included in one Schedule shall be transferred to another Schedule, and, if he thinks fit, apply such Proclamation to the whole of the Protectorate, or to any province, district, or other area,

(2) Subject to the provisions of section fourteen sub-section two of this Ordinance, the Governor may, if he thinks fit, by Proclamation, alter the number of the animals of any species mentioned in any of the Schedules, which may be hunted, killed or captured under a licence.

Prohibition on sale, etc., of Trophies.

VI. (1) Save as hereinafter provided no person shall export from the Protectorate for sale or shall within the Protectorate sell, or purchase, or expose for sale, any head, horn, bone, skin, feather, flesh, or any other part of any animal, mentioned in any of the Schedules unless such animal has been kept in a domesticated state.

Trophies liable to forfeiture.

(2) Any animal or any heads, horns, tusks, skins, feathers, or other remains of any animals mentioned in any of the Schedules hereto shall be liable to forfeiture if they have been obtained in contravention of this Ordinance.

Cases in which Trophies may be sold.

(3) Notwithstanding anything contained in this Ordinance any heads, horns, tusks, skins, feathers, or other remains of any animals mentioned in the schedules may be sold in the following cases, and under the following conditions—

(a) If they form part of the estate of a deceased person, by the Administrator-General or personal representative of such deceased person, with the consent of the Court granting probate or administration, and on payment of such fee as the Court directs, not exceeding 20 rupees.

(b) If they have been forfeited, by the order of the Governor or of the Court by which they have been declared to be forfeited.

Certificate to be issued on lawful sale.

(4) In any sale under sub-section five of this section purchasers shall in every case be given a certificate specifying the articles, and declaring that they have been lawfully sold under the provisions of this Ordinance, and such certificate shall be evidence that the purchaser has not obtained the goods in contravention of this Ordinance.

Saving as to Ivory.

(5) Nothing contained in this section shall prevent the sale, purchase, transfer or export of elephant ivory or hippopotamus tusks which have been obtained without a contravention of this Ordinance.

Animals killed by accident, etc., or found dead the property of the Government.

(6) When any animal mentioned in any of the Schedules hereto is killed by accident, or when the carcase or remains of any animal shall be found, the head, horns, tusks, or feathers of such animal shall belong to Government;

Power to pay compensation.

Provided that the Governor may waive these rights in any case as he may deem fit; and

Provided that the Governor may direct the payment to any person or persons so killing or finding of such compensation as shall cover the cost of transport of any ivory to the nearest station; and

May direct rewards to be paid for the finding of ivory.

*VII. (1) No person shall possess, sell, transfer, or export, or attempt to sell, transfer or export any ivory which has been obtained in contravention of this Ordinance or of the Uganda Game Ordinance, 1906, or of any Ordinance or Regulations repealed by such last-mentioned Ordinance or any elephant tusk weighing less than 30 lbs., or any piece of ivory which formed part of a tusk under 30 lbs. in weight, unless such tusk or piece of ivory were lawfully obtained prior to the commencement of this Ordinance. Possession, sale, etc., of immature Ivory.

(2) Provided that the Governor or any person authorised by the Governor in that behalf may possess, sell, or transfer within the Protectorate, or may export from the Protectorate any ivory belonging to the Government, or confiscated under the provisions of this Ordinance, or of any Regulation or Ordinance repealed by this Ordinance. Reservation to the Governor.

(3) All such ivory possessed, sold, transferred or exported under the provisions of the last preceding sub-section shall be distinctly marked, with such mark and in such manner as the Governor by notice published in the *Official Gazette* may appoint. Marking of Ivory sold under reservation.

(4) The purchaser or transferee of any ivory so sold or transferred under the provisions of sub-section two of this Section shall lawfully possess such ivory, and may lawfully export such ivory from the Protectorate. Saving to Purchasers.

(5) Notwithstanding anything in the foregoing section it shall be lawful for the Governor or any person authorised by the Governor in this behalf to permit the export of curios which may be made from female or immature ivory. Saving as to Ivory already in possession.

VIII. Whenever a person shall be charged with the offence of being in possession of or selling or transferring or exporting or attempting to sell, transfer or export any ivory obtained in contravention of this Ordinance or of the Uganda Game Ordinance, 1906, or of any Ordinance or Regulations repealed by the last-mentioned Ordinance, it shall be sufficient if the summons or charge shall allege that the ivory was obtained in contravention of the law, without specifying the law, and the onus shall then be on the person accused to produce satisfactory proof that the ivory was lawfully obtained under a licence granted under one of the aforementioned Ordinances or Regulations; Onus of proof.

Provided, however, that if the person accused shall fail to produce such proof but there shall not be sufficient evidence to prove that such person knew or ought to have known that the ivory was obtained in contravention of the law, the ivory shall be forfeited, but the person accused shall not be liable to either a fine or imprisonment.

IX. No person shall use any poison or, without a special licence, any dynamite or other explosive for the killing or taking of any fish. Restriction of killing Fish.

X. Where it appears to the Governor that any method used for killing or capturing animals or fish is unduly destructive, he may, by Proclamation, prohibit such method, or prescribe the Conditions under which any method may be used; and if any person uses any method so prohibited, or uses any method otherwise than according to the conditions so prescribed, he shall be liable to the same penalties as for a breach of this Ordinance. Power to prohibit destructive methods of capture.

*This section is now varied by the Game Amendment Ordinance, 1914, which gives power to the Governor to authorise the export of elephant tusks of less than 30 lbs. if passing in transit through the Protectorate.

Animals, etc.,
which may be
killed without
Licence.

XI. Save as provided by this Ordinance, or by any Proclamation under this Ordinance, any person may hunt, kill or capture any animal not mentioned in any of the Schedules, or any fish.

GAME RESERVES.

Game
Reserves.

XII. (1) The areas described in the fifth Schedule hereto are hereby declared to be game reserves.

Power to
declare, etc.,
Game Reserves.

(2) The Governor, with the approval of the Secretary of State, may by Proclamation declare any other portion of the Protectorate to be a game reserve, may define or alter the limits of any game reserve, and this Ordinance shall apply to every such game reserve.

Prohibition on
hunting, etc.,
within Reserve.

(3) Save as provided in this Ordinance, any person who hunts, kills or captures any animal in a game reserve, or is found within a game reserve, under circumstances showing that he was unlawfully in pursuit of any animal, shall be guilty of a breach of this Ordinance.

Power to
exempt from
protection
in Reserves.

(4) The Governor may by notice, to be published as directed by him, exempt from protection any animal in a game reserve.

Meaning of
"Animal" in
the Section.

(5) For the purpose of this section the term "animal" shall be deemed not to exclude reptiles, amphibia, fishes, and invertebrate animals.

LICENCES TO RESIDENTS AND VISITORS.

Licences and by
whom issued.

XIII. (1) The following licences may be granted by the Governor or any District Commissioner or by such person or persons as may be authorised by the Governor :—

- (a) A Resident's licence.
- (b) A Visitor's licence.
- (c) A Fortnightly licence.

Fees for
Licences.

(2) The following fees shall be payable for licences, that is to say for a Resident's licence 75 rupees, for a Visitor's licence 375 rupees, and for a Fortnightly licence 30 rupees.

Duration of
Licences.

(3) A Resident's licence and a Visitor's licence shall be in force for one year from the date of issue.

(4) A Fortnightly licence shall be in force for 14 days from the date of issue of such licence but not more than one such licence shall be issued to the same person within a period of 12 months.

Contents of
Licence.

(5) Every licence shall bear the name, in full, of the person to whom it is granted, the date of issue, the period of its duration, and the signature of the Governor, District Commissioner, or other person authorised to grant licences.

Bond may be
required.

(6) The applicant for a licence may be required to give security by bond or deposit, not exceeding 2,000 rupees, for his compliance with this Ordinance, and with the additional conditions (if any) contained in his licence.

Licence not
transferable.

(7) A licence is not transferable.

To be produced
when called for.

(8) Every licence must be produced when called for by any officer of the Protectorate Government, and any licence holder who fails, without reasonable cause, to produce it when called for shall be guilty of an offence against this Ordinance.

(9) In granting licences under this Ordinance a District Commissioner or any person authorised to grant licences shall observe any general or particular instructions of the Governor.

XIV. (1) A Resident's licence and a Visitor's licence respectively **authorise the holder to hunt, kill or capture animals of any of the species mentioned in the third Schedule but unless the licence otherwise provides not more than the number of each species fixed by the second column of that Schedule.** Animals which may be killed.

(2) A Fortnightly licence authorises the holder to hunt, kill or capture animals of any of the species included in the third Schedule and mentioned in the fourth Schedule provided that the total number of animals shot under such licence does not exceed ten, and that the number of any species does not exceed the number fixed in the second column of the third Schedule.

(3) The holder of a Resident's or a Visitor's licence granted under this Ordinance may by the licence be authorised to kill or capture additional animals of any such species on payment of such additional fees as may be prescribed by the Governor.

XV. A Resident's licence shall not be granted except to a Public Officer of the Protectorate or to a Resident. To whom Resident's Licence may be granted. Protection of Crops.

XVI. Any landholder, or his servant, finding an animal mentioned in the Schedules spoiling his crops or doing damage to his holding may kill the same without a licence if such act is necessary for the protection of his crops or holding. Provided, however, whenever an elephant shall be killed under the provisions of this section, the tusks shall be the property of the Government and shall be dealt with as the Governor may direct.

XVII. Animals mentioned in the Schedules killed or captured by the holder of a licence upon private land at the request of the occupier, and for the protection of his crops or holding, shall not count towards the number of animals that person is entitled to kill under his licence; but in such case the head, horns, tusks, and skins of such animals shall be the property of the Government, and shall be dealt with as the District Commissioner may direct. Animals shot, how counted and dealt with.

XVIII. (1) The Governor may by Proclamation order any area in the Protectorate to be closed for any period specified in the Proclamation in respect of the killing or capturing of any or all species of wild birds. Close season for Birds.

(2) Any person who shall kill or capture, or attempt to kill or capture, by any means whatsoever, or who shall have in his possession any wild bird captured in contravention of any Proclamation under sub-section one of this section within the area to which such proclamation is applied, and within the period specified therein, shall be guilty of a breach of this Ordinance.

XIX. (1) Where it appears proper to the Governor for scientific or administrative reasons, he may grant a special licence to any person to kill or capture animals of any one or more species mentioned in any of the Schedules; or to kill, hunt or capture in a game reserve specified beasts or birds of prey, or other animals whose presence is detrimental to the purposes of the game reserve; or, in particular cases, to kill or capture, as the case may be, in a game reserve, an animal or animals of any one or more species mentioned in the Schedules. Special Licences.

(2) The Governor may, if he thinks fit, grant a licence to any person, European or American, resident in any station situate in or near a game reserve, to kill or capture, specified birds and noxious animals in such game reserve or such part thereof as shall be defined on such licence or otherwise.

(3) A special licence shall be subject to such conditions as to fees and security (if any), number, sex, and age of specimens, district and season for hunting, and other matters, as the Governor may prescribe.

(4) Save as aforesaid, the holder of a special licence shall be subject to the general provisions of this Ordinance, and to the provisions relating to holders of licences.

Power to
District Com-
missioner to
authorise
destruction of
animals
injuring
Food Supplies
or Crops.
Special Licence
to kill Elephant.

XX. The District Commissioner of the District to which he is appointed may authorise any person to destroy any animal mentioned in the Schedules if he is satisfied that such animal is doing damage to food supplies or crops.

XXI. (1) A Provincial or District Commissioner may on the application of the holder of a Resident's or a Visitor's licence grant a special licence authorising such person to hunt, or kill or capture either one or two elephants as the applicant shall require and as shall be specified therein. Such special licence shall not authorise the holder to hunt, kill or capture any elephant having tusks weighing less than 30 lbs. each.

(2) There shall be paid for such special licence the fees following :

For a licence to hunt, kill or capture one elephant	Rs. 150
For a licence to hunt, kill or capture two elephants	Rs. 450

(3) Every licence granted under this section shall expire on the same date as the Resident's or Visitor's licence held at the time of the granting of such special licence by the person to whom the same shall be granted and only one such special licence shall be granted to such person during the period of any such Resident's or Visitor's licence. Provided, however, if such person shall have taken out a special licence authorising him to hunt, kill or capture one elephant only, he may on payment of a further fee of 300 rupees be granted a licence authorising him to hunt, kill or capture a second elephant.

Original Licence
to be endorsed.

XXII. Every person who shall obtain a special licence under the last preceding section shall produce to the Officer granting the same his Resident's or Visitor's licence and such Officer shall endorse thereon the fact of such special licence having been granted and the nature of the licence.

XXIII. When the holder of a Resident's or a Visitor's licence or a special elephants licence has been prevented by circumstances beyond his own control from making any use of such licence, he shall be granted on application a licence free of charge at any time within five years from the date of his licence.

Forms of
Licences.

XXIV. (1) The Governor may, by rule, prescribe the forms of licences to be issued under the provisions of this Ordinance.

Game Register.

(2) Every licence holder shall keep a register of the animals killed or captured by him in the form specified in the sixth Schedule.

Return of
Game killed.

(3) The register, with a copy thereof, shall be submitted as often as convenient, but not less frequently than once in three months, to the nearest District Commissioner or Assistant District Commissioner, who shall countersign the entries up to date and retain the copy.

Production of
Register for
inspection.

(4) Any person authorised to grant licences may at any time call upon any licence holder to produce his register for inspection.

(5) Every holder of a licence shall within fifteen days after his licence has expired produce or send the register, and a copy thereof to a District Commissioner.

(6) If any holder of a licence fails to keep his register truly, or to produce it as required by this section, he shall be guilty of a breach of this Ordinance. Failure to keep or produce—
an offence.

XXV. The Governor may revoke any licence when he is satisfied that the holder has been guilty of a breach of any of the provisions of this Ordinance or of the conditions of his licence, or had connived with any other person in any such breach, or that in any matters in relation thereto he has acted otherwise than in good faith. Revocation of
Licences.

XXVI. The Governor may at his discretion direct that a licence under this Ordinance shall be refused to any applicant. Refusal of
Licences.

XXVII. Any person whose licence has been lost or destroyed may obtain a fresh licence for the remainder of his term on payment of such a fee as the licensing authority may fix, not exceeding 5 rupees. Lost Licences.

XXVIII. No licence granted under this Ordinance shall entitle the holder to hunt, kill, or capture any animal, or to trespass upon private property, without the consent of the owner or occupier. Licence does not
authorise
trespass.

XXIX. Any person who after having killed or captured animals to the number and of the species authorised by his licence, proceeds to hunt, kill or capture any animals which he is not authorised to kill or capture, shall be guilty of a breach of this Ordinance. Hunting, etc.,
animals
beyond limit
allowed—an
offence.

XXX. (1) Persons in the employment of holders of licences may, without licence, assist such holders of licences in hunting animals, but shall not use fire-arms. Where servants
may assist.

(2) In any case of a breach of the provisions of this section the licence of every licence holder concerned in the breach shall be liable to forfeiture, and such licence holder shall be guilty of an offence. Licences may
be forfeited.

XXXI. The Governor or any person authorised by him in that behalf may, at his discretion, require any person importing firearms or ammunition that may be used by such person for the purpose of killing game or other animals to take out a licence under this Ordinance, and may refuse to allow the firearms or ammunition to be taken from the public warehouse until such licence is taken out. Save as aforesaid, nothing in this Ordinance shall affect the provisions of "The Uganda Firearms Regulations, 1896," or any Ordinance amending or substituted for the same. Importers of
firearms may
be required to
take out Game
Licence.

RESTRICTION ON KILLING GAME BY NATIVES.

XXXII. (1) When the members of any native tribe or native inhabitants of any village appear to be dependent on the flesh of wild animals for their subsistence, the District Commissioner of the District may, with the approval of the Governor, by order addressed to the chief of the tribe or headman of the village, authorise the tribesmen or inhabitants, as the case may be, to kill animals within such area, and subject to such conditions as to mode of hunting, number, species, and sex of animals and otherwise, as may be prescribed by the order. District Com-
missioner may
authorise
natives to kill
Game.

(2) An order under this section shall not authorise the killing of any animal mentioned in the first Schedule. Restriction on
Game which
may be killed.

(3) The provisions of this Ordinance with respect to holders of licences shall not apply to a member of a tribe or native inhabitant of a village to which an order under this section applies. Provisions re
Licences not to
apply.

Other provisions to apply.

(4) Save as aforesaid, the general provisions of this Ordinance shall apply to every native who is authorised under this section, and a breach of any order shall be a breach of this Ordinance.

Native Licences.

XXXIII. The Provincial Commissioner of a District may, at his discretion, grant licences to natives to hunt, kill or capture any of the animals mentioned in the third Schedule, but not more than the number of each species fixed by that Schedule within the said district on payment of the fees payable for a Resident's licence.

Special Licences to native to kill Elephant.

XXXIV. The Provincial Commissioner of a District may grant a special licence to a native to kill one or two elephants as the native shall require and as shall be specified therein upon the same terms as those set out in section twenty-one of this Ordinance.

LEGAL PROCEDURE.

Power to search and seize, etc.

XXXV. Where any public officer of the Uganda Protectorate thinks it expedient for the purposes of verifying the register of a licence holder, or suspects that any person has been guilty of a breach of any of the provisions of this Ordinance or of the conditions of his licence, he may inspect and search, or authorise any subordinate officer to inspect and search any baggage, packages, waggons, tents, building, or caravan belonging to, or under the control of such person, or his agent, and if the officer finds any heads, horns, tusks, skins, feathers, or other remains of any animals appearing to have been killed, or any live animals appearing to have been captured, in contravention of this Ordinance, he shall seize and take the same before a magistrate to be dealt with according to law.

Penalties.

XXXVI. (1) Save as herein mentioned, any person who hunts, kills or captures any animals in contravention of this Ordinance, or otherwise commits any breach of the provisions of this Ordinance, or of the conditions of his licence shall, on conviction, be liable to a fine which may extend to 1,000 rupees and, where the offence relates to more animals than two, to a fine in respect of each animal which may extend to 500 rupees, and in either case to imprisonment of either kind, which may extend to two months, with or without fine.

(2) Provided that any person who shoots, kills or captures, or attempts to shoot, kill, or capture birds, in contravention of this Ordinance, shall not be liable to a fine of more than 100 rupees, nor imprisonment of either kind exceeding one month.

Forfeiture on conviction.

(3) In all cases on conviction, the heads, horns, tusks, skins, or other remains of animals found in the possession of the offender or his agent, shall be liable to forfeiture, unless it is proved to the satisfaction of the Court, that they were not obtained in contravention of this Ordinance, and all live animals captured in contravention of this Ordinance shall be liable to forfeiture. These provisions are subject to section eight of this Ordinance.

Revocation of Licences by Court.

(4) If the person convicted is the holder of a licence, his licence may be revoked by the Court.

Payment of Informers.

XXXVII. Where in any proceeding under this Ordinance, any fine is imposed, the Court may award any sum or sums not exceeding half the total fine to any informer or informers.

XXXVIII. The Governor may suspend the operation of this Ordinance or parts thereof, either as to the whole Protectorate or certain districts or portions of districts. Power to suspend Ordinance.

XXXIX. The Governor may make Rules for the better carrying into effect of this Ordinance. Power to make Rules.

XL. The following Ordinances and all Proclamations, Orders and Repeals. Rules thereunder are hereby repealed :—

The Uganda Game Ordinance, 1906.

The Uganda Game (Amendment) Ordinance, 1910 ;

but without prejudice always to anything lawfully done thereunder or to the prosecution of any offence committed before the commencement of this Ordinance.

FIRST SCHEDULE.

Animals not to be hunted, killed or captured except under Special Licence :—

1. Giraffe.
2. Elephant.
3. Secretary Bird.
4. Vulture (any species).
5. Owl (any species).
6. Whale-headed Stork (*Balæniceps Rex*).
7. Saddle-billed Stork (*Epphippiorhynous senegalensis*).
8. Crowned Crane (*Balearica*).
9. Marabout Stork.
10. Egret.

SECOND SCHEDULE.

Animals, the females of which are not to be hunted, or captured when accompanying their young, and the young of which are not to be captured except under Special Licence :—

1. Elephant.
2. Rhinoceros.
3. Chevrotains (*Dorcatherium*).
4. All Antelopes or Gazelles.

THIRD SCHEDULE.

Animals, limited numbers of which may be killed or captured under Resident's or Visitor's Licence :—

1.	Rhinoceros	..	..	..	..	..	1
2.	Hippopotamus	..	..	..	..	..	2
	except where not protected, <i>vis.</i> :						
	(1) River Nile,						
	(2) Shores of Lakes Victoria, Albert, Edward and George.						
*3.	Buffalo	..	..	..	..	..	4
4.	Eland	..	..	..	..	..	1
5.	Lelwel Hartebeest	..	..	..	..	..	6
6.	Jacksoni	..	..	..	..	..	6
7.	Topi	..	..	..	..	..	4
8.	Roan Antelope	..	..	..	..	..	1
9.	Bongo	..	..	..	..	..	4
10.	Greater Kudu	..	..	..	..	..	1
11.	Lesser Kudu	..	..	..	..	..	4
12.	Situtunga	..	..	..	..	..	4
13.	Oryx	..	..	..	..	..	6
14.	Waterbuck	..	..	..	..	..	6
15.	Harnessed Bushbuck	..	..	..	..	..	6
16.	Rothchild's Gazelle	..	..	..	..	..	2
17.	Black-tailed Oribi	..	..	..	..	..	6
18.	Impala	..	..	..	..	..	2
19.	Wart-hog	..	..	..	..	..	4
20.	Giant-hog	..	..	..	..	..	4
21.	Zebra	..	..	..	..	..	1
22.	Bright's Gazelle	..	..	..	..	..	10
23.	Reedbuck	..	..	..	..	..	10
24.	Bushbuck	..	..	..	..	..	10
25.	Red Duiker	..	..	..	..	..	10
26.	Duiker	..	..	..	..	..	10
27.	Blue Duiker	..	..	..	..	..	10
28.	Abyssinian Oribi	..	..	..	..	..	10
29.	Thomas's Kob	..	..	..	..	..	10
30.	Klipspringer	..	..	..	..	..	10
31.	Dik-dik	..	..	..	..	..	10
32.	Colobus Monkey	..	..	..	..	..	2
33.	Chimpanzee	..	..	..	..	..	1

*Buffalo are now not protected in certain areas where they are a danger to life and property.

FOURTH SCHEDULE.

Animals, included in the third Schedule, a limited number of which may be killed or captured under a Fortnightly licence :—

1.	Hartebeest	} Not more than ten in all nor more of any one species than the number for the time being fixed in the second column of the third Schedule.
2.	Topi	
3.	Waterbuck	
4.	Reedbuck	
5.	Bushbuck	
6.	Thomas's Kob	

FIFTH SCHEDULE.

1. An area contained within the following boundary :—Commencing from the mouth of the River Sonso the boundary follows the shores of Lake Albert northwards to the Victoria Nile ; it then follows the South bank of the Victoria Nile to Foweira ; it then follows the old Foweira-Masindi Road up to the point where the River Titi crosses it ; then proceeds in a straight line in the direction of the highest point of the Hill Nabazana until it meets the River Waiga ; it then follows the North-eastern bank of the River Waiga until that river passes the Escarpment ; it then follows the top of the Escarpment until it reaches the River Sonso, and then along the North bank of the River Sonso to Lake Albert.

The aforesaid area shall be known as the Bunyoro Game Reserve.

2. An area bounded :

(i.) By the left bank of the Muzizi River from its mouth in Lake Albert to the point where it falls over the Escarpment.

(ii.) From the top of the Muzizi Falls so indicated by the crest of the Escarpment overlooking the Semliki Valley to the point at Busaiga where the old Fort Portal-Mboga road cuts it.

(iii.) Thence following the right-hand side of the said road to the Wasa River.

(iv.) Thence following the right bank of the Wasa River to its mouth in Lake Albert.

(v.) From the mouth of the Wasa River following the southern shore of Lake Albert to the mouth of the Muzizi River aforesaid.

The aforesaid area shall be known as the Toro Game Reserve.

DATE OF ISSUE

This book must be returned
within 3, 7, 14 days of its issue. A
fine of ONE ANNA per day will
be charged if the book is overdue.



